

# Board Workshop Agenda

## Lake Travis Independent School District Board of Trustees

---

A meeting of the Board of Trustees of Lake Travis Independent School District will be held August 11, 2021, beginning at 6:00 PM in the Educational Development Center, Live Oak Room 607 RR 620 North Austin, TX 78734.

The subjects to be discussed or considered, or upon which any formal action may be taken are listed below. Items do not have to be taken in the order shown on this agenda.

1. Call To Order and Quorum Determination
2. Pledge of Allegiance and Moment of Silence
3. Public Comments/Citizen Participation
4. Public Hearing
  - A. Public Hearing to Discuss 2021-2022 Proposed Budget and Tax Rate 3
5. Presentation/Discussion Items
  - A. Efficiency Audit Presentation 41
  - B. July 2021 Monthly Financial Reports- Statement of Revenues and Expenditures, Balance Sheet, Tax Statement, and 2018 Capital Projects Report 67
  - C. Board Notification under Board Policy CH (Local) - Lake Travis High School PAC Renovations 72
6. Consideration Items
  - A. 2018 Bond Program Delivery Method – Summer 2022 Bond Projects 73
  - B. 2020-2021 Budget Amendment #3 - General Operating Fund, Debt Service Fund and Food Service Fund 75
  - C. House Bill 5 (HB 5), 83<sup>rd</sup> Legislative Session Requirement Concerning “Set-Aside” State Compensatory Funding 79
  - D. Proposed Budget for 2021-2022 80
  - E. Resolution No. 081121-01 Regarding the 2021-2022 Tax Rate and Golden Pennies Election 82
  - F. 2021 Tax Rate Resolution No. 081121-02 86
  - G. Order Calling a Tax Ratification Election to be held by Lake Travis Independent School District 89
  - H. Rescind Resolution No. 081920-03 Regarding the Continuation of Delegation of Authority to Superintendent in Response to COVID-19 96
  - I. 2021-2022 Lake Travis ISD Student Code of Conduct 100
  - J. TASB Policy Update 117: 194  
 CH(LOCAL): PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION  
 CV(LOCAL): FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION
  - K. Update to Lake Travis ISD DEC (LOCAL) Policy Regarding Employee Leaves and Absences 485
7. Consent Agenda

- A. Minutes of July 21, 2021 Board Meeting Minutes 500
- 8. Upcoming Meetings and Events
  - A. September 15, 2021 - 4:30 p.m. Special Called Legislative Update at the EDC - 6:00 p.m. Board Meeting EDC
  - B. October 20, 2021 - 6:00 p.m. - Regular Board Meeting, EDC
- 9. Closed Session - Trustees will adjourn into Closed Session as permitted by the Texas Government Code 551.001 et. seq.
  - A. Section 551.074 - Personnel Matters
    - 1. The Board will discuss the appointment, employment, evaluation, reassignment, duties, discipline, or dismissal of public employees or officials. (This may involve consultation with attorney as permitted under Section 551.071)
  - B. Section 551.071 - Consultation with Attorney
    - 1. The Board will discuss and receive legal advice from its attorney on matters which should be confidential under Texas Government Code Section 551.071 (2).
  - C. Section 551.072 - Deliberation Regarding Real Property
    - 1. The Board will discuss the purchase, exchange, lease or value of real property. (This may involve consultation with attorney as permitted under section 551.071.)
  - D. Section 551.0821 - School Board: Personally Identifiable Information About a Public School Student
    - 1. The Board will discuss personally identifiable information about a public school student.
  - E. Section 551.076 - Deliberation Regarding Security Devices or Security Audits; Closed Meeting. This chapter does not require a governmental body to conduct an open meeting to deliberate:
    - 1. The deployment, or specific occasions for implementation of security personnel or devices.
- 10. Adjournment



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

Public Meeting to Discuss the 2021-2022 Proposed Budget and Tax Rate

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

**“Public Hearing”**

### **RATIONALE**

Provide an administrative overview of the proposed budget and tax rate and give an opportunity for community input regarding the proposed budget and tax rate

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

2021-2022 Budget

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services

Evalene Murphy – Assistant Superintendent of Employee and Community Relations

Brad Goerke – Director of Finance

### **ATTACHMENTS**

Budget Presentation for 2021-2022

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021



# Lake Travis Independent School District

*2021-2022 Official Budget*

*September 1, 2021- August 31, 2022*

# **Lake Travis ISD**

## **2021-2022 Official Budget**

### **Board of Trustees:**

**John Aouelle, President**

**Bob Dorsett, Vice President**

**Lauren White, Secretary**

**William Beard, Board Member**

**Kim Flasch, Board Member**

**Phillip Davis, Board Member**

**Jessica Putonti, Board Member**

### **District Administration:**

**Paul Norton**

**Superintendent of Schools**

**Pam Sanchez**

**Asst. Superintendent for Business Services**

**Evalene Murphy**

**Asst. Superintendent for Employee & Community Relations**

**Stefani Allen**

**Asst. Superintendent for Curriculum & Instruction**

**Brad Bailey**

**Asst. Superintendent for Operations & Title IX Coordinator**

**District Administration (cont.):**

**Marco Alvarado**

**Executive Director of Communications & Community Relations**

**Chris Woehl**

**Executive Director of Technology and Information System Services**

**Amber King, J.D.**

**General Counsel**

**Brad Goerke**

**Director of Finance**

**Cristy Soares**

**Director of Purchasing**

**Robert Winovitch**

**Director of Facilities and Construction**

# Lake Travis ISD

## Mission Statement

The mission of the Lake Travis Independent School District is to educate all students by teaching a comprehensive curriculum which emphasizes scholastic excellence. The District will serve as a model of educational excellence by making use of the combined skills of students, teachers, support staff, involved parents and citizens through the efficient use of resources. Our graduates will have lifelong problem-solving skills. They will understand that responsibilities accompany the privileges of citizenship and will have the foundation to be successful in their chosen endeavors.

# Table of Contents

<b>BUDGET OVERVIEW</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>PROPOSED BUDGET-LEGALLY ADOPTED FUNDS</b> .....	<b>7</b>
<b>GENERAL FUND</b> .....	<b>8</b>
Budget Overview.....	9
Revenue Sources.....	10
Revenue Sources Chart.....	11
Budget Comparison.....	12
Expenditure Budget Summary by Function and Object.....	15
Expenditure Budget Charts.....	16
<b>DEBT SERVICE FUND</b> .....	<b>18</b>
Budget Comparison.....	19
Debt Payment Schedule.....	20
Total Bonded Debt Outstanding.....	21
<b>FOOD SERVICE FUND</b> .....	<b>22</b>
Budget Comparison.....	23
<b>TAX SECTION</b> .....	<b>24</b>
Projected Property Values and Estimated Tax Revenues.....	25
Budget Impact on Taxpayers.....	26
Notice of Public Meeting to Discuss Budget & Proposed Tax Rate.....	27
Net Taxable Value History.....	31
Tax Rate History.....	32
<b>SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION</b> .....	<b>33</b>
Special Revenue Fund Planning Estimates.....	34
Budget Planning Calendar.....	35
Student Enrollment History & Projections.....	36

# LAKE TRAVIS ISD

## 2021-2022 Official Budget

### Overview:

This budget document and the annual financial and compliance report are the primary vehicles used to present the financial plan and the results of operations of the District. The primary purpose of this budget document is to provide timely and useful information concerning the past, current and projected financial status of the District, in order to facilitate financial decisions that support the educational goals of the District.

The following document represents the financial plan for the Lake Travis Independent School District for the 2021-2022 fiscal year. This document culminates an intensive process involving input from parents, citizens, campus and administrative staff, the Superintendent and the Board of Trustees.

This budget has been prepared in accordance with state regulations and local policies covering the required twelve-month period from September 1, 2021 through August 31, 2022. Funding estimates were prepared under the current state funding legislation passed in the 86th Session (HB 3) and in the 87<sup>th</sup> Session (HB 1525). The net effect of the most recent HB 1525 legislation was an increase of approximately \$275,000 for the 2021-2022 fiscal year from the 2020-2021 current funding calculations.

### Financial Status:

Lake Travis ISD proudly carries one of the highest credit ratings of any school district in the State of Texas. Debt issued by the District is currently rated AA+/AA+ by Standard & Poor's and Fitch, respectively.

The District began the 2020-2021 fiscal year with a fund balance of \$44.3 million. This healthy fund balance level will assist the District in continuing to absorb the impact of state funding adjustments. Additionally, Lake Travis ISD will call a Voter Approval Tax Rate Election on November 2, 2021 to increase its Maintenance & Operations Tax rate from \$0.8826 to \$0.9026. Simultaneously, the District will cut its Interest & Sinking Tax rate from \$0.3475 to

**\$0.3275. The net effect will be a zero change in the overall total tax rate. The election will allow the district to maximize that State’s funding formulas and adopt a balance budget for the 2021-2022 fiscal year. The District will also continue to identify and incorporate budget efficiencies wherever possible while enhancing student programs and providing instructional supports. Legislation at the state and federal levels will continue to be monitored in preparing future budgets.**

**Legal Requirements:**

**Federal, state and local guidelines govern the budget development process. The annually adopted budget includes the General Fund, Food Service Fund and the Debt Service Fund. For informational purposes only, planning estimate amounts for the federal grant funds are presented.**

**Section 44.002 through 44.006 of the Texas Education Code establishes the legal basis for the budget development in school districts. These codes require that the District prepare a budget by the date set by the state board of education, currently August 20<sup>th</sup> for districts with an August 31<sup>st</sup> fiscal year end. The code further requires that the president of the Board of Trustees call a public meeting, giving ten days public notice in a newspaper for the adoption of the District’s budget. The Board of Trustees must adopt the prepared budget no later than August 31<sup>st</sup>. The officially adopted District budget must be filed with the Texas Education Agency (TEA) through the Public Education Information Management System (PEIMS) by the date prescribed annually by TEA. A budget comparison for the annually adopted budget is presented below in Table 1.**

<b>Table 1.</b>	<b>Amended Budget 2020-2021</b>	<b>Proposed Budget 2021-2022</b>	<b>Change</b>
<b>General Fund</b>	<b>\$139,857,774</b>	<b>\$ 144,684,449</b>	<b>+ 3.45%</b>
<b>Food Service Fund</b>	<b>\$ 3,730,000</b>	<b>\$ 5,850,000</b>	<b>+ 56.84%</b>
<b>Debt Service Fund</b>	<b>\$ 46,100,000</b>	<b>\$ 48,490,000</b>	<b>+ 5.18%</b>
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$189,657,774</b>	<b>\$ 199,024,449</b>	<b>+ 4.94%</b>

LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ESTIMATED REVENUES, APPROPRIATED EXPENDITURES, OTHER RESOURCES AND USES, AND BALANCES  
PROPOSED BUDGET  
LEGALLY ADOPTED FUNDS  
2021-22 SCHOOL YEAR

		GENERAL FUND	FOOD SERVICE FUND	DEBT SERVICE FUND	TOTAL ALL FUNDS
<b>REVENUE</b>					
5700	LOCAL, INTERMEDIATE, OTHER	\$ 136,690,504	\$ 3,311,000	\$ 53,500,000	\$ 193,501,504
5800	STATE PROGRAM REVENUE	5,789,072	9,000	100,000	5,898,072
5900	FEDERAL PROGRAM REVENUE	690,000	2,530,000	-	3,220,000
	<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b><u>\$ 143,169,576</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 5,850,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 53,600,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 202,619,576</u></b>
<b>EXPENDITURE</b>					
11	INSTRUCTION	\$ 58,795,044	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 58,795,044
12	INSTRUCTIONAL RESOURCES	946,936	-	-	946,936
13	INSTRUCTIONAL STAFF DEVELOPMENT	1,095,204	-	-	1,095,204
21	INSTRUCTIONAL ADMINISTRATION	2,006,072	-	-	2,006,072
23	SCHOOL ADMINISTRATION	4,650,202	-	-	4,650,202
31	GUIDANCE AND COUNSELING	3,932,443	-	-	3,932,443
32	SOCIAL WORK SERVICES	140,139	-	-	140,139
33	HEALTH SERVICE	922,045	-	-	922,045
34	PUPIL TRANSPORTATION-REGULAR	4,654,001	-	-	4,654,001
35	FOOD SERVICES	90,000	5,318,861	-	5,408,861
36	CO-CURRICULAR ACTIVITIES	2,491,177	-	-	2,491,177
41	GENERAL ADMINISTRATION	3,766,012 *	-	-	3,766,012
51	PLANT & MAINT OPERATIONS	10,943,134	531,139	-	11,474,273
52	SECURITY AND MONITORING	659,853	-	-	659,853
53	NON-INSTRUCTIONAL DATA PROCESSING	2,927,386	-	-	2,927,386
61	COMMUNITY EDUCATION	421,600	-	-	421,600
71	DEBT SERVICE	0	-	48,490,000	48,490,000
81	CONSTRUCTION	30,000	-	-	30,000
91	STATE TRANSFERS	45,283,201	-	-	45,283,201
92	RECAPTURE INCREMENTAL COSTS	300,000	-	-	300,000
93	SPECIAL ED TRANSFERS-DAY SCHOOL	45,000	-	-	45,000
95	JJAEP TRANSFERS	15,000	-	-	15,000
99	OTHER INTERGOVERNMENTAL CHARGES	570,000	-	-	570,000
	<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b><u>\$ 144,684,449</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 5,850,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 48,490,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 199,024,449</u></b>
<b>OTHER RESOURCES AND (USES)</b>					
7000	OTHER RESOURCES	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
8000	OTHER USES	-	-	-	-
	<b>TOTAL RESOURCES &amp; USES</b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>
1200	EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES & OTHER RESOURCES OVER EXPENDI- TURES AND OTHER USES	<b>\$ (1,514,873)</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 5,110,000</b>	<b>\$ 3,595,127</b>
3100	BEGINNING FUND BALANCE, 9/1	44,264,472	416,329	7,099,415	51,780,216
3100	ENDING FUND BALANCE, 8/31	<b><u>\$ 42,749,599</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 416,329</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 12,209,415</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 55,375,343</u></b>
	* Senate Bill 622 Requirement Statutorily Required Public Notice	<b>\$ 20,000</b>			

The Official Budget for this district for the school year 2021-22 was adopted at a meeting of the Board of School Trustees on August 11, 2021 as evidenced in the Official School Board minutes. I certify, to the best of my knowledge, that the budget preparation and adoption is in accordance with provisions applicable to the Texas Education Code.

## **GENERAL FUND**

**The General Fund accounts for the financial resources of the District and includes transactions as a result of revenues received from local maintenance taxes and foundation entitlements from the State of Texas. The General Fund uses budgetary control and shows transactions resulting from the daily operations of the District.**

**LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
GENERAL FUND  
BUDGET OVERVIEW**

		<u>2020-2021 ORIGINAL BUDGET</u>	<u>2020-2021 AMENDED BUDGET</u>	<u>2021-2022 PROPOSED BUDGET</u>	<u>CHANGE</u>
<b>REVENUE</b>					
5700	LOCAL, INTERMEDIATE, OTHER	\$ 129,960,518	\$ 130,433,518	\$ 136,690,504	\$ 6,256,986
5800	STATE PROGRAM REVENUE	7,263,256	8,999,256	5,789,072	(3,210,184)
5900	FEDERAL PROGRAM REVENUE	625,000	425,000	690,000	265,000
<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>		<b><u>\$ 137,848,774</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 139,857,774</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 143,169,576</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 3,311,802</u></b>

**EXPENDITURE**

11	INSTRUCTION	\$ 56,485,802	\$ 53,885,802	\$ 58,795,044	\$ 4,909,242
12	INSTRUCTIONAL RESOURCES	924,778	974,778	946,936	(27,842)
13	INSTRUCTIONAL STAFF DEVELOPMENT	1,051,788	1,051,788	1,095,204	43,416
21	INSTRUCTIONAL ADMINISTRATION	1,763,501	1,813,501	2,006,072	192,571
23	SCHOOL ADMINISTRATION	4,569,643	4,569,643	4,650,202	80,559
31	GUIDANCE AND COUNSELING	3,874,148	3,774,148	3,932,443	158,295
32	SOCIAL WORK SERVICES	137,736	157,736	140,139	(17,597)
33	HEALTH SERVICE	906,628	926,628	922,045	(4,583)
34	PUPIL TRANSPORTATION	5,004,811	4,604,811	4,654,001	49,190
35	FOOD SERVICE	90,000	90,000	90,000	0
36	CO-CURRICULAR ACTIVITIES	2,448,937	2,189,937	2,491,177	301,240
41	GENERAL ADMINISTRATION	3,470,297 *	3,670,297 *	3,766,012 *	95,715
51	PLANT & MAINT OPERATIONS	10,818,050	10,418,050	10,943,134	525,084
52	SECURITY & MONITORING	685,782	735,782	659,853	(75,929)
53	NON-INSTRUCTIONAL DATA PROCESSING	2,903,266	2,803,266	2,927,386	124,120
61	COMMUNITY SERVICES	418,560	418,560	421,600	3,040
71	DEBT SERVICE	0	0	0	0
81	FACILITIES ACQUISITION/CONSTR.	30,000	30,000	30,000	0
91	STATE EQUALIZATION	43,135,047	46,813,047	45,283,201	(1,529,846)
92	RECAPTURE INCREMENTAL COSTS	300,000	300,000	300,000	0
93	SPEC. ED. TRANSFERS-DAY SCHOOL	45,000	45,000	45,000	0
95	JJAEP TRANSFERS	15,000	15,000	15,000	0
99	OTHER INTERGOVERNMENTAL CHARGES	570,000	570,000	570,000	0
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>		<b><u>\$ 139,648,774</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 139,857,774</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 144,684,449</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 4,826,675</u></b>

750,000

OTHER RESOURCES AND (USES)

7000	OTHER RESOURCES	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
8000	OTHER USES	0	0	0	0
<b>TOTAL RESOURCES &amp; USES</b>		<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>

<b>1200</b>	<b>EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES &amp; OTHER RESOURCES OVER EXPENDI- TURES AND OTHER USES</b>	<b>\$ (1,800,000)</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ (1,514,873)</b>	<b>\$ (1,514,873)</b>
3100	BEGINNING FUND BALANCE, 9/1	44,264,472	44,264,472	44,264,472	
<b>3100</b>	<b>ENDING FUND BALANCE, 8/31</b>	<b><u>\$ 42,464,472</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 44,264,472</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 42,749,599</u></b>	

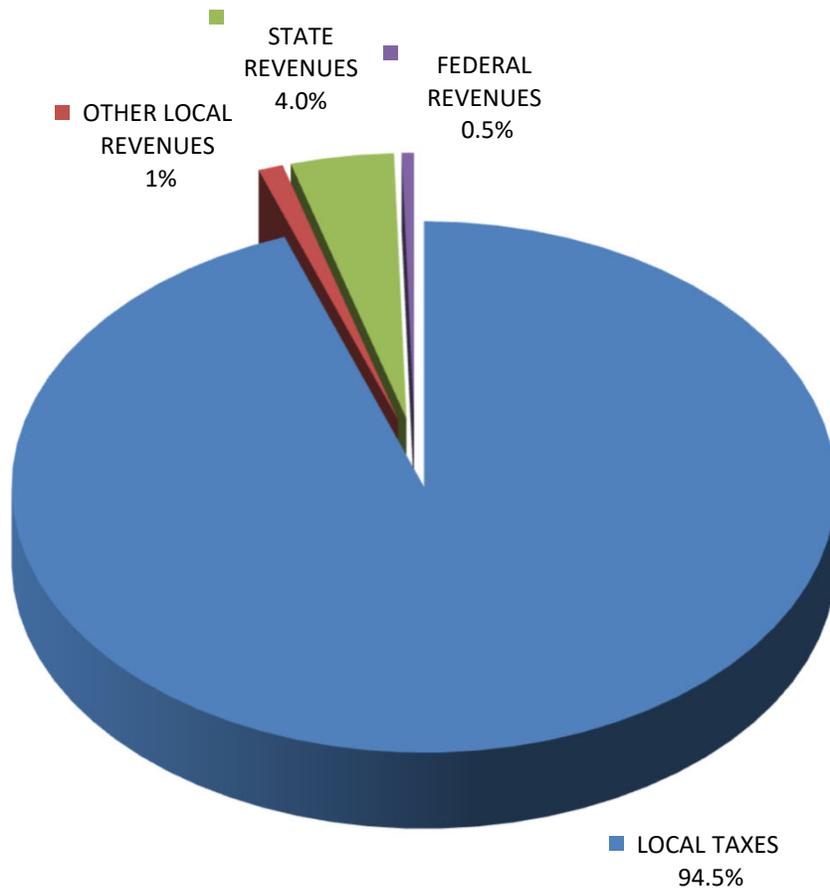
\* Senate Bill 622 Requirement  
Statutorily Required Public Notice

\$ 20,000	\$ 20,000	\$ 20,000
-----------	-----------	-----------

**LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
GENERAL FUND  
REVENUE SOURCES**

		<b>2020-2021 ORIGINAL BUDGET</b>	<b>2020-2021 AMENDED BUDGET</b>	<b>2021-2022 PROJECTED BUDGET</b>	<b>Percent of Total</b>	<b>Dollar Change</b>
<b>LOCAL &amp; OTHER SOURCES-</b>						
5711	LOCAL TAXES, CURRENT YEAR	\$ 127,344,427	\$ 127,694,427	\$ 134,246,504	93.77%	\$ 6,552,077
571X	OTHER LOCAL TAXES	1,100,000	1,486,823	1,050,000	0.73%	(436,823)
5739	FEES, DUES, ETC.	80,000	109,000	20,000	0.01%	(89,000)
5742	EARNINGS ON INVESTMENTS	800,000	700,000	600,000	0.42%	(100,000)
5743	RENT	205,000	176,000	280,000	0.20%	104,000
5749	MISC REV FM LOCAL SOURCES	172,091	123,268	106,000	0.07%	(17,268)
5752	ATHLETIC ACTIVITY	249,000	144,000	388,000	0.27%	244,000
5769	COUNTY AVAILABLE	10,000	-	-	0.00%	-
	<b>Total Local &amp; Other Sources</b>	<b>\$ 129,960,518</b>	<b>\$ 130,433,518</b>	<b>\$ 136,690,504</b>	<b>95.47%</b>	<b>\$ 6,256,986</b>
<b>STATE SOURCES-</b>						
5811	AVAILABLE SCHOOL FUND	\$ 4,183,136	\$ 5,089,136	\$ 2,158,952	1.51%	\$ (2,930,184)
5812	STATE FOUNDATION FUND	-	880,000	-	0.00%	(880,000)
5829	MISCELLANEOUS STATE	50,000	-	-	0.00%	-
5831	TRS ON-BEHALF	3,030,120	3,030,120	3,630,120	2.54%	600,000
	<b>Total State Sources</b>	<b>\$ 7,263,256</b>	<b>\$ 8,999,256</b>	<b>\$ 5,789,072</b>	<b>4.04%</b>	<b>\$ (3,210,184)</b>
<b>FEDERAL SOURCES-</b>						
5931	MEDICAID	\$ 400,000	\$ 350,000	\$ 640,000	0.45%	\$ 290,000
5932	RESIDENTIAL REIMBURSEMENT	\$ 150,000	\$ 75,000	\$ -	0.00%	\$ (75,000)
5949	E-RATE	\$ 75,000	\$ -	\$ 50,000	0.03%	\$ 50,000
	<b>Total Federal Sources</b>	<b>\$ 625,000</b>	<b>\$ 425,000</b>	<b>\$ 690,000</b>	<b>0.48%</b>	<b>\$ 265,000</b>
<b>TOTAL REVENUE-ALL SOURCES</b>		<b>\$ 137,848,774</b>	<b>\$ 139,857,774</b>	<b>\$ 143,169,576</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 3,311,802</b>

**Lake Travis Independent School District  
General Fund Revenue  
2021-2022 Budget**



**LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
GENERAL FUND  
BUDGET COMPARISON**

	<b>2020-2021 ORIGINAL BUDGET</b>	<b>2020-2021 AMENDED BUDGET</b>	<b>2021-2022 PROPOSED BUDGET</b>	<b>CHANGE</b>
<b>Revenues-</b>				
Local Sources	\$ 129,960,518	\$ 130,433,518	\$ 136,690,504	\$ 6,256,986
State Sources	7,263,256	8,999,256	5,789,072	(3,210,184)
Federal Sources	625,000	425,000	690,000	265,000
<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b>\$ 137,848,774</b>	<b>\$ 139,857,774</b>	<b>\$ 143,169,576</b>	<b>\$ 3,311,802</b>
<b>Expenditures-</b>				
<b>Function 11-Instruction</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 53,078,446	\$ 50,478,446	\$ 55,129,767	\$ 4,651,321
6200 Contracted Services	862,731	862,731	918,654	55,923
6300 Supplies & Materials	2,089,235	2,089,235	2,185,957	96,722
6400 Other Operating	455,390	455,390	560,666	105,276
<b>Total 11-Instruction</b>	<b>\$ 56,485,802</b>	<b>\$ 53,885,802</b>	<b>\$ 58,795,044</b>	<b>\$ 4,909,242</b>
<b>Function 12-Instructional Resources</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 848,528	\$ 898,528	\$ 862,676	\$ (35,852)
6200 Contracted Services	21,500	21,500	21,400	(100)
6300 Supplies & Materials	49,303	49,303	57,863	8,560
6400 Other Operating	5,447	5,447	4,997	(450)
<b>Total 12-Instructional Resources</b>	<b>\$ 924,778</b>	<b>\$ 974,778</b>	<b>\$ 946,936</b>	<b>\$ (27,842)</b>
<b>Function 13-Instructional Staff Development</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 609,764	\$ 609,764	\$ 619,380	\$ 9,616
6200 Contracted Services	218,955	218,955	243,955	25,000
6300 Supplies & Materials	4,000	4,000	20,890	16,890
6400 Other Operating	219,069	219,069	210,979	(8,090)
<b>Total 13-Instructional Staff Development</b>	<b>\$ 1,051,788</b>	<b>\$ 1,051,788</b>	<b>\$ 1,095,204</b>	<b>\$ 43,416</b>
<b>Function 21-Instructional Administration</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 1,586,911	\$ 1,636,911	\$ 1,824,232	\$ 187,321
6200 Contracted Services	48,000	48,000	52,000	4,000
6300 Supplies & Materials	57,000	57,000	57,000	0
6400 Other Operating	71,590	71,590	72,840	1,250
<b>Total 21-Instructional Administration</b>	<b>\$ 1,763,501</b>	<b>\$ 1,813,501</b>	<b>\$ 2,006,072</b>	<b>\$ 192,571</b>
<b>Function 23-School Administration</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 4,484,971	\$ 4,484,971	\$ 4,559,030	\$ 74,059
6200 Contracted Services	7,180	7,180	7,180	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	54,683	54,683	58,434	3,751
6400 Other Operating	22,809	22,809	25,558	2,749
<b>Total 23-School Administration</b>	<b>\$ 4,569,643</b>	<b>\$ 4,569,643</b>	<b>\$ 4,650,202</b>	<b>\$ 80,559</b>
<b>Function 31-Guidance and Counseling</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 3,419,593	\$ 3,319,593	\$ 3,477,078	\$ 157,485
6200 Contracted Services	384,235	384,235	384,235	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	55,765	55,765	56,575	810
6400 Other Operating	14,555	14,555	14,555	0
<b>Total 31-Guidance and Counseling</b>	<b>\$ 3,874,148</b>	<b>\$ 3,774,148</b>	<b>\$ 3,932,443</b>	<b>\$ 158,295</b>
<b>Function 32-Social Work Services</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 137,736	\$ 157,736	\$ 140,139	\$ (17,597)
6200 Contracted Services	0	0	0	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6400 Other Operating	0	0	0	0
<b>Total 32-Social Work Services</b>	<b>\$ 137,736</b>	<b>\$ 157,736</b>	<b>\$ 140,139</b>	<b>\$ (17,597)</b>
<b>Function 33-Health Services</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 889,211	\$ 909,211	\$ 904,513	\$ (4,698)
6200 Contracted Services	155	155	155	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	14,602	14,602	14,867	265
6400 Other Operating	2,660	2,660	2,510	(150)
<b>Total 33-Health Services</b>	<b>\$ 906,628</b>	<b>\$ 926,628</b>	<b>\$ 922,045</b>	<b>\$ (4,583)</b>

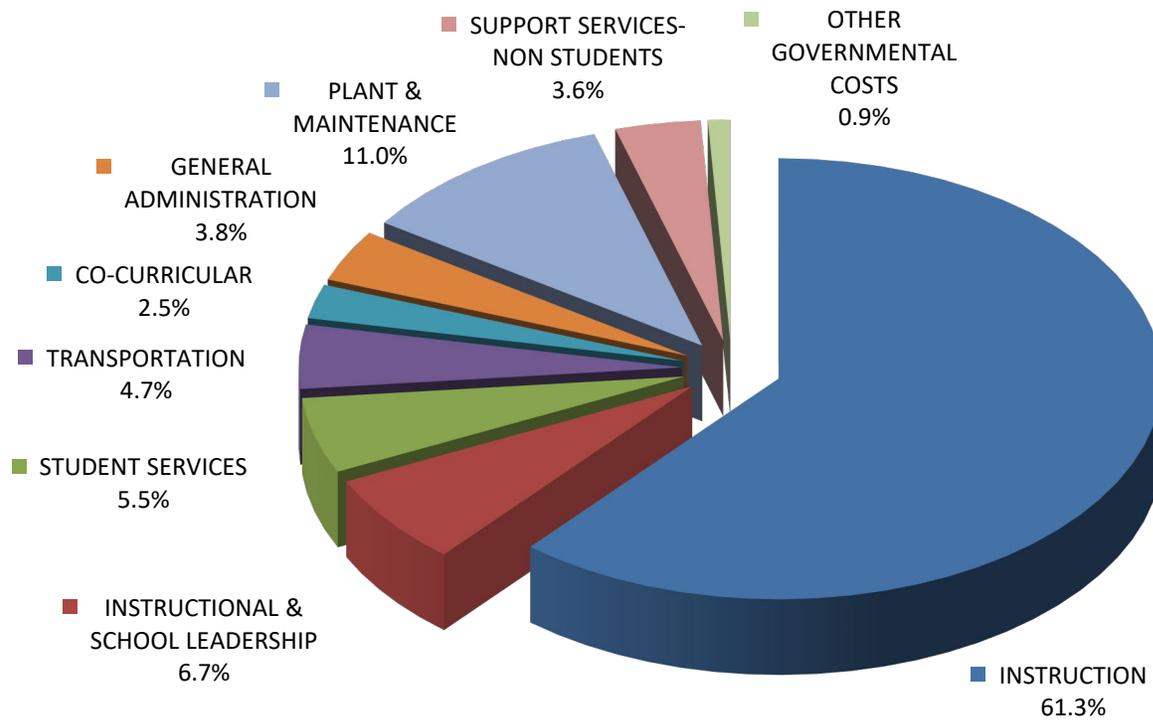
<b>Function 34-Pupil Transportation</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 4,325,811	\$ 3,925,811	\$ 3,930,001	\$ 4,190
6200 Contracted Services	179,500	179,500	184,500	5,000
6300 Supplies & Materials	778,000	778,000	828,000	50,000
6400 Other Operating	<u>(278,500)</u>	<u>(278,500)</u>	<u>(288,500)</u>	<u>(10,000)</u>
<b>Total 34-Pupil Transportation</b>	<b>\$ 5,004,811</b>	<b>\$ 4,604,811</b>	<b>\$ 4,654,001</b>	<b>\$ 49,190</b>
<b>Function 35-Food Services</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 90,000	\$ 90,000	\$ 90,000	\$ 0
6200 Contracted Services	0	0	0	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6400 Other Operating	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
<b>Total 35-Food Services</b>	<b>\$ 90,000</b>	<b>\$ 90,000</b>	<b>\$ 90,000</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<b>Function 36-Co-Curricular Activities</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 1,455,938	\$ 1,455,938	\$ 1,473,940	\$ 18,002
6200 Contracted Services	187,560	187,560	199,560	12,000
6300 Supplies & Materials	180,027	180,027	199,527	19,500
6400 Other Operating	<u>625,412</u>	<u>366,412</u>	<u>618,150</u>	<u>251,738</u>
<b>Total 36-Co-Curricular Activities</b>	<b>\$ 2,448,937</b>	<b>\$ 2,189,937</b>	<b>\$ 2,491,177</b>	<b>\$ 301,240</b>
<b>Function 41-General Administration</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 2,551,754	\$ 2,751,754	\$ 2,759,469	\$ 7,715
6200 Contracted Services	537,119	537,119	574,685	37,566
6300 Supplies & Materials	94,169	94,169	108,603	14,434
6400 Other Operating	<u>287,255</u>	<u>287,255</u>	<u>323,255</u>	<u>36,000</u>
<b>Total 41-General Administration</b>	<b>\$ 3,470,297</b>	<b>\$ 3,670,297</b>	<b>\$ 3,766,012</b>	<b>\$ 95,715</b>
<b>Function 51-Plant and Maintenance Operations</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 2,257,445	\$ 2,057,445	\$ 2,232,379	\$ 174,934
6200 Contracted Services	7,370,955	7,270,955	7,354,955	84,000
6300 Supplies & Materials	692,550	592,550	851,300	258,750
6400 Other Operating	<u>497,100</u>	<u>497,100</u>	<u>504,500</u>	<u>7,400</u>
<b>Total 51-Plant and Maintenance Operations</b>	<b>\$ 10,818,050</b>	<b>\$ 10,418,050</b>	<b>\$ 10,943,134</b>	<b>\$ 525,084</b>
<b>Function 52-Security and Monitoring</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 165,782	\$ 215,782	\$ 563,853	\$ 348,071
6200 Contracted Services	470,000	470,000	31,000	(439,000)
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	45,000	45,000
6400 Other Operating	<u>50,000</u>	<u>50,000</u>	<u>20,000</u>	<u>(30,000)</u>
<b>Total 52-Security and Monitoring</b>	<b>\$ 685,782</b>	<b>\$ 735,782</b>	<b>\$ 659,853</b>	<b>\$ (75,929)</b>
<b>Function 53-Data Processing Services</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 1,445,601	\$ 1,445,601	\$ 1,469,721	\$ 24,120
6200 Contracted Services	835,926	735,926	835,926	100,000
6300 Supplies & Materials	552,739	552,739	587,739	35,000
6400 Other Operating	<u>69,000</u>	<u>69,000</u>	<u>34,000</u>	<u>(35,000)</u>
<b>Total 53-Data Processing Services</b>	<b>\$ 2,903,266</b>	<b>\$ 2,803,266</b>	<b>\$ 2,927,386</b>	<b>\$ 124,120</b>
<b>Function 61-Community Services</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 355,060	\$ 355,060	\$ 358,100	\$ 3,040
6200 Contracted Services	60,000	60,000	60,000	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	2,000	2,000	2,000	0
6400 Other Operating	<u>1,500</u>	<u>1,500</u>	<u>1,500</u>	<u>0</u>
<b>Total 61-Community Services</b>	<b>\$ 418,560</b>	<b>\$ 418,560</b>	<b>\$ 421,600</b>	<b>\$ 3,040</b>
<b>Function 71-Debt Services</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
6200 Contracted Services	0	0	0	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6500 Debt Related Payments	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
<b>Total 71-Debt Services</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<b>Function 81-Facility Acquisitions/Construction</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 30,000	\$ 30,000	\$ 30,000	\$ 0
6200 Contracted Services	0	0	0	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6400 Other Operating	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>0</u>
<b>Total 81-Facility Acquisitions/Construction</b>	<b>\$ 30,000</b>	<b>\$ 30,000</b>	<b>\$ 30,000</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>

<b>Function 91-State Equilization (Recapture)</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
6200 Contracted Services	43,135,047	46,813,047	45,283,201	(1,529,846)
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6400 Other Operating	0	0	0	0
<b>Total 91-State Equilization (Recapture)</b>	<b>\$ 43,135,047</b>	<b>\$ 46,813,047</b>	<b>\$ 45,283,201</b>	<b>\$ (1,529,846)</b>
<b>Function 92-Recapture Incremental Costs</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
6200 Contracted Services	300,000	300,000	300,000	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6400 Other Operating	0	0	0	0
<b>Total 92-Recapture Incremental Costs</b>	<b>\$ 300,000</b>	<b>\$ 300,000</b>	<b>\$ 300,000</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<b>Function 93-Special Ed. Transfers-Day School</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
6200 Contracted Services	0	0	0	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6400 Other Operating	45,000	45,000	45,000	0
<b>Total 93-Special Ed. Transfers-Day School</b>	<b>\$ 45,000</b>	<b>\$ 45,000</b>	<b>\$ 45,000</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<b>Function 95-JJAEP Transfers</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
6200 Contracted Services	15,000	15,000	15,000	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6400 Other Operating	0	0	0	0
<b>Total 95-JJAEP Transfers</b>	<b>\$ 15,000</b>	<b>\$ 15,000</b>	<b>\$ 15,000</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<b>Function 99-Other Intergovernmental Charges</b>				
6100 Payroll	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
6200 Contracted Services	570,000	570,000	570,000	0
6300 Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
6400 Other Operating	0	0	0	0
<b>Total 99-Other Intergovernmental Charges</b>	<b>\$ 570,000</b>	<b>\$ 570,000</b>	<b>\$ 570,000</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b>\$ 139,648,774</b>	<b>\$ 139,857,774</b>	<b>\$ 144,684,449</b>	<b>\$ 4,826,675</b>
OTHER RESOURCES	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
OTHER USES	0	0	0	0
<b>TOTAL RESOURCES &amp; USES</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<b>EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES &amp; OTHER RESOURCES OVER EXPENDITURES AND OTHER USES</b>	<b>\$ (1,800,000)</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ (1,514,873)</b>	<b>\$ (1,514,873)</b>
BEGINNING FUND BALANCE, 9/1	44,264,472	44,264,472	44,264,472	
<b>ENDING FUND BALANCE, 8/31</b>	<b>\$ 42,464,472</b>	<b>\$ 44,264,472</b>	<b>\$ 42,749,599</b>	

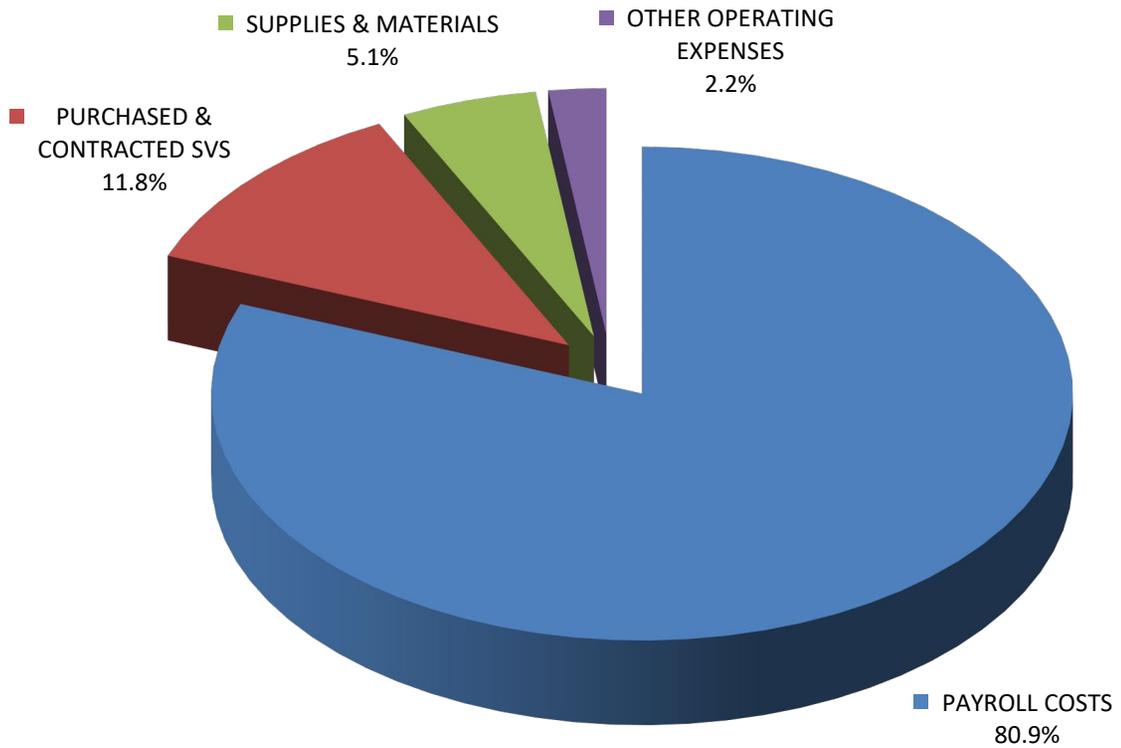
**LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**GENERAL FUND**  
**Expenditure Budget Summary by Function and Object**

<u>Function</u>	<u>PAYROLL SERVICES (61XX)</u>	<u>CONTRACTED SERVICES (62XX)</u>	<u>SUPPLIES/ MATERIALS (63XX)</u>	<u>OTHER EXPENSES (64XX)</u>	<u>DEBT EXPENSES (65XX)</u>	<u>TOTALS</u>	<u>FCT. %</u>
<b>INSTRUCTION &amp; INSTRUCTIONAL RELATED SERVICES</b>							
11 INSTRUCTION & INSTRUCTIONAL RELATED SERVICES	\$ 55,129,767	\$ 918,654	\$ 2,185,957	\$ 560,666	\$ -	\$ 58,795,044	59.15%
12 INSTRUCTIONAL RESOURCES	\$ 862,676	\$ 21,400	\$ 57,863	\$ 4,997	\$ -	\$ 946,936	0.95%
13 INSTRUCTIONAL STAFF DEVELOPMENT	\$ 619,380	\$ 243,955	\$ 20,890	\$ 210,979	\$ -	\$ 1,095,204	1.10%
<b>INSTRUCTIONAL &amp; SCHOOL LEADERSHIP</b>							
21 INSTRUCTIONAL LEADERSHIP	\$ 1,824,232	\$ 52,000	\$ 57,000	\$ 72,840	\$ -	\$ 2,006,072	2.02%
23 SCHOOL LEADERSHIP	\$ 4,559,030	\$ 7,180	\$ 58,434	\$ 25,558	\$ -	\$ 4,650,202	4.68%
<b>STUDENT SERVICES</b>							
31 GUIDANCE & COUNSELING	\$ 3,477,078	\$ 384,235	\$ 56,575	\$ 14,555	\$ -	\$ 3,932,443	3.96%
32 SOCIAL WORK SERVICES	\$ 140,139	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 140,139	0.14%
33 HEALTH SERVICES	\$ 904,513	\$ 155	\$ 14,867	\$ 2,510	\$ -	\$ 922,045	0.93%
35 NUTRITIONAL SERVICES	\$ 90,000	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 90,000	0.09%
61 COMMUNITY SERVICES	\$ 358,100	\$ 60,000	\$ 2,000	\$ 1,500	\$ -	\$ 421,600	0.42%
34 STUDENT TRANSPORTATION	\$ 3,930,001	\$ 184,500	\$ 828,000	\$ (288,500)	\$ -	\$ 4,654,001	4.68%
36 CO-CURRICULAR ACTIVITIES	\$ 1,473,940	\$ 199,560	\$ 199,527	\$ 618,150	\$ -	\$ 2,491,177	2.51%
41 GENERAL ADMINISTRATION	\$ 2,759,469	\$ 574,685	\$ 108,603	\$ 323,255	\$ -	\$ 3,766,012	3.79%
51 PLANT MAINTENANCE & OPERATIONS	\$ 2,232,379	\$ 7,354,955	\$ 851,300	\$ 504,500	\$ -	\$ 10,943,134	11.01%
<b>SUPPORT SERVICES-NON STUDENTS</b>							
52 SECURITY SERVICES	\$ 563,853	\$ 31,000	\$ 45,000	\$ 20,000	\$ -	\$ 659,853	0.66%
53 DATA PROCESSING SERVICES	\$ 1,469,721	\$ 835,926	\$ 587,739	\$ 34,000	\$ -	\$ 2,927,386	2.95%
71 DEBT SERVICES	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	0.00%
81 FACILITY ACQUISITIONS/CONSTRUCTION	\$ 30,000	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 30,000	0.03%
<b>OTHER GOVERNMENTAL CHARGES</b>							
92 RECAPTURE INCREMENTAL COSTS	\$ -	\$ 300,000	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 300,000	0.30%
93 SPECIAL ED. TRANSFERS-DAY SCHOOL	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 45,000	\$ -	\$ 45,000	0.05%
95 JJAEP TRANSFERS	\$ -	\$ 15,000	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 15,000	0.02%
99 OTHER INTERGOVERNMENTAL COSTS	\$ -	\$ 570,000	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 570,000	0.57%
<b>TOTAL OPERATING EXPENDITURES</b>	<b>\$ 80,424,278</b>	<b>\$ 11,753,205</b>	<b>\$ 5,073,755</b>	<b>\$ 2,150,010</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 99,401,248</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>PERCENTAGES BY OBJECT</b>		<b>80.91%</b>	<b>11.82%</b>	<b>5.10%</b>	<b>2.16%</b>	<b>0.00%</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
91 STATE EQUILIZATION PAYMENTS (RECAPTURE)	\$ -	\$ 45,283,201	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 45,283,201	
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b>\$ 80,424,278</b>	<b>\$ 57,036,406</b>	<b>\$ 5,073,755</b>	<b>\$ 2,150,010</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 144,684,449</b>	

# Lake Travis Independent School District General Fund Expenditures-by Function 2021-2022 Budget



**Lake Travis Independent School District  
General Fund Expenditures-by Object  
2021-2022 Budget**



## **DEBT SERVICE FUND**

**The Debt Service Fund is used to account for the payment of principal and interest on outstanding general obligation bonds issued by the District.**

**LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
DEBT SERVICE FUND  
BUDGET COMPARISON**

	<b>2020-2021 ORIGINAL BUDGET</b>	<b>2020-2021 AMENDED BUDGET</b>	<b>2021-2022 PROPOSED BUDGET</b>	<b>CHANGE</b>
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
Local Tax Revenues	\$ 45,800,000	\$ 45,550,000	\$ 53,500,000	\$ 7,950,000
State Program Revenues	200,000	700,000	100,000	(600,000)
		160,000		
<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b>\$ 46,000,000</b>	<b>\$ 46,410,000</b>	<b>\$ 53,600,000</b>	<b>\$ 7,350,000</b>
 <b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
<b>Function 71</b>				
Principal	\$ 29,870,000	\$ 30,952,000	\$ 33,930,000	\$ 2,978,000
Interest & Fees	15,997,167	14,868,215	14,428,399	(439,816)
Other	132,833	589,785	131,601	(458,184)
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b>\$ 46,000,000</b>	<b>\$ 46,410,000</b>	<b>\$ 48,490,000</b>	<b>\$ 2,080,000</b>
OTHER RESOURCES	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
OTHER USES	0	0	0	0
<b>TOTAL RESOURCES &amp; USES</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>
<b>EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES &amp; OTHER RESOURCES OVER EXPENDI- TURES AND OTHER USES</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 5,110,000</b>	<b>\$ 5,110,000</b>
BEGINNING FUND BALANCE, 9/1	7,099,415	7,099,415	7,099,415	
<b>ENDING FUND BALANCE, 8/31</b>	<b>\$ 7,099,415</b>	<b>\$ 7,099,415</b>	<b>\$ 12,209,415</b>	

**Lake Travis Independent School District  
Debt Service Payment Schedule  
FY 2021-2022**

<b>Series</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Principal</b>	<b>Interest</b>	<b>Total Payment</b>	<b>Due in Fiscal Year</b>
2012	02/15/2022	\$ 7,160,000	\$ 249,500	\$ 7,409,500	
2012	08/15/2022	\$ -	\$ 164,500	\$ 164,500	\$ 7,574,000
2013	02/15/2022	\$ 4,975,000	\$ 216,625	\$ 5,191,625	
2013	08/15/2022	\$ -	\$ 92,250	\$ 92,250	\$ 5,283,875
2017	02/15/2022	\$ -	\$ 1,767,775	\$ 1,767,775	
2017	08/15/2022	\$ -	\$ 1,767,775	\$ 1,767,775	\$ 3,535,550
2018A	02/15/2022	\$ 1,890,000	\$ 1,852,050	\$ 3,742,050	
2018A	08/15/2022	\$ -	\$ 1,804,800	\$ 1,804,800	\$ 5,546,850
2018B	02/15/2022	\$ 17,930,000	\$ 235,331	\$ 18,165,331	
2018B	08/15/2022	\$ -	\$ 627,550	\$ 627,550	\$ 18,792,881
2019	02/15/2022	\$ 1,815,000	\$ 1,860,525	\$ 3,675,525	
2019	08/15/2022	\$ -	\$ 1,815,150	\$ 1,815,150	\$ 5,490,675
2020	02/15/2022	\$ 160,000	\$ 989,284	\$ 1,149,284	
2020	08/15/2022	\$ -	\$ 985,284	\$ 985,284	\$ 2,134,568
		<b>\$ 33,930,000</b>	<b>\$ 14,428,399</b>	<b>\$ 48,358,399</b>	<b>\$ 48,358,399</b>

**Lake Travis Independent School District**  
**Total Bonded Debt Outstanding**  
**2021-2022**

<b>Fiscal Year</b>	<b>Principal</b>	<b>Interest</b>	<b>Total Payment</b>
2022	\$ 33,930,000	\$ 14,428,398	\$ 48,358,398
2023	\$ 9,080,000	\$ 14,322,392	\$ 23,402,392
2024	\$ 8,710,000	\$ 14,792,217	\$ 23,502,217
2025	\$ 9,935,000	\$ 13,645,892	\$ 23,580,892
2026	\$ 12,760,000	\$ 13,078,517	\$ 25,838,517
2027	\$ 13,270,000	\$ 12,427,767	\$ 25,697,767
2028	\$ 13,960,000	\$ 11,747,017	\$ 25,707,017
2029	\$ 14,670,000	\$ 11,031,267	\$ 25,701,267
2030	\$ 15,395,000	\$ 10,342,392	\$ 25,737,392
2031	\$ 15,975,000	\$ 9,722,435	\$ 25,697,435
2032	\$ 16,610,000	\$ 9,095,776	\$ 25,705,776
2033	\$ 17,235,000	\$ 8,466,062	\$ 25,701,062
2034	\$ 17,855,000	\$ 7,850,485	\$ 25,705,485
2035	\$ 18,500,000	\$ 7,206,010	\$ 25,706,010
2036	\$ 18,875,000	\$ 6,551,388	\$ 25,426,388
2037	\$ 13,980,000	\$ 5,929,763	\$ 19,909,763
2038	\$ 14,600,000	\$ 5,311,606	\$ 19,911,606
2039	\$ 15,255,000	\$ 4,654,038	\$ 19,909,038
2040	\$ 15,945,000	\$ 3,965,831	\$ 19,910,831
2041	\$ 9,870,000	\$ 3,381,188	\$ 13,251,188
2042	\$ 10,425,000	\$ 2,889,875	\$ 13,314,875
2043	\$ 9,920,000	\$ 2,377,625	\$ 12,297,625
2044	\$ 10,415,000	\$ 1,875,950	\$ 12,290,950
2045	\$ 10,905,000	\$ 1,388,788	\$ 12,293,788
2046	\$ 11,395,000	\$ 899,163	\$ 12,294,163
2047	\$ 6,315,000	\$ 490,725	\$ 6,805,725
2048	\$ 6,630,000	\$ 166,425	\$ 6,796,425
<b>\$ 372,415,000</b>	<b>\$ 198,038,992</b>	<b>\$ 570,453,992</b>	

## **FOOD SERVICE FUND**

**The Food Service Fund is used for programs using federal reimbursement revenues originating from the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA). User fees are charged to supplement reimbursements from the National School Lunch Program.**

**LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
FOOD SERVICE FUND  
BUDGET COMPARISON**

	<u>2020-2021 ORIGINAL BUDGET</u>	<u>2020-2021 AMENDED BUDGET</u>	<u>2021-2022 PROPOSED BUDGET</u>	<u>CHANGE</u>
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
Local Revenues	\$ 5,261,000	\$ 2,611,000	\$ 3,311,000	\$ 700,000
State Revenues	9,000	9,000	9,000	0
Federal Revenues	530,000	260,000	2,530,000 *	2,270,000
<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b><u>\$ 5,800,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 2,880,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 5,850,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 2,970,000</u></b>
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
<b>Function 35</b>				
Payroll	\$ 2,345,997	\$ 2,040,000	\$ 2,704,487	\$ 664,487
Contracted Services	34,659	11,000	42,930	31,930
Supplies & Materials	2,874,945	1,670,000	2,557,344	887,344
Other Operating	13,260	9,000	14,100	5,100
Capital Outlay	0	0	0	0
<b>Total 35-Food Service</b>	<b><u>\$ 5,268,861</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 3,730,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 5,318,861</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 1,588,861</u></b>
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
<b>Function 51</b>				
Contracted Services	\$ 531,139	\$ 0	\$ 531,139	\$ 531,139
Supplies & Materials	0	0	0	0
<b>Total 51-Plant and Maintenance Operations</b>	<b><u>\$ 531,139</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 531,139</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 531,139</u></b>
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b><u>\$ 5,800,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 3,730,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 5,850,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 2,120,000</u></b>
OTHER RESOURCES	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0	\$ 0
OTHER USES	0	0	0	0
<b>TOTAL RESOURCES &amp; USES</b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>
<b>EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES &amp; OTHER RESOURCES OVER EXPENDI- TURES AND OTHER USES</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ (850,000)</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 850,000</b>
BEGINNING FUND BALANCE, 9/1	\$ 1,266,329	\$ 1,266,329	\$ 416,329	\$ (850,000)
<b>ENDING FUND BALANCE, 8/31</b>	<b><u>\$ 1,266,329</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 416,329</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 416,329</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>

\* Revenue change for prior year reflects SSO waiver for free meals at Elementary campuses.

# **TAX SECTION**

**Lake Travis Independent School District**  
**Projected Property Values and Estimated Tax Revenues**  
**FY 2021-2022**

	<u>General Operating</u>	<u>Debt Service</u>
Estimated Taxable Values	\$ 15,416,395,897	\$ 15,416,395,897
Frozen Values for Disabled & Over 65	2,320,231,132	2,320,231,132
Net Estimated Taxable Value	<u>\$ 13,096,164,765</u>	<u>\$ 13,096,164,765</u>
Tax Rate	\$ 0.8826	\$ 0.3475
Tax Revenue	\$ 115,586,750	\$ 45,509,173
Tax Levy on Frozen Accounts	16,897,036	6,652,753
Net Tax Levy	<u>\$ 132,483,786</u>	<u>\$ 52,161,926</u>
Collection Rate	98.50%	98.50%
Net Tax Revenue	\$ 130,496,528	\$ 51,379,497
Delinquent Tax	450,000	200,000
Penalty and Interest	600,000	200,000
Estimated Tax Revenues	<u>\$ 131,546,528</u>	<u>\$ 51,779,497</u>



50-280 (Rev. 8-19/5)

## NOTICE OF PUBLIC MEETING TO DISCUSS BUDGET AND PROPOSED TAX RATE

The Lake Travis Independent School District will hold a public meeting at 6:00pm, August 11, 2021 in the EDC, Live Oak Room, 607 N Ranch Road 620

Lakeway, Texas 78734

**The purpose of this meeting is to discuss the school district's budget that will determine the tax rate that will be adopted. Public participation in the discussion is invited.**

The tax rate that is ultimately adopted at this meeting or at a separate meeting at a later date may not exceed the proposed rate shown below unless the district publishes a revised notice containing the same information and comparisons set out below and holds another public meeting to discuss the revised notice.

**Maintenance Tax**                      \$ 0.88260 /\$100 (Proposed rate for maintenance and operations)

**School Debt Service Tax**  
**Approved by Local Voters**    \$ 0.3475 /\$100 (proposed rate to pay bonded indebtedness)

### Comparison of Proposed Budget with Last Year's Budget

The applicable percentage increase or decrease (or difference) in the amount budgeted in the preceding fiscal year and the amount budgeted for the fiscal year that begins during the current tax year is indicated for each of the following expenditure categories:

Maintenance and operations	<u>4.01</u>	% increase	or		% (decrease)
Debt service	<u>5.41</u>	% increase	or		% (decrease)
Total expenditures	<u>4.36</u>	% increase	or		% (decrease)

### Total Appraised Value and Total Taxable Value (as calculated under Tax Code Section 26.04)

	<u>Preceding Tax Year</u>	<u>Current Tax Year</u>
Total appraised value* of all property	\$ <u>16,936,871,493</u>	\$ <u>19,744,361,606</u>
Total appraised value* of new property**	\$ <u>457,823,758</u>	\$ <u>528,667,813</u>
Total taxable value*** of all property	\$ <u>13,599,012,101</u>	\$ <u>15,416,395,897</u>
Total taxable value*** of new property**	\$ <u>404,590,062</u>	\$ <u>485,052,530</u>

\* "Appraised value" is the amount shown on the appraisal roll and defined by Tax Code Section 1.04(8).

\*\* "New property" is defined by Tax Code Section 26.012(17).

\*\*\* "Taxable value" is defined by Tax Code Section 1.04(10).

### Bonded Indebtedness

Total amount of outstanding and unpaid bonded indebtedness\* \$ 350,725,000

\* Outstanding principal.

**Comparison of Proposed Rates with Last Year's Rates**

	<b><u>Maintenance &amp; Operations</u></b>	<b><u>Interest &amp; Sinking Fund*</u></b>	<b><u>Total</u></b>	<b><u>Local Revenue Per Student</u></b>	<b><u>State Revenue Per Student</u></b>
<b>Last Year's Rate</b>	\$ 0.976400	\$ 0.347500 *	\$ 1.323900	\$ 12,096	\$ 399
<b>Rate to Maintain Same Level of Maintenance &amp; Operations Revenue &amp; Pay Debt Service</b>	\$ 0.913710	\$ 0.320870 *	\$ 1.234580	\$ 13,305	\$ 196
<b>Proposed Rate</b>	\$ 0.882600	\$ 0.347500 *	\$ 1.230100	\$ 12,806	\$ 196

\* The Interest & Sinking Fund tax revenue is used to pay for bonded indebtedness on construction, equipment, or both. The bonds, and the tax rate necessary to pay those bonds, were approved by the voters of this district.

**Comparison of Proposed Levy with Last Year's Levy on Average Residence**

	<b><u>Last Year</u></b>	<b><u>This Year</u></b>
Average Market Value of Residences	\$ 557,361	\$ 649,536
Average Taxable Value of Residences	\$ 416,795	\$ 455,485
Last Year's Rate Versus Proposed Rate per \$100 Value	\$ 1.323900	\$ 1.230100
Taxes Due on Average Residence	\$ 5,517.95	\$ 5,602.92
Increase (Decrease) in Taxes		\$ 84.97

**Under state law, the dollar amount of school taxes imposed on the residence homestead of a person 65 years of age or older or of the surviving spouse of such a person, if the surviving spouse was 55 years of age or older when the person died, may not be increased above the amount paid in the first year after the person turned 65, regardless of changes in tax rate or property value.**

**Notice of Voter-Approval Rate: The highest tax rate the district can adopt before requiring voter approval at an election is**

\$1.3239

**. This election will be automatically held if**

**the district adopts a rate in excess of the voter-approval rate of**                     \$1.3239                    .

**Fund Balances**

The following estimated balances will remain at the end of the current fiscal year and are not encumbered with or by a corresponding debt obligation, less estimated funds necessary for operating the district before receipt of the first state aid payment:

Maintenance and Operations Fund Balance(s)	\$ 43,764,472
Interest & Sinking Fund Balance(s)	\$ 7,483,338

A school district may not increase the district's maintenance and operations tax rate to create a surplus in maintenance and operations tax revenue for the purpose of paying the district's debt service.



**Comparison of Proposed Rates with Last Year's Rates**

	<b><u>Maintenance &amp; Operations</u></b>	<b><u>Interest &amp; Sinking Fund*</u></b>	<b><u>Total</u></b>	<b><u>Local Revenue Per Student</u></b>	<b><u>State Revenue Per Student</u></b>
<b>Last Year's Rate</b>	\$ 0.976400	\$ 0.347500 *	\$ 1.323900	\$ 12,096	\$ 399
<b>Rate to Maintain Same Level of Maintenance &amp; Operations Revenue &amp; Pay Debt Service</b>	\$ 0.913710	\$ 0.320870 *	\$ 1.234580	\$ 13,305	\$ 196
<b>Proposed Rate</b>	\$ 0.902600	\$ 0.327500 *	\$ 1.230100	\$ 12,806	\$ 196

\* The Interest & Sinking Fund tax revenue is used to pay for bonded indebtedness on construction, equipment, or both. The bonds, and the tax rate necessary to pay those bonds, were approved by the voters of this district.

**Comparison of Proposed Levy with Last Year's Levy on Average Residence**

	<b><u>Last Year</u></b>	<b><u>This Year</u></b>
Average Market Value of Residences	\$ 557,361	\$ 649,536
Average Taxable Value of Residences	\$ 416,795	\$ 455,485
Last Year's Rate Versus Proposed Rate per \$100 Value	\$ 1.323900	\$ 1.230100
Taxes Due on Average Residence	\$ 5,517.95	\$ 5,602.92
Increase (Decrease) in Taxes		\$ 84.97

**Under state law, the dollar amount of school taxes imposed on the residence homestead of a person 65 years of age or older or of the surviving spouse of such a person, if the surviving spouse was 55 years of age or older when the person died, may not be increased above the amount paid in the first year after the person turned 65, regardless of changes in tax rate or property value.**

**Notice of Voter-Approval Rate: The highest tax rate the district can adopt before requiring voter approval at an election is \$1.3239 . This election will be automatically held if the district adopts a rate in excess of the voter-approval rate of \$1.3239 .**

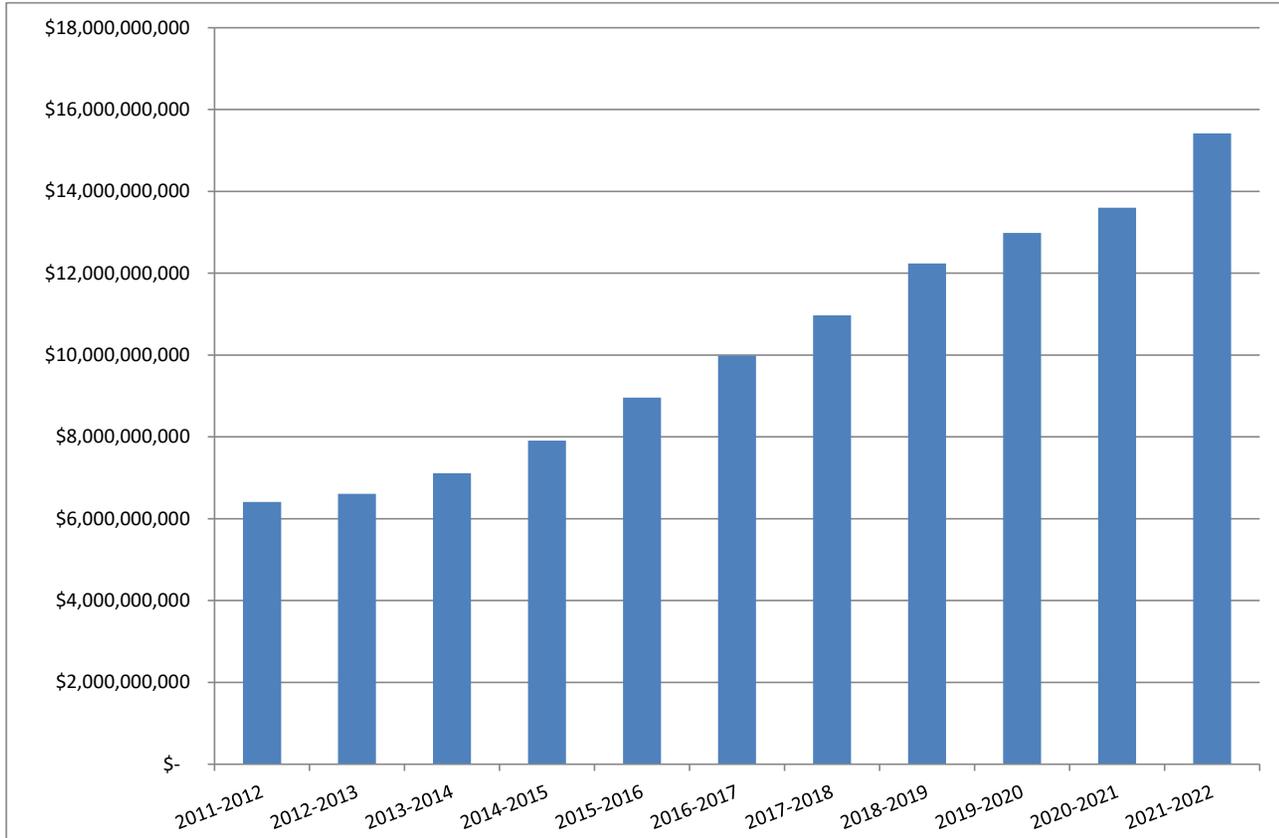
**Fund Balances**

The following estimated balances will remain at the end of the current fiscal year and are not encumbered with or by a corresponding debt obligation, less estimated funds necessary for operating the district before receipt of the first state aid payment:

Maintenance and Operations Fund Balance(s)	\$ 43,764,472
Interest & Sinking Fund Balance(s)	\$ 7,483,338

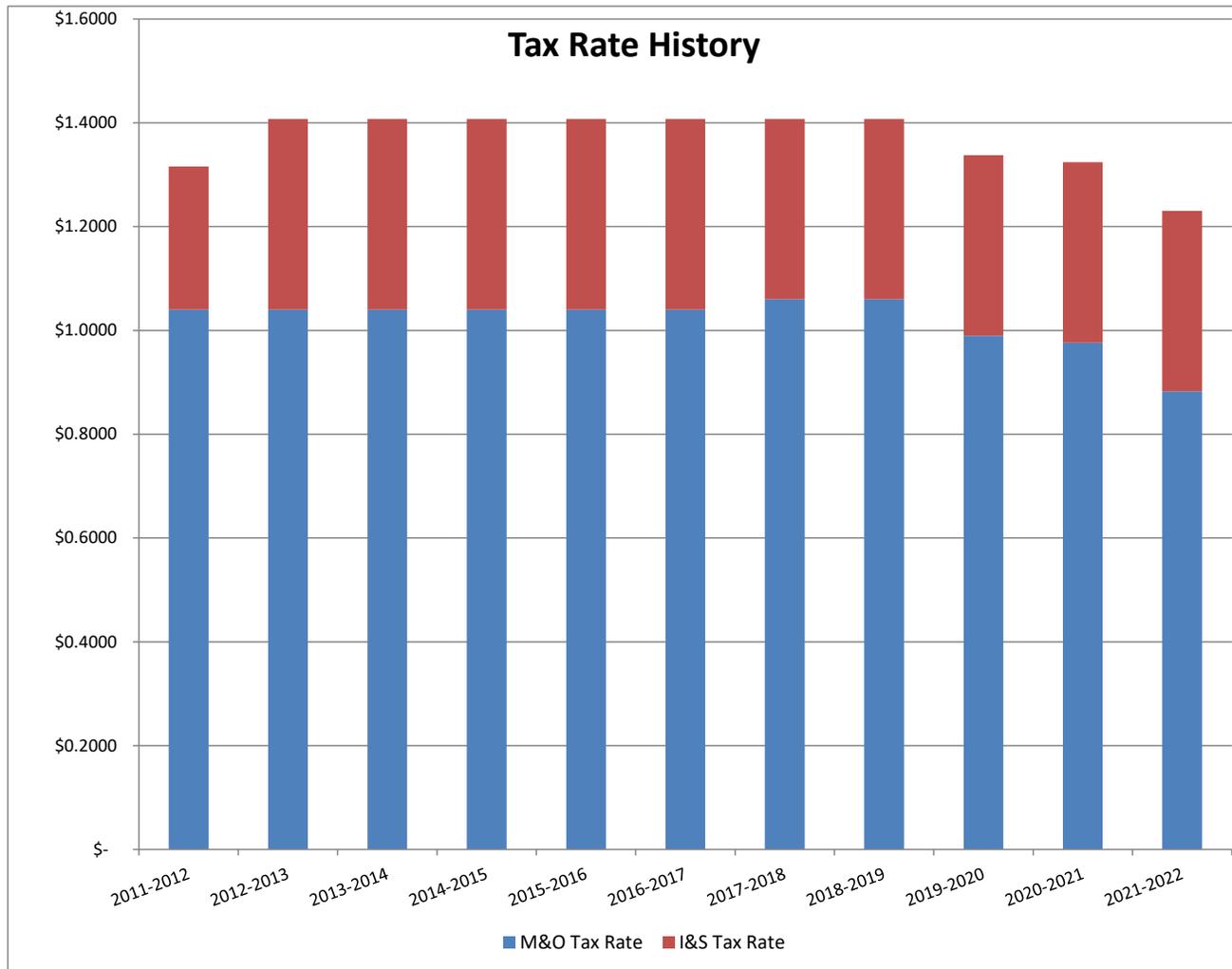
A school district may not increase the district's maintenance and operations tax rate to create a surplus in maintenance and operations tax revenue for the purpose of paying the district's debt service.

## Lake Travis Independent School District Net Taxable Value History



<u>Year</u>	<u>Assessed/Appraised Value for School Tax Purposes</u>	<u>Percent Change</u>	<u>Total Tax Levy</u>
2011-2012	\$ 6,408,739,302	2.43%	\$ 82,205,748
2012-2013	\$ 6,608,815,301	3.12%	\$ 91,622,403
2013-2014	\$ 7,115,224,770	7.66%	\$ 97,690,930
2014-2015	\$ 7,911,588,785	11.19%	\$ 107,832,717
2015-2016	\$ 8,957,914,229	13.23%	\$ 123,178,602
2016-2017	\$ 9,984,903,074	11.46%	\$ 135,772,415
2017-2018	\$ 10,969,867,472	9.86%	\$ 149,550,950
2018-2019	\$ 12,241,356,541	11.59%	\$ 166,767,239
2019-2020	\$ 12,986,311,297	6.09%	\$ 168,439,332
2020-2021	\$ 13,599,012,101	4.72%	\$ 175,302,193
2021-2022	\$ 15,416,395,897	13.36%	\$ 184,645,711

# Lake Travis Independent School District



<u>Year</u>		<u>Maintenance &amp; Operations</u>		<u>Interest &amp; Sinking</u>		<u>Total</u>
2011-2012	\$	1.0400	\$	0.2759	\$	1.3159
2012-2013	\$	1.0400	\$	0.3675	\$	1.4075
2013-2014	\$	1.0400	\$	0.3675	\$	1.4075
2014-2015	\$	1.0400	\$	0.3675	\$	1.4075
2015-2016	\$	1.0400	\$	0.3675	\$	1.4075
2016-2017	\$	1.0400	\$	0.3675	\$	1.4075
2017-2018	\$	1.0600	\$	0.3475	\$	1.4075
2018-2019	\$	1.0600	\$	0.3475	\$	1.4075
2019-2020	\$	0.9900	\$	0.3475	\$	1.3375
2020-2021	\$	0.9764	\$	0.3475	\$	1.3239
2021-2022	\$	0.8826	\$	0.3475	\$	1.2301

# **SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION**

# Lake Travis Independent School District

## Special Revenue Funds

### Planning Estimates

### 2021-2022

<b>Fund</b>	<b>Program</b>	<b>Entitlements, Grants &amp; Other Revenues</b>
211	ESEA Title I, Part A	\$ 211,000
255	ESEA Title II, Part A	\$ 112,000
263	ESEA Title III, LEP	\$ 75,000
224	IDEA B- Formula	\$ 1,516,000
225	IDEA B- Preschool	\$ 12,000
244	Carl Perkins Vocational Grant	\$ 41,000
281	ESSER II	\$ 1,347,549
282	ESSER III	\$ 3,026,404
28X	ESSER SUPP	\$ 1,770,771
410	Instructional Materials Allotment	\$ 840,000
461	School Activity Funds	\$ 1,000,000
486	LT Athletic Booster Club	\$ 250,000
48X	LT Educational Foundation Grants	\$ 250,000
	<b><i>Total Planning Estimates</i></b>	<b><i>\$ 10,451,724</i></b>

# LAKE TRAVIS ISD 2021-22 BUDGET CALENDAR

12/1/2020

## DECEMBER

12/1/2020	ACDP	Review Budget Calendar with the Executive Leadership Team.
12/16/2020	B	Include Budget Calendar as an information item on board agenda.

## JANUARY

1/11/2021	ACDP	Begin gathering feedback from campuses, departments and programs on personnel needs.
1/20/2021	B	Include Budget Projection as a Presentation/Discussion item on board agenda.
1/26/2021	ACDP	Review the Budget Projection. Disseminate and discuss enrollment projections and allocations with the Executive Leadership Team.

## FEBRUARY

2/1/2021	CDP	Disseminate Budget Packets to campuses and departments.
2/3/2021	CDP	Review budget procedures and guidelines with administrative assistants.
2/17/2021	B	Present updated information, as needed, including enrollment projections, property values, potential financial constraints and options.

## MARCH

3/12/2021	CDP	All campus, department, and program budget books submitted to the Business Office.
3/22/2021	D	Budget Review Teams review departmental budgets.
3/22/2021	CP	Budget Review Teams review campus and instructional program budgets.
3/24/2021	B	Review budget procedures, guidelines and staffing with Board.

## APRIL

4/7/2021	B	Board Workshop. Update budget.
4/12/2021	A	District Review Team review budgets and instructional staffing recommendations.
4/21/2021	B	Board Meeting. Update budget. Review and approve instructional staffing requirements.
4/26/2021	A	Receive updated property values from appraisal district.

## MAY

5/3/2021	A	District Review Team review budgets and non-instructional staffing recommendations.
5/19/2021	B	Review budget with new Board Members, if applicable.
5/19/2021	B	Board Meeting. Update budget. Review and approve non-instructional staffing requirements.

## JUNE

6/1/2021	A	District Review Team discuss employee salary and benefit adjustments.
6/2/2021	B	Board Workshop. Update budget.
6/16/2021	B	Board Meeting. Update budget. Review and approve employee salary and benefit adjustments, if applicable.

## JULY

7/21/2021	B	Board Meeting (Budget Workshop to precede meeting if necessary).
7/26/2021	A	Certified appraisal value from Travis Central Appraisal District.

## AUGUST

8/2/2021	A	Prepare Truth in Taxation Publication
8/11/2021	B	Board Meeting. Budget / Tax Rate Hearing. Adopt budget and tax rate.

A – Administration B - Board C- Campus D - Department P - Program

**Lake Travis Independent School District**  
**Student Enrollment History and Projections**  
 Fiscal Years 2011-2012 through 2021-2022

	Actual 2011-2012	Actual 2012-2013	Actual 2013-2014	Actual 2014-2015	Actual 2015-2016	Actual 2016-2017	Actual 2017-2018	Actual 2018-2019	Actual 2019-2020	Actual 2020-2021	Projected 2021-2022
Lake Travis Elementary	877	906	981	881	879	920	895	871	880	782	814
Lakeway Elementary	648	641	660	698	714	714	679	695	672	562	619
Bee Cave Elementary	743	857	930	616	634	684	750	803	815	768	842
Lake Pointe Elementary	573	575	596	671	713	752	739	706	729	724	799
Serene Hills Elementary	569	635	718	755	760	810	880	898	924	612	656
West Cypress Hills Elementary	0	0	0	524	603	674	797	874	937	558	667
Rough Hollow Elementary	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	726	863
<b>ELEMENTARY TOTAL</b>	<b>3,410</b>	<b>3,614</b>	<b>3,885</b>	<b>4,145</b>	<b>4,303</b>	<b>4,554</b>	<b>4,740</b>	<b>4,847</b>	<b>4,957</b>	<b>4,732</b>	<b>5,260</b>
Change from Prior Year		204	271	260	158	251	186	107	110	(225)	528
% Change from Prior Year		6.0%	7.5%	6.7%	3.8%	5.8%	4.1%	2.3%	2.3%	-4.5%	11.2%
Lake Travis Middle School	843	944	1043	1066	1109	1263	1420	1544	816	879	876
Hudson Bend Middle School	892	916	928	1029	1096	1180	1170	1135	1039	982	966
Bee Cave Middle School	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	871	849	884
<b>MIDDLE SCHOOL TOTAL</b>	<b>1,735</b>	<b>1,860</b>	<b>1,971</b>	<b>2,095</b>	<b>2,205</b>	<b>2,443</b>	<b>2,590</b>	<b>2,679</b>	<b>2,726</b>	<b>2,710</b>	<b>2,726</b>
Change from Prior Year		125	111	124	110	238	147	89	47	(16)	16
% Change from Prior Year		7.2%	6.0%	6.3%	5.3%	10.8%	6.0%	3.4%	1.8%	-0.6%	0.6%
Lake Travis High School	2,218	2,305	2,402	2,556	2,697	2,828	3,080	3,212	3,401	3,559	3,654
<b>HIGH SCHOOL TOTAL</b>	<b>2,218</b>	<b>2,305</b>	<b>2,402</b>	<b>2,556</b>	<b>2,697</b>	<b>2,828</b>	<b>3,080</b>	<b>3,212</b>	<b>3,401</b>	<b>3,559</b>	<b>3,654</b>
Change from Prior Year		87	97	154	141	131	252	132	189	158	95
% Change from Prior Year		3.9%	4.2%	6.4%	5.5%	4.9%	8.9%	4.3%	5.9%	4.6%	2.7%
<b>TOTAL ENROLLMENT</b>	<b>7,363</b>	<b>7,779</b>	<b>8,258</b>	<b>8,796</b>	<b>9,205</b>	<b>9,825</b>	<b>10,410</b>	<b>10,738</b>	<b>11,084</b>	<b>11,001</b>	<b>11,640</b>
Change from Prior Year		416	479	538	409	620	585	328	346	(83)	639
% Change from Prior Year		5.6%	6.2%	6.5%	4.6%	6.7%	6.0%	3.2%	3.2%	-0.7%	5.8%



## AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET

### AGENDA ITEM

Efficiency Audit Presentation

### RECOMMENDED ACTION

**For Presentation/Discussion only**

### RATIONALE

House Bill 3 (HB 3) provided a means for districts to access two additional Golden Pennies, eight instead of six, that are not subject to recapture by the State. In order to access the two additional pennies, additional requirements were approved in legislation for tax ratification elections. Most notable is the need to hold elections on the November Uniform Election Date and the requirement that an efficiency audit be conducted, presented in a public forum, and posted to the District's website.

Lake Travis ISD engaged Maxwell, Locke & Ritter to conduct the efficiency audit which was completed in July and will be presented to the Board on August 11, 2021. The audit evaluates the operations of the District related to fiscal management, efficiency, and utilization of resources as set forth in the guidelines established by the Legislative Budget Board in conjunction with HB 3. The methodology required the District be compared to similar districts along with the state average. The comparison districts were chosen based on student enrollment, labor market conditions, student needs, and financial resources. For Lake Travis ISD, the districts include Highland Park ISD, Grapevine-Colleyville ISD, Alamo Heights ISD, Carroll ISD, and Eanes ISD.

### BUDGET PROVISIONS

None

### RESOURCE PERSONNEL

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services

Brad Goerke – Director of Finance

### ATTACHMENTS

Lake Travis Independent School District 2021 Efficiency Audit

### MEETING DATE

August 11, 2021

**Lake Travis  
Independent School District**

**Agreed-Upon Procedures Report  
On Applying Efficiency Audit Guidelines  
Established by the Legislative Budget Board**





MAXWELL LOCKE & RITTER LLP

*Accountants and Consultants*

*An Affiliate of CPAmerica International*

tel (512) 370 3200 fax (512) 370 3250  
www.mlrpc.com

Austin: 401 Congress Avenue, Suite 1100  
Austin, TX 78701

Round Rock: 411 West Main Street, Suite 300  
Round Rock, TX 78664

## **Independent Accountants' Report on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures**

To the Board of Trustees of  
Lake Travis Independent School District

Dear Board Members:

We have performed the procedures described in Schedules A and B solely to assist Lake Travis Independent School District (the "District") in evaluating the operations of the District related to fiscal management, efficiency, and utilization of resources as set forth in the guidelines established by the Legislative Budget Board in conjunction with House Bill 3 of the 86<sup>th</sup> Legislature and Texas Education Code, Section 11.184 (the "Guidelines"). The District's management is responsible for the information required by the Guidelines.

The District has agreed to and acknowledged that the procedures performed are appropriate to meet the intended purpose of evaluating the information required by the Guidelines. This report may not be suitable for any other purpose. The procedures performed may not address all the items of interest to a user of this report and may not meet the needs of all users of this report and, as such, users are responsible for determining whether the procedures performed are appropriate for their purposes.

The procedures and associated findings are included in Schedule A, Summary of Results on Applying Efficiency Audit Guidelines, and Schedule B, District Data Including Peer and State Comparisons and Additional Financial, Operational, and Academic Information.

We were engaged by the District to perform this engagement to apply agreed-upon procedures and conducted our engagement in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. We were not engaged to and did not conduct an audit or review engagement, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion or conclusion, respectively, on the information included in Schedules A and B required by the Guidelines. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion or conclusion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

Affiliated Company

ML&R WEALTH MANAGEMENT LLC

*"A Registered Investment Advisor"  
This firm is not a CPA firm*

We are required to be independent of the District and to meet our other ethical responsibilities, in accordance with the relevant ethical requirements related to our agreed-upon procedures engagement.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the District and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than the District.

*Maxwell Locke + Ritter LLP*

Austin, Texas

July 27, 2021

## Schedule A - Summary of Results on Applying Efficiency Audit Guidelines

Based on the Guidelines established by the Legislative Budget Board, the following summary provides key information about the proposed tax ratification election for the Lake Travis Independent School District (the "District") and highlights our findings as detailed in Schedule B, District Data Including Peer and State Comparisons and Additional Financial, Operational, and Academic Information:

- The District will hold the election to adopt the District's M&O tax rate on November 2, 2021.
- The District held a tax ratification election on November 7, 2017 to increase the M&O tax rate by \$0.02/\$100 of assessed value, and the proposition passed with 71% of the vote. The District has not held any other tax ratification elections previous to this election.
- The current 2020 M&O tax rate for the District, peer districts' average, and state average are as follows:
  - District - \$0.9764/\$100 of assessed value
  - Peer Districts' Average - \$0.9704/\$100 of assessed value
  - State Average - \$0.9872/\$100 of assessed value

The District's projected 2021 M&O tax rate prior to the election to adopt the District's M&O tax rate is \$0.8826/\$100 of assessed value. The District will propose an additional \$0.02/\$100 of assessed value as part of the tax ratification election to increase the projected 2021 M&O tax rate to \$0.9026/\$100 of assessed value.

- The amount of tax revenue the tax rate change is estimated to generate in the first school year in dollars and as a percentage of the District's current operating budget is as follows:
  - Estimated tax revenue - \$3,000,000
  - Percentage of the District's operating budget - 2.3%
- The estimated dollar-amount increase, as a result of the M&O tax rate change, to the property tax bill of a single-family residential property at the current average home value of the district is \$91. This reflects the dollar amount on the M&O tax rate only. There will be \$0 change on the property tax bill as the total tax rate will not change.

- The District’s statement explaining how it intends to spend the additional tax revenue, including any new programs, and consequences if the measure does not pass is as follows:

Based on the current school funding formula under House Bill 3 and House Bill 1525, the District will see no significant increase to funding for the 2021-2022 school year. Based on the District's revenue shortfalls as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic and 2% annual compensation increase for all staff, the District anticipates a \$1.5 million budget deficit for 2021-2022. Without the additional two cents included in the projected M&O tax rate, budget projections include deficits each year through the 2024-2025 school year. If voters approve the increased M&O tax rate, the District intends to cover the projected budget deficit and enhance the initiatives of accelerated learning and special services support. If the M&O tax rate increase is not approved by voters, the District would likely consider smaller annual pay increases for all staff and maintain existing instructional programs as much as possible.

- The District had a 2019 accountability rating of A and a district score of 94, and its peer districts had an average district score of 95. School districts were not rated during 2020 due to COVID-19.
- The District’s 2019-2020 School Financial Integrity Rating System of Texas (FIRST) rating was A - Superior.
- The District’s 2019-2020 actual operating expenditures per enrolled student compared to its peer districts’ average and the state average is as follows:
  - District - \$9,024
  - Peer Districts’ Average - \$10,329
  - State Average - \$10,406

A high-level summary of the significant findings resulting from the procedures performed as documented in Schedule B and any District responses to the findings are as follows:

- The District’s 2019 accountability rating and 2019-2020 school year attendance percentages are comparable to its peer districts and state average. All of the District’s campuses had an A or B accountability rating.
- For the 2019-2020 school year, the District’s local M&O tax revenue was more than its peer districts’ average, and its other local and intermediate revenues were less than its peer districts’ average. Operating expenditures per student were comparable to its peer districts’ average. The District had more revenues per student than operating expenditures per student.

- **District Response:** The District's revenue per student is comparable to its peer districts' average for each revenue classification presented except for local tax revenue in which it exceeds its peer districts due to accessing six of the eight "Golden Pennies" available under House Bill 3 school funding legislation. Golden Pennies are not subject to recapture; therefore more local tax revenue remains in the General Fund budget. The District's other local and intermediate revenue per student falls below its peer districts and is primarily dependent on interest earnings on investments, facilities rental income, and athletic ticket sales.
- The District's expenditures per student is comparable to its peer districts' average both in total expenditures and for each expenditure classification presented. The District's revenue per student exceeds its operating expenditures per student creating a surplus fund balance.
- The District's ratio of students per total staff and students per teaching staff is higher than its peer districts.
- **District Response:** The students per total staff and students per teaching staff is higher than its peer districts' average due to being a fast growth district the previous ten years.

**Schedule B - District Data Including Peer and State Comparisons and Additional Financial, Operational, and Academic Information**

**District Data on Accountability, Students, Staffing and Finances, with Peer and State Comparisons**

**1. Peer Districts**

- a. We selected five peer districts that are similar to the Lake Travis Independent School District (the “District”) using characteristics such as student enrollment, labor market conditions, student needs, and financial resources.

FIGURE 1  
PEER DISTRICTS

---

Highland Park ISD  
 Grapevine-Colleyville ISD  
 Alamo Heights ISD  
 Carroll ISD  
 Eanes ISD

- b. We obtained the methodology used to identify peer districts: Peer districts were identified based on resources identified in Appendix B to the Legislative Budget Board (“LBB”) Guidelines. The peer districts were selected using the Texas Education Agency’s Snapshot: School District Profiles and were identified based on having similar property wealth, type, and/or district size.

**2. Accountability Rating**

- a. We obtained the 2019 overall accountability rating (A-F) and score for the District (1-100) and the peer district average score (1-100) assigned by the Texas Education Agency. School districts were not rated during 2020 due to COVID-19.

FIGURE 2  
ACCOUNTABILITY RATING COMPARISON  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

---

DISTRICT RATING (A-F)	DISTRICT SCORE (1-100)	PEER DISTRICTS’ AVERAGE SCORE (1-100)
A	94	95

---

**Finding:** We noted that the District’s score was comparable with the peer districts’ average score.

- b. We obtained the 2019 accountability rating count for each campus level within the District (A-F).

FIGURE 3  
ACCOUNTABILITY RATINGS BY CAMPUS LEVEL  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS	MIDDLE SCHOOLS	HIGH SCHOOLS
A Lake Pointe Lakeway Serene Hills	Hudson Bend	Lake Travis
B Bee Cave Lake Travis West Cypress Hills	Lake Travis	-
C -	-	-
D -	-	-
F -	-	-

- c. We reviewed the ratings included in the 2019 accountability rating, noting there were no campuses in the District that received an F accountability rating.
- d. We reviewed the 2019 accountability rating noting there were no campuses that are required to implement a campus turnaround plan.

**3. Financial Rating**

- a. We obtained the 2019-2020 School Financial Integrity Rating System of Texas (FIRST) rating for the District (A-F), which is based on 2018-2019 school year data.

FIGURE 4  
SCHOOL FIRST RATING  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

DISTRICT GRADE (A-F)
RATING: A

- b. We obtained the 2019-2020 School FIRST rating, noting District received a rating of A - Superior, thus there were no indicators that were not met.

#### 4. Student Characteristics

- a. We obtained the following items for the 2019-2020 school year:
  - i. For the District, total students, economically disadvantaged students, English learner students, special education students, bilingual/ESL education students, and career and technical education students.
  - ii. Percentage of the groups above compared to the total student population of the District.
  - iii. The peer districts' and state average percentage for the groups above.

FIGURE 5  
SELECTED STUDENT CHARACTERISTICS  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

	TOTAL STUDENT POPULATION COUNT	% OF STUDENT POPULATION	PEER DISTRICTS' AVERAGE %	STATE AVERAGE %
Total Students	11,057	100.0%	N/A	N/A
Economically Disadvantaged	1,400	12.7%	9.8%	60.3%
English Learners	688	6.2%	4.7%	20.3%
Special Education	1,037	9.4%	8.8%	10.5%
Bilingual/ESL Education	671	6.1%	6.7%	20.6%
Career and Technical Education	3,027	27.4%	22.4%	27.6%

**Finding:** The District's percentages are comparable with its peer districts.

- b. We obtained the attendance rate for the District, peer districts' average, and state average for the 2019-2020 school year.

FIGURE 6  
ATTENDANCE RATE  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

DISTRICT TOTAL	PEER DISTRICTS' AVERAGE	STATE AVERAGE
95.3%	96.3%	95.4%

**Finding:** The District's attendance rate is comparable with its peer districts' average.

- c. We obtained the total enrollment number of the District for the 2019-2020 school year and the four school years prior.

FIGURE 7  
5-YEAR ENROLLMENT  
SCHOOL YEAR RANGE

	ENROLLMENT
Most Recent School Year	11,085
1 Year Prior	10,738
2 Years Prior	10,410
3 Years Prior	9,825
4 Years Prior	9,238
Average Annual Percentage Change (based on the previous five years)	4.7%
Projected Next School Year	11,001

## 5. District Revenue

- a. We obtained the District's revenue for the 2019-2020 school year for local M&O tax, state, federal, and other local and intermediate revenue based on revenue per student, percentage of total revenue, and total revenue from the Texas Education Agency, Public Education Information Management System District Financial Actual Reports. We obtained the same information for the peer districts' average and the state average.

FIGURE 8  
DISTRICT TAX REVENUE  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

	DISTRICT		PEER DISTRICTS' AVERAGE		STATE AVERAGE	
	REVENUE PER STUDENT	% OF TOTAL	REVENUE PER STUDENT	% OF TOTAL	REVENUE PER STUDENT	% OF TOTAL
Local M&O Tax (Retained)(1)	\$ 7,583	83.5%	\$ 7,544	73.0%	\$ 4,660	43.1%
State	477	5.2%	762	7.4%	4,417	40.9%
Federal	296	3.3%	482	4.6%	1,280	11.8%
Other Local and Intermediate	731	8.0%	1,550	15.0%	454	4.2%
Total Revenue	<u>\$ 9,087</u>	100.0%	<u>\$ 10,338</u>	100.0%	<u>\$ 10,811</u>	100.0%

NOTE: (1) Excludes Debt Service and Recapture.

**Finding:** The District's revenue per student is comparable to its peer districts' average for each revenue classification presented except for local tax revenue which exceeds its peer districts due to accessing six of the eight "Golden Pennies" available under House Bill 3 school funding legislation. Golden Pennies are not subject to recapture; therefore more local tax revenue remains in the General Fund budget. The District's other local and intermediate revenue per student falls below its peer districts and is primarily dependent on interest earnings on investments, facilities rental income, and athletic ticket sales.

## 6. District Expenditures

- a. We obtained the District's expenditures for the 2019-2020 school year for the functions noted in the LBB Guidelines based on expenditures per student, percentage of total expenditures, and total expenditures from the Texas Education Agency, Public Education Information Management System District Financial Actual Reports. We obtained the same information for the peer districts' average and the state average.

FIGURE 9  
DISTRICT ACTUAL OPERATING EXPENDITURES  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

	DISTRICT		PEER DISTRICTS' AVERAGE		STATE AVERAGE	
	EXPENDITURES PER STUDENT	% OF TOTAL	EXPENDITURES PER STUDENT	% OF TOTAL	EXPENDITURES PER STUDENT	% OF TOTAL
Instruction	\$ 5,175	57.3%	\$ 6,130	59.3%	\$ 5,929	57.0%
Instructional Resources and Media	79	0.9%	129	1.3%	113	1.1%
Curriculum and Staff Development	85	0.9%	132	1.3%	234	2.2%
Instructional Leadership	147	1.6%	187	1.8%	173	1.7%
School Leadership	383	4.2%	527	5.1%	620	6.0%
Guidance Counseling Services	393	4.4%	420	4.1%	402	3.8%
Social Work Services	6	0.1%	18	0.2%	32	0.3%
Health Services	77	0.9%	100	1.0%	111	1.1%
Transportation	407	4.5%	219	2.1%	297	2.8%
Food Service Operation	420	4.7%	335	3.2%	518	5.0%
Extracurricular	285	3.2%	430	4.1%	287	2.8%
General Administration	364	4.0%	420	4.1%	335	3.2%
Plant Maintenance and Operations	922	10.2%	972	9.4%	999	9.6%
Security and Monitoring Services	42	0.5%	65	0.6%	113	1.1%
Data Processing Services	204	2.2%	204	2.0%	192	1.8%
Community Services	35	0.4%	41	0.4%	51	0.5%
Total Operating Expenditures	<u>\$ 9,024</u>	100.0%	<u>\$ 10,329</u>	100.0%	<u>\$ 10,406</u>	100.0%

**Finding:** The District’s expenditures per student is comparable to its peer districts’ average both in total expenditures and for each expenditure classification presented. For the 2019-2020 school year, the District’s revenue per student exceeded its operating expenditures per student creating a surplus fund balance.

## 7. District Payroll Expenditures Summary

- a. We obtained indicators for payroll and selected salary expenditures for the 2019-2020 school year as noted in the LBB Guidelines for the District, peer districts’ average, and the state average from the Texas Education Agency, Public Education Information Management System District Financial Actual Reports.

FIGURE 10  
PAYROLL EXPENDITURE SUMMARY  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

	DISTRICT	PEER DISTRICTS’ AVERAGE	STATE AVERAGE
Payroll as a Percentage of All Funds	78.2%	82.9%	80.0%
Average Teacher Salary	\$ 55,196	\$ 58,275	\$ 57,091
Average Administrative Salary	\$ 99,737	\$ 103,038	\$ 89,629
Superintendent Salary	\$ 452,183	\$ 313,064	\$ 150,630

**Finding:** The District’s payroll expenditures as a percentage of all funds is comparable to its peer districts’ average. The average salaries for teachers and administrators are comparable to its peer districts’ averages. The District’s superintendent salary is 44% more than its peer districts’ average as these salaries have a significant amount of discretion by each district and can also include benefits other than salary.

**8. Fund Balance**

- a. We obtained the District’s General Fund unassigned fund balance, excluding debt service and capital outlay, for the 2019-2020 school year on a per student basis and also for the four school years prior. We obtained the District’s General Fund unassigned fund balance as a percentage of three months of operating expenditures for the 2019-2020 school year and the four school years prior.

FIGURE 11  
GENERAL FUND BALANCE  
SCHOOL YEAR RANGE

YEAR	GENERAL FUND UNASSIGNED FUND BALANCE PER STUDENT	GENERAL FUND UNASSIGNED FUND BALANCE AS A PERCENTAGE OF 3-MONTH OPERATING EXPENDITURES
Current School Year	\$ 3,795	188.0%
1 Year Prior	\$ 3,655	191.3%
2 Years Prior	\$ 3,277	181.3%
3 Years Prior	\$ 3,221	178.8%
4 Years Prior	\$ 2,944	163.2%

**Finding:** The District's General Fund unassigned fund balance has increased each year on a per student basis and remains steady as a percentage of three months of operating expenditures.

## 9. District Staffing Levels

- a. We obtained the allocation of staff, student-to-teacher, and student-to-total staff ratios for the 2019-2020 school year as noted in the LBB Guidelines for the District, peer districts' average, and the state average.

FIGURE 12  
STAFF RATIO COMPARISONS  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

	DISTRICT	PEER DISTRICTS' AVERAGE	STATE AVERAGE
Teaching Staff (% of Total Staff)	53.4%	54.5%	49.4%
Support Staff (% of Total Staff)	10.4%	10.2%	10.2%
Administrative Staff (% of Total Staff)	3.5%	3.9%	4.1%
Paraprofessional Staff (% of Total Staff)	10.5%	9.5%	10.6%
Auxiliary Staff (% of Total Staff)	22.2%	21.9%	25.7%
Students Per Total Staff	9.4	7.8	7.5
Students Per Teaching Staff	17.5	14.4	15.1

**Finding:** The District's teaching staff, support staff, administrative staff, paraprofessional staff, and auxiliary staff as a percentage of total staff is comparable to its peer districts' average. The students per total staff and students per teaching staff is higher than its peer districts' average by 20% and 22%, respectively, due to being a fast growth district for the previous ten years.

**10. Teacher Turnover Rates**

- a. We obtained the teacher turnover rate for the 2019-2020 school year as noted in the LBB Guidelines for the District, peer districts' average, and the state average.

FIGURE 13  
TEACHER TURNOVER RATES  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

---

	DISTRICT TURNOVER RATE	AVERAGE PEER DISTRICT TURNOVER RATE	STATE AVERAGE TURNOVER RATE
Teachers	15.1%	13.6%	16.8%

**Finding:** The District's teacher turnover rate is comparable to its peer districts' average.

## 11. Special Programs

- a. For each program for the 2019-2020 school year noted in the LBB Guidelines offered by the District, we obtained the number of students served, percentage of enrolled students served, program budget per student served and program budget as a percentage of the District's budget, total staff for the program, and student-to-staff ratio for the program.

FIGURE 14  
SPECIAL PROGRAM CHARACTERISTICS  
MOST RECENT SCHOOL YEAR

	NUMBER OF STUDENTS SERVED	% OF ENROLLED STUDENTS SERVED	PROGRAM BUDGET PER STUDENT SERVED	PROGRAM BUDGET AS A % OF DISTRICT BUDGET	TOTAL STAFF FOR PROGRAM	STUDENTS PER TOTAL STAFF FOR PROGRAM
Special Education	1,037	9.4%	\$ 12,194	13.4%	58	17.8
Bilingual Education	671	6.1%	\$ 2,010	1.4%	18	36.7
Migrant Programs	1	0.0%	\$ -	0.0%	-	-
Gifted and Talented Programs	1,061	9.6%	\$ 459	0.5%	6	186.1
Career and Technical Education	3,027	27.4%	\$ 861	2.8%	31	98.3
Athletics and Extracurricular Activities	2,806	25.4%	\$ 901	2.7%	119	23.6
Alternative Education Program/ Disciplinary Alternative Education Program	24	0.2%	\$ 2,491	0.1%	1	24.0
Juvenile Justice Alternative Education Program	-	0.0%	\$ -	0.0%	-	-

**Finding:** The District serves a large number of special education students in a variety of programs to meet their individual needs. The District commits significant resources to ensure successful outcomes in its Special Education programs.

**Additional Financial, Operational, and Academic Information**

**District Financial Information**

**12. State and Regional Resources**

We obtained an understanding of how the District maximizes available resources from state sources and regional education service centers to develop and implement programs or deliver services.

**Finding:** The District maximizes available resources from state sources by utilizing the Instructional Materials Allotment budget to purchase instructional materials for students and staff as well as instructional software programs for teachers. The District incurred expenditures of \$1,252,022 in the 2019-2020 fiscal year that were funded with resources received under the Instructional Materials Allotment. The District utilizes Region 13 Education Service Center to provide professional development based on the needs of District staff.

**13. Reporting**

We obtained the District’s annual external audit report’s independent auditors’ opinion as required by Government Auditing Standards as of and for the year ended August 31, 2020. See Attachment A to the Agreed-Upon Procedures report.

**14. Oversight**

We inquired with District staff regarding whether the District was assigned a financial-related monitoring/oversight role by the Texas Education Agency during the 2019-2020 school year and the two years prior. No assignment was noted.

**15. Budget Process**

We obtained answers to the questions noted in the LBB Guidelines.

FIGURE 15  
BUDGET PROCESS

QUESTION	Y/N		N/A
Does the District’s budget planning process include projections for enrollment and staffing?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>
Does the District’s budget process include monthly and quarterly reviews to determine the status of annual spending?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>
Does the District use cost allocation procedures to determine campus budgets and cost centers?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>
Does the District analyze educational costs and student needs to determine campus budgets?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>

## 16. Self-Funded Programs

We obtained a listing of the District's self-funded programs for the 2019-2020 school year and obtained an understanding of whether program revenues were sufficient to cover program costs.

**Finding:** The District has two self-funded programs, Health Insurance Fund and Food and Nutrition Services Fund. The Food and Nutrition program provides students breakfast and lunch at each District campus and is funded through charging students for meals and a limited amount of state and federal funding for qualified free or reduced meal price students. The program is required to maintain a positive net position and the District had an ending net position of \$1,266,329 at the end of the 2019-2020 school year. The District had a net decrease in net position of \$498,109 for the 2019-2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic resulting in school closures for a third of the school year.

The Health Insurance Fund provides medical and prescription benefits to all staff who elect medical coverage through the District. The District's contributes \$500 per month towards premium costs for each staff who elects coverage. Staff is responsible for remaining premium costs and medical expenses beyond coverage including co-pays. The program is required to maintain a positive net position, and the District had an ending net position of \$2,015,977 at the end of the 2019-2020 school year.

### District Operational Information

## 17. Staffing

We obtained an understanding of whether District administrators are evaluated annually and, if so, how the results inform District operations.

**Finding:** Each year the District's Board of Trustees establishes the District's operating goals and initiatives for the school year. These initiatives are incorporated into the District and Campus Improvement Plans, and each administrator is evaluated annually using a District appraisal tool.

## 18. Compensation System

We obtained answers to the questions noted in the LBB Guidelines.

FIGURE 16  
COMPENSATION SYSTEM

QUESTION	Y/N		N/A
Does the District use salary bonuses or merit pay systems? If yes, explain the performance-based systems and the factors used.	Yes: _____	No: <u> X </u>	N/A: _____
Do the District's salary ranges include minimum, midpoint, and maximum increments to promote compensation equity based on the employee's education, experience, and other relevant factors?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Does the District periodically adjust its compensation structure using verifiable salary survey information, benchmarking, and comparable salary data?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Has the District made any internal equity and/or market adjustments to salaries within the past two years?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____

## 19. Planning

We obtained answers to the questions noted in the LBB Guidelines.

FIGURE 17  
OPERATIONAL INFORMATION

QUESTION	Y/N		N/A
Does the District develop a District Improvement Plan (DIP) annually?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Do all campuses in the District develop a Campus Improvement Plan (DIP) annually?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Does the District have an active and current facilities master plan? If yes, does the District consider these factors to inform the plan:	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Does the District use enrollment projections?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Does the District analyze facility capacity?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Does the District evaluate facility condition?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Does the District have an active and current energy management plan?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____
Does the District maintain a clearly defined staffing formula for staff in maintenance, custodial, food service, and transportation? 61	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: _____	N/A: _____

**District Academic Information**

**20. Programs**

We obtained answers to the questions noted in the LBB Guidelines.

FIGURE 18  
ACADEMIC INFORMATION

QUESTION	Y/N		N/A
Does the District have a teacher mentoring program?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>
Are decisions to adopt new programs or discontinue existing programs made based on quantifiable data and research?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>
When adopting new programs, does the District define expected results?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>
Does the District analyze student test results at the District and/or campus level to design, implement and/or monitor the use of curriculum and instructional programs?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>
Does the District modify programs, plan staff development opportunities, or evaluate staff based on analysis and student test results?	Yes: <u> X </u>	No: <u>     </u>	N/A: <u>     </u>

## **Attachment A**



MAXWELL LOCKE & RITTER LLP

*Accountants and Consultants*

*An Affiliate of CPAmerica International*

tel (512) 370 3200 fax (512) 370 3250

www.mlrpc.com

Austin: 401 Congress Avenue, Suite 1100

Austin, TX 78701

Round Rock: 411 West Main Street, Suite 300

Round Rock, TX 78664

## **Independent Auditors' Report**

The Board of Trustees of  
Lake Travis Independent School District:

### **Report on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Lake Travis Independent School District (the "District"), as of and for the year ended August 31, 2020, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

### **Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements**

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

### **Auditors' Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

Affiliated Company

ML&R WEALTH MANAGEMENT LLC

*"A Registered Investment Advisor"*

*This firm is not a CPA firm*

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditors' judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

## **Opinions**

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the District as of August 31, 2020, and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof, and the respective budgetary comparison for the General Fund for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

## **Other Matters**

### *Required Supplementary Information*

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the management's discussion and analysis, the schedule of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability, the schedule of District contributions - pensions, the schedule of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability, the schedule of District contributions - OPEB, and the note to the required supplementary information on pages 5 through 14, 55, 56, 57, 58, and 59, respectively, be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

### *Other Information*

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements. The combining and individual fund statements and schedules, other schedules, and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards, as required by Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards*, are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The combining and individual fund statements and schedules, other schedules, and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining and individual fund statements and schedules, other schedules, and the schedule of expenditures of federal awards are fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

### **Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards***

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated December 9, 2020 on our consideration of the District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

*Maxwell Locke + Ritter LLP*

Austin, Texas  
December 9, 2020



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

July 2021 Monthly Financial Reports-Statement of Revenues and Expenditures, Balance Sheet, Tax Statement and 2018 Capital Projects Report

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

**For Presentation/Discussion only**

### **RATIONALE**

To provide a financial update to the Board and community regarding the financial position of the school district.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

None

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services  
Brad Goerke – Director of Finance

### **ATTACHMENTS**

1. Statement of Revenues and Expenditures-July 2021
2. Balance Sheet-July 2021
3. Tax Statement-July 2021
4. 2018 Capital Projects Report-July 2021

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

**Lake Travis ISD**  
**STATEMENT OF REVENUE AND EXPENDITURES**  
**GENERAL FUND**

7/31/2021

Current Year

Prior Year

<i>Revenues</i>		Current Year				Prior Year	
		Budget	Actual	Balance	Percent of Budget	Cumulative Actual	Percent of Actual
5711	Current Year Tax Revenue	\$ 127,462,427	\$ 127,861,793	\$ (399,366)	100.31%	\$ 123,567,216	99.92%
5700	Other Local Revenues	2,401,091	2,535,837	(134,746)	105.61%	2,723,453	90.11%
5800	State Program Revenue	8,213,256	7,691,611	521,645	93.65%	5,025,919	65.57%
5900	Federal Revenue	531,000	445,266	85,734	83.85%	416,581	89.26%
<b>Total Revenue</b>		<b>\$ 138,607,774</b>	<b>\$ 138,534,507</b>	<b>\$ 73,267</b>	<b>99.95%</b>	<b>\$ 131,733,169</b>	<b>97.71%</b>

*Expenditures*

11	Instruction	\$ 55,985,802	\$ 53,217,387	\$ 2,768,415	95.06%	\$47,327,098	89.57%
12	Instructional Resources	974,778	911,194	63,584	93.48%	808,111	92.01%
13	Staff Development	1,051,788	776,400	275,388	73.82%	769,036	90.12%
21	Instructional Administration	1,813,501	1,533,534	279,967	84.56%	1,437,129	88.55%
23	School Administration	4,569,643	4,118,628	451,015	90.13%	3,788,734	89.43%
31	Guidance & Counseling	3,874,148	3,466,412	407,736	89.48%	3,385,004	88.54%
32	Social Work Services	157,736	139,581	18,155	88.49%	59,367	87.04%
33	Health Services	926,628	881,882	44,746	95.17%	738,383	87.17%
34	Transportation	4,804,811	4,273,131	531,680	88.93%	4,124,116	92.29%
35	Food Service	90,000	82,500	7,500	91.67%	73,333	75.96%
36	Co-Curricular Account	2,289,937	1,983,102	306,835	86.60%	2,049,545	89.91%
41	General Administration	3,670,297	3,138,736	531,561	85.52%	3,248,175	86.61%
51	Plant & Maint. Operation	10,818,050	9,866,435	951,615	91.20%	8,728,395	85.65%
52	Security	685,782	654,735	31,047	95.47%	426,577	91.18%
53	Non-Inst. Data Processing	2,903,266	2,423,446	479,820	83.47%	2,022,398	89.66%
61	Community Services	418,560	241,503	177,057	57.70%	339,001	99.18%
81	Facilities/Construction	30,000	27,500	2,500	91.67%	22,916	87.31%
91	State Transfers	43,113,047		43,113,047	0.00%	35,058,462	85.93%
92	Incremental Cost WADA	300,000	262,808	37,192	87.60%	263,501	100.00%
93	SPED TRF-Regular Day	45,000	44,008	992	97.80%	42,508	100.00%
95	JJAEP Transfer Payments	15,000		15,000	0.00%		0.00%
99	Travis County Appraisal	570,000	444,088	125,912	77.91%	474,376	100.00%
<b>Total Expenditures</b>		<b>\$ 139,107,774</b>	<b>\$ 88,487,010</b>	<b>\$ 50,620,764</b>	<b>63.61%</b>	<b>\$ 115,186,165</b>	<b>88.18%</b>

*Other Resources and (Uses)*

7990	Other Resources	-	221,828	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
8990	Other Uses	-	-	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
8911	Transfers-Out	-	-	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
<b>Total Resources &amp; Uses</b>		<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 221,828</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>0.00%</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>0.00%</b>

*Fund Balance*

1200	Excess (Deficiency) Of Revenues Over Expenditures	\$ (500,000)	\$ 49,825,669
3000	Beginning Fund Balance 9/1	\$ 44,264,472	
3000	Ending Fund Balance 8/31	<b>\$ 43,764,472</b>	
3590	Committed Fund Balance	<b>\$ 460,234</b>	
3600	Unassigned Fund Balance	<b>\$ 43,304,238</b>	

**Lake Travis ISD**  
**COMBINED INTERIM BALANCE SHEET - ALL FUND TYPES**  
AS OF: July 31, 2021

<i>Assets</i>	General Fund	Special Revenue Funds	Debt Service Fund	Capital Projects Fund	Internal Svc., Trust & Agency Funds	Total Funds
<b>Current Assets:</b>						
1101 Cash	\$ 1,529,208	\$ 1,057,728	\$ 1,410,316	\$ 9,615,163	\$ 1,347,571	\$ 14,959,986
1103 Temporary Investments	101,534,871		13,313,168	35,638,212	113,709	150,599,960
<b>Total Cash and Investments</b>	<b>\$ 103,064,079</b>	<b>\$ 1,057,728</b>	<b>\$ 14,723,484</b>	<b>\$ 45,253,375</b>	<b>\$ 1,461,280</b>	<b>\$ 165,559,946</b>
<b>Receivables:</b>						
1210 Property Taxes-Current	\$ 1,177,724	\$ -	\$ 419,151	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,596,875
1220 Property Taxes-Delinquent	1,836,890	-	644,785	-	-	2,481,675
1230 Allowance-Uncollected Taxes	(1,080,838)	-	(325,250)	-	-	(1,406,088)
1240 Due From Federal Agencies	759,492	-	-	-	-	759,492
1250 Sundry Receivables	886	1,008	-	-	-	1,894
1260 Due From Funds	434,017	1,245	-	-	6,963	442,225
1280 Due From Other Funds	2,525	-	-	-	4,866,353	4,868,878
1290 Other Receivables	(6,900)	3,370	-	-	-	(3,530)
1300 Inventories, At Cost	39,043	293,160	-	-	-	332,203
<b>Total Receivables</b>	<b>\$ 3,162,839</b>	<b>\$ 298,783</b>	<b>\$ 738,686</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 4,873,316</b>	<b>\$ 9,073,624</b>
1400 Other Current Assets	(454,980)	(30,948)	-	(2,667)	(1,405)	(490,000)
<b>Total Assets</b>	<b>\$ 105,771,938</b>	<b>\$ 1,325,563</b>	<b>\$ 15,462,170</b>	<b>\$ 45,250,708</b>	<b>\$ 6,333,191</b>	<b>\$ 174,143,570</b>
<b>Resources</b>						
5010 Estimated Revenue	\$ 138,607,774	\$ 10,721,921	\$ 46,000,000	\$ 400,000	\$ 13,097,201	\$ 208,826,896
5030 Less: Realized Revenue	138,756,335	5,852,332	46,329,163	157,412	10,914,273	202,009,515
5000 Revenues to be Received	(148,561)	4,869,589	(329,163)	242,588	2,182,928	6,817,381
<b>Total Assets &amp; Resources</b>	<b>\$ 105,623,377</b>	<b>\$ 6,195,152</b>	<b>\$ 15,133,007</b>	<b>\$ 45,493,296</b>	<b>\$ 8,516,119</b>	<b>\$ 180,960,951</b>
<b>Liabilities</b>						
<b>Current Liabilities:</b>						
2110 Accounts Payable	\$ 12,619	\$ (7,681)	\$ -	\$ (40)	\$ (7,681)	\$ (2,783)
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	4,604,016	179,428	-	-	-	4,783,444
2170 Due To Other Funds	4,396,321	305,841	-	-	-	4,702,162
2180 Due To Other Govt's	1,995	-	-	-	-	1,995
2190 Due To Student Groups	-	-	-	-	448,150	448,150
2150 Payroll Deduct & Withhold	-	-	-	-	4,029,314	4,029,314
<b>Total Current Payables</b>	<b>\$ 9,014,951</b>	<b>\$ 477,588</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ (40)</b>	<b>\$ 4,469,783</b>	<b>\$ 13,962,282</b>
2210 Accrued Expenses	-	-	-	122,427	711,221	833,648
2300 Deferred Revenue	2,223,190	313,784	738,686	-	-	3,275,660
2400 Payable From Restricted Assets	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 11,238,141</b>	<b>\$ 791,372</b>	<b>\$ 738,686</b>	<b>\$ 122,387</b>	<b>\$ 5,181,004</b>	<b>\$ 18,071,590</b>
<b>Fund Equity</b>						
6010 Appropriations	\$ 139,107,774	\$ 11,104,452	\$ 46,000,000	\$ 57,522,163	\$ 13,097,201	\$ 266,831,590
6050 Less: Expenditures	(88,487,010)	(6,996,383)	(38,705,092)	(15,262,516)	(12,936,413)	(162,387,414)
6030 Encumbrances	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Available Appropriations</b>	<b>\$ 50,620,764</b>	<b>\$ 4,108,069</b>	<b>\$ 7,294,908</b>	<b>\$ 42,259,647</b>	<b>\$ 160,788</b>	<b>\$ 104,444,176</b>
4310 Reserve For Encumbrances	-	-	-	-	-	-
3600 Unassigned Fund Balance	43,304,238	1,295,711	7,099,413	3,111,262	3,174,327	57,984,951
3590 Committed Fund Balance - Acrr. Leave	460,234	-	-	-	-	460,234
<b>Total Liability &amp; Fund Equity</b>	<b>\$ 105,623,377</b>	<b>\$ 6,195,152</b>	<b>\$ 15,133,007</b>	<b>\$ 45,493,296</b>	<b>\$ 8,516,119</b>	<b>\$ 180,960,951</b>

SUMMARY OF TAX COLLECTIONS  
AS OF JULY 2021

2020-21 Original Tax Levy .....	\$ 176,737,875.61
Delinquent Taxes as of 8/31/20 .....	<u>4,381,268.00</u>
 Total Receivables for 2020-21 .....	 \$ 181,119,143.61
Current Year Adjustments .....	(1,773,294.04)
Prior Year Adjustments .....	<u>(1,101,685.31)</u>
 Adjusted Receivables.....	 \$ 178,244,164.26
Total Net Collections To Date .....	<u>(175,050,216.54)</u>
 Outstanding Receivables as of ..... 7/31/2021	 \$ <u>3,193,947.72</u>

<u>SUMMARY OF BUDGETED COLLECTIONS</u>	<u>BUDGETED</u>	<u>NET COLLECTED</u>	<u>BUDGETED DIFFERENCE</u>	<u>% OF BUDGET COLLECTED</u>
Maintenance - Current Tax	\$ 127,462,427.00	\$ 127,861,792.67	\$ (399,365.67)	100.31%
Maintenance - Prior Year Tax	600,000.00	570,938.51	29,061.49	95.16%
Maintenance - Penalties & Interest	<u>650,000.00</u>	<u>677,122.55</u>	<u>(27,122.55)</u>	<u>104.17%</u>
Sub-total	<u>\$ 128,712,427.00</u>	<u>\$ 129,109,853.73</u>	<u>\$ (397,426.73)</u>	<u>100.31%</u>
 Debt Service - Current Tax	 \$ 45,100,000.00	 \$ 45,505,912.51	 \$ (405,912.51)	 100.90%
Debt Service - Prior Year Tax	200,000.00	195,234.22	4,765.78	97.62%
Debt Service - Penalties & Interest	<u>200,000.00</u>	<u>239,216.08</u>	<u>(39,216.08)</u>	<u>119.61%</u>
Sub-total	<u>\$ 45,500,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 45,940,362.81</u>	<u>\$ (440,362.81)</u>	<u>100.97%</u>
Total Collections	<u>\$ 174,212,427.00</u>	<u>\$ 175,050,216.54</u>	<u>\$ (837,789.54)</u>	<u>100.48%</u>

Tax Collection Comparison with 2020-21: Adjusted Tax Roll

	<u>2020-21</u>	<u>2019-20</u>
Percent of Current Year Taxes Collected	99.09%	98.90%
Percent of Total Taxes Collected	99.53%	99.18%
Percent of Total Taxes and P & I Collected	100.05%	99.62%

Tax Collection Comparison with 2020-21: Original Tax Roll

Percent of Current Year Taxes Collected	98.09%	97.90%
Percent of Total Taxes Collected	98.53%	98.18%
Percent of Total Taxes and P & I Collected	99.05%	98.62%

**Lake Travis ISD  
2018 Bond Program Summary  
July 31, 2021**

<b>Resources</b>	<b>Original Budget</b>	<b>Amended Budget</b>	<b>Total Resources</b>	<b>Balance</b>
1 Bond Proceeds	253,000,000.00	236,305,111.00	236,305,111.42	(0.42)
2 Interest Revenue	0.00	5,063,711.00	5,029,987.35	33,723.65
3 Interest Subject to Arbitrage Rebate	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
4 Bond Premiums	0.00	18,631,178.00	18,631,178.35	(0.35)
<b>Total Resources</b>	<b>253,000,000.00</b>	<b>260,000,000.00</b>	<b>259,966,277.12</b>	<b>33,722.88</b>

<b>Appropriations</b>	<b>Original Budget</b>	<b>Amended Budget</b>	<b>Total Expended</b>	<b>Balance to Complete</b>
10 Elementary School #7	31,511,000.00	34,196,881.00	34,576,720.32	(379,839.32)
20 Elementary School #8	3,979,000.00	3,979,000.00	172,435.79	3,806,564.21
30 Secondary School #2	13,802,000.00	9,053,407.00	6,049,422.33	3,003,984.67
40 Middle School #3	75,980,710.00	79,786,275.00	77,262,515.41	2,523,759.59
50 FCA Projects	36,610,132.00	59,030,393.00	46,656,170.71	12,374,222.29
60/70 Small Renovation Improvements	16,927,133.00	14,015,202.00	11,329,413.06	2,685,788.94
<b>Construction/Renovation</b>	<b>178,809,975.00</b>	<b>200,061,158.00</b>	<b>176,046,677.62</b>	<b>24,014,480.38</b>
81 Instructional Materials & Equipment	5,707,000.00	5,639,300.00	3,095,893.42	2,543,406.58
82 Technology	29,901,700.00	25,937,510.00	23,095,922.59	2,841,587.41
83 Copy Machines	750,000.00	750,000.00	447,891.55	302,108.45
84 Maintenance	600,000.00	1,060,000.00	721,568.80	338,431.20
85 Food & Nutrition Services	3,950,789.00	1,973,811.00	1,473,061.46	500,749.54
86 Transportation	13,300,000.00	10,983,059.00	7,524,482.01	3,458,576.99
87 District Furniture & Equipment	6,000,000.00	6,000,000.00	4,474,356.87	1,525,643.13
88 Police	0.00	400,000.00	343,806.26	56,193.74
90 Land	1,270,000.00	1,270,000.00	561,719.00	708,281.00
91 Bond Closing	2,000,000.00	1,918,024.00	1,918,023.77	0.23
94 Contingency	7,510,536.00	7,142.00	0.00	7,142.00
95 Program Administration	3,200,000.00	3,199,996.00	1,838,530.47	1,361,465.53
97 LTMS Wastewater Expansion	0.00	800,000.00	43,452.95	756,547.05
<b>Other Programs</b>	<b>74,190,025.00</b>	<b>59,938,842.00</b>	<b>45,538,709.15</b>	<b>14,400,132.85</b>
<b>Total 2018 Bond Program</b>	<b>253,000,000.00</b>	<b>260,000,000.00</b>	<b>221,585,386.77</b>	<b>38,414,613.23</b>



## AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET

### AGENDA ITEM

Board Notification under Board Policy CH (Local)-Lake Travis High School PAC Renovations

### RECOMMENDED ACTION

**For Presentation/Discussion Only.**

### RATIONALE

The Board delegates to the Superintendent or designee the authority to make budgeted purchases for goods or services. However, any single, budgeted purchase of goods or services that costs \$100,000 or more, regardless of whether the goods or services are competitively purchased, shall require Board approval before a transaction may take place. The Superintendent shall not be required to obtain Board approval for the following types of budgeted purchases that cost \$100,000 or more, but shall subsequently report them to the Board:

1. A purchase made pursuant to a Board-approved interlocal contract, in accordance with law.
2. A purchase made through a cooperative purchasing program, in accordance with law.
3. A purchase made through a state purchasing program that satisfies the District's obligation for competitive purchasing;
4. A purchase for produce or fuel.

Lake Travis ISD has the following budgeted purchase that requires Board notification:

- Lake Travis High School PAC Renovations-\$118,100.00

### BUDGET PROVISIONS

2018 Capital Projects Budget-\$118,100.00

### RESOURCE PERSONNEL

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services

Robert Winovitch – Director of Facilities and Construction

Cristy Soares – Director of Purchasing

### ATTACHMENTS

None

### MEETING DATE

August 11, 2021



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

2018 Bond Program Delivery Method - Summer 2022 Bond Projects

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Approve the Delivery Methods for Summer 2022 Bond Projects

### **RATIONALE**

Per Board Policy CV (Local), the project delivery method to be used for each construction contract valued at or above \$100,000 shall be the competitive sealed proposal, as determined and approved by the Board as the best value. If another method is deemed more appropriate for a particular construction project, the Superintendent or designee shall submit a recommendation for the Board to consider, determine, and approve a different project delivery method that provides the best value to the District.

Each delivery method has been evaluated and partnered with upcoming projects to provide best value to the district. The Business Office, Purchasing Department, Facilities Department and Legal Department have been working to ensure that all bond projects have been competitively procured and meet all legal and local purchasing policies and guidelines. Attached is a list of upcoming projects, including recommended delivery method.

The administration is currently working to procure the services of the general contractors for all 2021-2022 bond projects. It is the intent of administration to bring a list of these contractors to the Board for consideration at the September-October 2021 board meetings.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

2018 Bond Funds

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services  
Robert Winovitch – Director of Facilities and Construction  
Cristy Soares – Director of Purchasing  
Amber King – Legal Counsel

### **ATTACHMENTS**

1. 2018 Bond Program - Architect Selections & Construction Delivery Methods for 2021/22 School Year

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

**Architect Selections & Contruction Delivery Methods for 2021/22 School Year**

<b>Future Elementary School #8</b> Architecture and Engineering <b>** Board Approved in 2020</b>	<u>Approx. Budgets</u> \$ 2,845,000 <hr/> \$ 2,845,000	<b>Delivery Methods</b> <b>CMR-11</b> <b>Pfluger Architects</b> <b>2,845,000</b>
<b>High School Campus (Phase 2)</b> Site & Paving FCA Projects LTHS (along Cavalier Drive), Storm water improvements, sidewalks, landscaping and site fencing <b>** Board Approved in 2020</b>  Subtotal	<u>Budgets</u> \$ 1,438,322 <hr/> \$ 1,438,322 <hr/> \$ 1,438,322	<u>Delivery Methods</u>  <b>CMR-08</b> <b>Pfluger Architects</b> <b>American Constructors GC</b>  Budget <b>1,438,322</b>
<b>Serene Hills Elementary</b> Architectural Finishes, Floor, Walls and Ceiling Finishes ADA Compliant Playground Site Erosion Improvements  Subtotal	\$ 908,963 \$ 621,450 \$ 155,383 <hr/> \$ 1,685,796	 <b>CMR-12</b> <b>(Not Assigned )</b>  \$ 1,685,796
<b>Marquee Signs at BCMS, RHES and LWE</b> Install digital marquee signs at three schools <b>** Board Approved in 2020</b>  Subtotal	\$ 116,728 <hr/> \$ 116,728	<b>JOC-06</b> <b>Fields Architects</b> <b>Braun &amp; Butler GC</b> <b>116,728</b>
<b>District Fire Alarm Upgrades</b> High School HBMS (verify) BCE LTE LPE District Structures and Facilities  Subtotal	\$ 385,427 \$ 102,785 \$ 70,096 \$ 79,651 \$ 73,415 \$ 42,862 <hr/> \$ 754,236	  <b>JOC-9</b> <b>MEP Engineering</b>  \$ 754,236
<b>Total Construction Projects for 2021/22 School Year</b>		<b>\$ 6,840,082</b>



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

2020-2021 Budget Amendment #3-General Operating Fund, Debt Service Fund and Food Service Fund

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Approve the 2020-2021 Budget Amendments to the General Operating Fund, Debt Service Fund and Food Service Fund

### **RATIONALE**

The General Operating budget is being amended to reflect the ESSER II supplanted funding by the State for average daily attendance (ADA) Hold Harmless. The reduction in ADA by the State resulted in an increase in recapture.

The Debt Service budget is being amended to reflect the revenue from Travis County Permanent School Fund and the subsequent payoff of debt allocation to Marble Falls ISD for the annexation of Paleface Ranch Subdivision in 2010.

The Food Service budget is being amended to reflect revenue loss due to remote instruction during the COVID-19 pandemic.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

2020-2021 General Operating Budget

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services

Brad Goerke – Director of Finance

### **ATTACHMENTS**

2020-2021 Budget Amendment #3-General Operating Fund, Debt Service Fund and Food Service Fund

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

**Lake Travis ISD**  
**General Operating Fund-Budget Amendment #3**  
**2020-2021**

		<b>2020-2021</b>	<b>Recommended</b>	<b>2020-2021</b>
<b>Revenues</b>		<b>Revised Budget</b>	<b>Amendments</b>	<b>Amended Budget</b>
5711	Current Year Taxes	\$ 127,462,427	\$ 232,000	\$ 127,694,427
5700	Other Local Revenues	\$ 2,401,091	\$ 338,000	\$ 2,739,091
5800	State Program Revenues	\$ 8,213,256	\$ 786,000	\$ 8,999,256
5900	Federal Revenue	\$ 531,000	\$ (106,000)	\$ 425,000
	<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b>\$ 138,607,774</b>	<b>\$ 1,250,000</b>	<b>\$ 139,857,774</b>
<b>Expenditures</b>				
11	Instruction	\$ 55,985,802	\$ (2,100,000)	\$ 53,885,802
12	Instructional Resources	\$ 974,778	\$ -	\$ 974,778
13	Staff Development	\$ 1,051,788	\$ -	\$ 1,051,788
21	Instructional Administration	\$ 1,813,501	\$ -	\$ 1,813,501
23	School Administration	\$ 4,569,643	\$ -	\$ 4,569,643
31	Guidance & Counseling	\$ 3,874,148	\$ (100,000)	\$ 3,774,148
32	Social Work Services	\$ 157,736	\$ -	\$ 157,736
33	Health Services	\$ 926,628	\$ -	\$ 926,628
34	Transportation	\$ 4,804,811	\$ (200,000)	\$ 4,604,811
35	Food Service	\$ 90,000	\$ -	\$ 90,000
36	Co-Curricular Activities	\$ 2,289,937	\$ (100,000)	\$ 2,189,937
41	General Administration	\$ 3,670,297	\$ -	\$ 3,670,297
51	Plant & Maintenance	\$ 10,818,050	\$ (400,000)	\$ 10,418,050
52	Safety & Security	\$ 685,782	\$ 50,000	\$ 735,782
53	Non-Instructional Data Processing	\$ 2,903,266	\$ (100,000)	\$ 2,803,266
61	Community Services	\$ 418,560	\$ -	\$ 418,560
71	Debt Service	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
81	Facilities/Construction	\$ 30,000	\$ -	\$ 30,000
91	State Transfers (Recapture)	\$ 43,113,047	\$ 3,700,000	\$ 46,813,047
92	Incremental WADA Costs	\$ 300,000	\$ -	\$ 300,000
93	Sp. Ed. Transfer Payments	\$ 45,000	\$ -	\$ 45,000
95	JJAEF Transfer Payments	\$ 15,000	\$ -	\$ 15,000
99	Travis County Appraisal District	\$ 570,000	\$ -	\$ 570,000
	<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b>\$ 139,107,774</b>	<b>\$ 750,000</b>	<b>\$ 139,857,774</b>
				\$ -
	<b>Excess (Deficiency) Of Revenues Over</b>			
<b>1200</b>	<b>Expenditures</b>	<b>\$ (500,000)</b>	<b>\$ 500,000</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
				\$ -
<b>3000</b>	<b>Beginning Fund Balance-9/1</b>	<b>\$ 44,264,472</b>		<b>\$ 44,264,472</b>
				\$ -
<b>3600</b>	<b>Ending Fund Balance-8/31</b>	<b>\$ 43,764,472</b>		<b>\$ 44,264,472</b>

Note: Budget amendment reflects a reduction in instructional salaries accounted for with ESSER II supplanted by the State to fund ADA HH funding. The reduction in ADA by the State resulted in an increase in recapture.

**Lake Travis ISD  
Debt Service Fund-Amendment #1  
2020-2021**

		<b>2020-2021</b>	<b>Recommended</b>	<b>2020-2021</b>
		<b>Revised Budget</b>	<b>Amendments</b>	<b>Amended Budget</b>
<b><u>Revenues</u></b>				
5711	Current Year Taxes	\$ 45,100,000	\$ 450,000	\$ 45,550,000
5700	Other Local Revenues	\$ 600,000	\$ 100,000	\$ 700,000
5800	State Program Revenues	\$ 300,000	\$ (140,000)	\$ 160,000
5900	<u>Federal Revenue</u>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
	<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b>\$ 46,000,000</b>	<b>\$ 410,000</b>	<b>\$ 46,410,000</b>
<b><u>Expenditures</u></b>				
71	<u>Debt Service</u>	\$ 46,000,000	\$ 410,000	\$ 46,410,000
	<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b>\$ 46,000,000</b>	<b>\$ 410,000</b>	<b>\$ 46,410,000</b>
				\$ -
	<b>Excess (Deficiency) Of Revenues</b>			
1200	<b>Over Expenditures</b>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
				\$ -
3000	<b>Beginning Fund Balance-9/1</b>	<b>\$ 7,099,415</b>		<b>\$ 7,099,415</b>
				\$ -
3600	<b>Ending Fund Balance-8/31</b>	<b>\$ 7,099,415</b>		<b>\$ 7,099,415</b>

Note: Budget amendment reflects the revenue from Travis County Permanent School Fund in the amount of \$230,625 and the payment to Marble Falls ISD of \$589,785 to payoff debt allocation for the annexation of Paleface Ranch.

**Lake Travis ISD**  
**Food Services Fund-Amendment #1**  
**2020-2021**

		<u>2020-2021</u>	<i>Recommended</i>	<u>2020-2021</u>
		<u>Revised Budget</u>	<u>Amendments</u>	<u>Amended Budget</u>
<b><u>Revenues</u></b>				
5711	Current Year Taxes	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
5700	Other Local Revenues	\$ 5,261,000	\$ (2,650,000)	\$ 2,611,000
5800	State Program Revenues	\$ 9,000	\$ -	\$ 9,000
5900	<u>Federal Revenue</u>	\$ 530,000	\$ (270,000)	\$ 260,000
	<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b>\$ 5,800,000</b>	<b>\$ (2,920,000)</b>	<b>\$ 2,880,000</b>
<b><u>Expenditures</u></b>				
35	Food Service	\$ 5,268,861	\$ (1,538,861)	\$ 3,730,000
51	<u>Plant &amp; Maintenance Operations</u>	\$ 531,139	\$ (531,139)	\$ -
	<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b>\$ 5,800,000</b>	<b>\$ (2,070,000)</b>	<b>\$ 3,730,000</b>
				\$ -
	<b>Excess (Deficiency) Of Revenues Over</b>			
<b>1200</b>	<b>Expenditures</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ (850,000)</b>	<b>\$ (850,000)</b>
				\$ -
<b>3000</b>	<b>Beginning Fund Balance-9/1</b>	<b>\$ 1,266,329</b>		<b>\$ 1,266,329</b>
				\$ -
<b>3600</b>	<b>Ending Fund Balance-8/31</b>	<b>\$ 1,266,329</b>		<b>\$ 416,329</b>



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

House Bill 5 (HB 5), 83<sup>rd</sup> Legislative Session requirement concerning “set-aside” state compensatory funding

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Approve the House Bill 5, 83<sup>rd</sup> Legislative Session requirement concerning “set-aside” state compensatory funding.

### **RATIONALE**

Under Section 29.081 of the Texas Education Code (TEC), compensatory education is defined in law as programs and/or services designed to supplement the regular education program for students identified as at risk of dropping out of school. The purposes is to increase academic achievement and reduce the dropout rate of these students.

HB 5, 83<sup>rd</sup> Legislative Session, added new TEC, Section 28.0217 to require each school district to provide accelerated instruction in the applicable subject area each time a student fails to perform satisfactorily on an end-of-course (EOC) assessment instrument.

HB 5 also requires districts “to separately budget and prioritize state compensatory education funding and any other funding necessary to sufficiently support the cost of additional accelerated instruction for students who fail to perform satisfactorily on an EOC assessment instrument. State compensatory education funds cannot be used for any other purpose until your district or charter school has sufficiently funded additional accelerated instruction.”

In order to meet the requirements of HB 5, administration is requesting specific Board approval of \$364,270, which has been included in the existing budget requests, however, needs to be segregated and identified by Board action. These funds will be used to support the following student accelerated instructional practices and interventions: Summer School, accelerated learning, end of course (EOC) review sessions and educational resources to support accelerated instruction.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

2021-2022 General Operating Budget-\$364,270

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez-Assistant Superintendent of Business Services

### **ATTACHMENTS**

None

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

Proposed Budget for 2021-2022

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Approve the 2021-2022 Proposed Budget-Legally Adopted Funds, as presented.

### **RATIONALE**

The proposed budget funds the district's programs and initiatives, provides a competitive salary structure for staff and provides for a projected ending fund balance of \$42.7 million for the General Operating Fund.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

2021-2022 Budget

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services

Evalene Murphy – Assistant Superintendent of Employee and Community Relations

Brad Goerke – Director of Finance

### **ATTACHMENTS**

Proposed Budget-Legally Adopted Funds for 2021-2022

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ESTIMATED REVENUES, APPROPRIATED EXPENDITURES, OTHER RESOURCES AND USES, AND BALANCES  
PROPOSED BUDGET  
LEGALLY ADOPTED FUNDS  
2021-22 SCHOOL YEAR

		GENERAL FUND	FOOD SERVICE FUND	DEBT SERVICE FUND	TOTAL ALL FUNDS
<b>REVENUE</b>					
5700	LOCAL, INTERMEDIATE, OTHER	\$ 136,690,504	\$ 3,311,000	\$ 53,500,000	\$ 193,501,504
5800	STATE PROGRAM REVENUE	5,789,072	9,000	100,000	5,898,072
5900	FEDERAL PROGRAM REVENUE	690,000	2,530,000	-	3,220,000
	<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b><u>\$ 143,169,576</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 5,850,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 53,600,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 202,619,576</u></b>
<b>EXPENDITURE</b>					
11	INSTRUCTION	\$ 58,795,044	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 58,795,044
12	INSTRUCTIONAL RESOURCES	946,936	-	-	946,936
13	INSTRUCTIONAL STAFF DEVELOPMENT	1,095,204	-	-	1,095,204
21	INSTRUCTIONAL ADMINISTRATION	2,006,072	-	-	2,006,072
23	SCHOOL ADMINISTRATION	4,650,202	-	-	4,650,202
31	GUIDANCE AND COUNSELING	3,932,443	-	-	3,932,443
32	SOCIAL WORK SERVICES	140,139	-	-	140,139
33	HEALTH SERVICE	922,045	-	-	922,045
34	PUPIL TRANSPORTATION-REGULAR	4,654,001	-	-	4,654,001
35	FOOD SERVICES	90,000	5,318,861	-	5,408,861
36	CO-CURRICULAR ACTIVITIES	2,491,177	-	-	2,491,177
41	GENERAL ADMINISTRATION	3,766,012 *	-	-	3,766,012
51	PLANT & MAINT OPERATIONS	10,943,134	531,139	-	11,474,273
52	SECURITY AND MONITORING	659,853	-	-	659,853
53	NON-INSTRUCTIONAL DATA PROCESSING	2,927,386	-	-	2,927,386
61	COMMUNITY EDUCATION	421,600	-	-	421,600
71	DEBT SERVICE	0	-	48,490,000	48,490,000
81	CONSTRUCTION	30,000	-	-	30,000
91	STATE TRANSFERS	45,283,201	-	-	45,283,201
92	RECAPTURE INCREMENTAL COSTS	300,000	-	-	300,000
93	SPECIAL ED TRANSFERS-DAY SCHOOL	45,000	-	-	45,000
95	JJAEP TRANSFERS	15,000	-	-	15,000
99	OTHER INTERGOVERNMENTAL CHARGES	570,000	-	-	570,000
	<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b><u>\$ 144,684,449</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 5,850,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 48,490,000</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 199,024,449</u></b>
<b>OTHER RESOURCES AND (USES)</b>					
7000	OTHER RESOURCES	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
8000	OTHER USES	-	-	-	-
	<b>TOTAL RESOURCES &amp; USES</b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 0</u></b>
1200	EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES & OTHER RESOURCES OVER EXPENDI- TURES AND OTHER USES	<b>\$ (1,514,873)</b>	<b>\$ 0</b>	<b>\$ 5,110,000</b>	<b>\$ 3,595,127</b>
3100	BEGINNING FUND BALANCE, 9/1	44,264,472	416,329	7,099,415	51,780,216
3100	ENDING FUND BALANCE, 8/31	<b><u>\$ 42,749,599</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 416,329</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 12,209,415</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 55,375,343</u></b>
	* Senate Bill 622 Requirement Statutorily Required Public Notice	<b>\$ 20,000</b>			

The Official Budget for this district for the school year 2021-22 was adopted at a meeting of the Board of School Trustees on August 11, 2021 as evidenced in the Official School Board minutes. I certify, to the best of my knowledge, that the budget preparation and adoption is in accordance with provisions applicable to the Texas Education Code.



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

Resolution No. 081121-01 regarding the 2021-2022 Tax Rate and Golden Pennies Election

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Board adopt Resolution No. 081121-01 regarding the 2021-2022 Tax Rate and Golden Pennies Election.

### **RATIONALE**

In order to access the two additional Golden Pennies available under House Bill 3, 86<sup>th</sup> Legislative Session, the District must adopt a Local Maintenance tax rate higher than the current Voter Approved Tax Rate. That action will necessitate the need to call a Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election for the November 2, 2021 uniform election date. At the August 11, 2021 meeting, the Board of Trustees will consider the following Consideration Items regarding the 2021-2022 tax rate:

1. Resolution Regarding the 2021-2022 Tax Rate and Golden Pennies Election;
2. Adoption of the 2021-2022 Tax Rate; and
3. Election Order Calling a Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election to be held on November 2, 2021

The Resolution Regarding the 2021-2022 Tax Rate and Golden Pennies Election is intended to confirm the Board of Trustees' intention to lower the Debt Service tax rate by \$0.02 so that the voters of Lake Travis ISD will see the full tax rate compression provided for under House Bill 3.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

2021-2022 General Operating Budget - \$3,000,000

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services

Brad Goerke – Director of Finance

Amber King – General Counsel

### **ATTACHMENTS**

Resolution No. 081121-02 of the Lake Travis Independent School District Regarding the 2021-2022 Tax Rate and Golden Pennies Election

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

**RESOLUTION NO. 081121-01 OF THE LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT REGARDING THE 2021-2022 TAX RATE AND GOLDEN PENNIES ELECTION**

**WHEREAS**, the Board of Trustees (the *Board*) of the Lake Travis Independent School District (the *District*) seeks to ensure a high-quality education program for all of its students; and

**WHEREAS**, the District's 2020-2021 tax rate was \$1.3239, which included \$0.9764 for the Maintenance and Operations (*M&O*) rate and \$0.3475 for the Interest and Sinking (*I&S*) rate; and

**WHEREAS**, the M&O rate funds operation of schools, including teacher and staff compensation, staffing to maintain reasonable class sizes, and instructional and program support, while the I&S rate funds repayment of bond debt;

**WHEREAS**, the school finance system in the State of Texas (the *State*) is based on recapture (commonly called "Robin Hood"), whereby property-wealthy school districts send locally-collected property tax revenue to the State to distribute to lower-wealth school districts and charter schools; and

**WHEREAS**, the District is subject to recapture, and each year, District residents pay significant amounts of local taxes to the State; and

**WHEREAS**, in 2019, during the 86th Legislative Session, the State Legislature passed sweeping school finance legislation (*House Bill 3*) that reduced and reformed property taxes and recapture, including lowering and compressing school district tax rates; and

**WHEREAS**, the State allows school districts to raise the M&O rate through the use of "Golden Pennies," which are the pennies of tax effort for which a district is able to generate the highest level of supplemental funding because revenues generated from these Golden Pennies are not recapturable through "Robin Hood," and local tax revenues generated from the Golden Pennies stay with school districts; and

**WHEREAS**, in 2017, the District's voters overwhelmingly passed a Tax Ratification Election (now known as a Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election), which, through the use of the then-available two Golden Pennies, added an estimated \$2.1 million of non-recapturable funds to the District's operating budget while maintaining, and not increasing, the overall tax rate; and

**WHEREAS**, through House Bill 3, the District's tax rate has been automatically compressed and lowered, resulting in a loss of funding to the District; and

**WHEREAS**, House Bill 3 continues to provide the option for the District to ask its voters to access two additional Golden Pennies for the M&O tax rate at a Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election, which, if approved by the District's voters, would result in an annual additional increase of approximately \$3 million of general fund revenues; and

**WHEREAS**, the Board hereby finds and determines that the following resolutions are in the best interests of the residents of the District;

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE BOARD OF TRUSTEES OF THE LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT THAT:**

SECTION 1: At the November 2, 2021 Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election, voters will be asked to keep two additional Golden Pennies local by ratifying an M&O rate of \$0.9026 (the *Proposition*).

SECTION 2: If voters approve the Proposition, the 2021-2022 total tax rate will be \$1.2301, comprised of the voter-approved M&O rate of \$0.9026 and the I&S rate of \$0.3275.

SECTION 3: If voters approve the Proposition, the 2021-2022 tax rate of \$1.2301 would generate an additional and approximate \$3 million to the District in the 2021-2022 school year, and a larger amount annually thereafter, none of which would be recaptured by the State through the “Robin Hood” school finance system.

SECTION 4: If voters do not approve the Proposition, the 2021-2022 total tax rate will be \$1.2301, comprised of an M&O rate of \$0.8826 and an I&S rate of \$0.3475.

SECTION 5: The recitals contained in the preamble hereof are hereby found to be true; and such recitals are hereby made a part of this Resolution for all purposes and are adopted as a part of the judgment and findings of the Board.

SECTION 6: All orders and resolutions, or parts thereof, which are in conflict or inconsistent with any provision of this Resolution, are hereby repealed to the extent of such conflict, and the provisions of this Resolution shall be and remain controlling as to the matters resolved herein.

SECTION 7: This Resolution shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State and the United States of America.

SECTION 8: If any provision of this Resolution or the application thereof to any person or circumstance shall be held to be invalid, the remainder of this Resolution and the application of such provision to other persons and circumstances shall nevertheless be valid, and the Board hereby declares that this Resolution would have been enacted without such invalid provision.

SECTION 9: It is officially found, determined, and declared that the meeting at which this Resolution is adopted was open to the public, and public notice of the time, place, and subject matter of the public business to be considered at such meeting, including this Resolution, was given, all as required by Chapter 551, as amended, Texas Government Code.

SECTION 10: This Resolution shall be in force and effect from and after its final passage, and it is so resolved.

\* \* \* \* \*

ADOPTED on the 11th day of August, 2021.

LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL  
DISTRICT

---

John Aouelle  
President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

---

Lauren White  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

(DISTRICT SEAL)



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

2021 Tax Rate Resolution No. 081121-02

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Board adopt Resolution No. 081121-02 regarding the 2021 Tax Rate

### **RATIONALE**

Lake Travis Independent School District's governing body must adopt a tax rate by official action and set it out in an ordinance or resolution. A school district must adopt the tax rate by September 30 or 60 days after receiving the certified roll, whichever date is later. The tax levy will be used to fund the operations and debt service of the school district.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

2021-2022 Budget

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services

Brad Goerke – Director of Finance

### **ATTACHMENTS**

Tax Rate Resolution No. 081121-02

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

**RESOLUTION No. 081121-02**

BE IT RESOLVED that Lake Travis Independent School District Board of Trustees:

Shall levy the following tax rates against the 2021 taxable property within the boundaries of the Lake Travis Independent School District to fund the 2021-2022 school district budget:

General Operating Fund	\$0.90260/\$100 Taxable Value
Debt Service Fund	\$0.34750/\$100 Taxable Value
Total All funds	\$1.25010/\$100 Taxable Value

Furthermore, if District voters approve the total tax rate of \$1.25010 in a voter approval tax ratification election anticipated to be held on November 2, 2021 (the *Election*), in order to reduce the debt service tax rate by \$0.02, the Board hereby covenants to reduce the aforementioned Debt Service Fund tax levy by \$0.02 (which reduction shall occur automatically, and without further action by this Board, upon the canvass of the Election results approving such total tax rate) and in furtherance of the foregoing, and to the extent necessary under applicable law, this Board hereby levies or sets the following tax rates against the 2021 taxable property within the boundaries of the Lake Travis Independent School District to fund the 2021-2022 school district budget, to be assessed and collected by the duly specified assessor and collector as follows:

General Operating Fund	\$0.90260/\$100 Taxable Value
Debt Service Fund	\$0.32750/\$100 Taxable Value
Total All funds	\$1.23010/\$100 Taxable Value

**THIS TAX RATE WILL RAISE MORE TAXES FOR MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS THAN LAST YEAR'S TAX RATE.**

**THE TAX RATE WILL EFFECTIVELY BE RAISED BY 0.00 PERCENT AND WILL RAISE TAXES FOR MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS ON A \$100,000 HOME BY APPROXIMATELY \$20.00.**

Notwithstanding the foregoing statement, because of the covenant of the Board made above for the automatic reduction in the debt service tax rate in the event of the District's voters' approval of the adopted tax rate at an election to be held on November 2, 2021, the amount of taxes for debt service on a \$100,000 home will correspondingly be reduced by \$20.00. The result of this reduction is no tax rate increase on District taxpayers in comparison to the 2020 total tax levy.

This Resolution shall become effective from and after its passage.

Passed, adopted and ordered by the Board, at a meeting at which a quorum was present by a vote of \_\_\_\_\_ in favor and \_\_\_\_\_ against, representing approval by at least 60% of the members of the Board of Trustees, and at which meeting this Resolution, in written form, was before the Board of Trustees at the time of its adoption, all as occurring on this, the 11<sup>th</sup> day of August, 2021.

\_\_\_\_\_  
President, Board of Trustees  
Lake Travis Independent School District

(Seal)

Attest:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary, Board of Trustees  
Lake Travis Independent School District



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

Order Calling a Tax Ratification Election to be held by Lake Travis Independent School District

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Board adopt an order calling a Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election to be held by the Lake Travis Independent School District on November 2, 2021.

### **RATIONALE**

A school district must hold a Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election (VATRE) when it is asking voters to consider raising the tax rate. Lake Travis ISD would ask voters to consider increasing the Maintenance & Operations (M&O) tax rate, while simultaneously decreasing the Interest & Sinking (I&S) tax rate by the same amount.

Through a voter approved VATRE, Lake Travis ISD would move 2 pennies to the M&O tax rate by taking those same 2 pennies from the I&S tax rate. As a result, the total tax rate paid by local homeowners would **NOT** increase. However, Lake Travis ISD could see an additional \$3 million annually in operating revenue. The total tax rate would remain the same \$1.2301 whether the 2021 VATRE is approved by voters or not.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

2021-2022 General Operating Budget - \$3,000,000

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Pam Sanchez – Assistant Superintendent of Business Services  
Brad Goerke – Director of Finance  
Amber King – General Counsel

### **ATTACHMENTS**

Lake Travis ISD – Order Calling a Tax Ratification Election  
Time Table of Events – Lake Travis ISD Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

**AN ORDER CALLING A TAX RATIFICATION ELECTION TO BE HELD BY THE LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT, MAKING PROVISION FOR THE CONDUCT OF A JOINT ELECTION, AND RESOLVING OTHER MATTERS INCIDENT AND RELATED TO SUCH ELECTION**

\*\*\*\*\*

WHEREAS, the Board of Trustees (the *Board*) of the LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT (the *District*), located in Travis County, Texas (the *County*), hereby finds and determines that, as a result of its adoption of an ad valorem tax rate in excess of its rollback tax rate, the District must hold an election allowing its registered voters to determine whether to approve the adopted tax rate (the *Election*) as required by Section 26.08, as amended, Texas Tax Code; and

WHEREAS, an efficiency audit has been performed and its results accepted by the District prior to the Board’s consideration of this Order; and

WHEREAS, the District will contract with the county clerk of the County (the *County Clerk*) to conduct all aspects of the Election; and

WHEREAS, the Election will be held jointly with other political subdivisions (collectively, the *Participants*) as provided pursuant to an election services agreement, a joint election agreement, or a similar agreement between the District and any Participants, entered into according to the Texas Election Code, as amended (the *Code*); and

WHEREAS, the Board hereby finds and determines that the actions herein described are in the best interests of the residents of the District; now, therefore,

BE IT ORDERED BY THE BOARD OF TRUSTEES OF THE LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT THAT:

SECTION 1: An election shall be held on November 2, 2021 (the *Election Day*) in the LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT, which date the District has determined is a permissible date on which the Election can be held in compliance with applicable law, for the purpose of submitting the following measure to the qualified voters of the District:

MEASURE A

“Shall the Board of Trustees of the Lake Travis Independent School District be authorized to levy, pursuant to an order of such Board adopted on August 11, 2021, an ad valorem tax rate of \$1.2301 per \$100 of the taxable assessed valuation of property within the Lake Travis Independent School District for the current tax year, being a rate that is comprised of a maintenance and operations tax rate of \$0.9026 per \$100 of such taxable assessed valuation (the legal maximum for such rate under current Texas law, and the maximum rate for maintenance and operations for which the District may, if now approved by the District’s electorate at this

Election, levy in each year hereafter, being then subject only to annual Board approval) and a debt service tax rate of \$0.3275 per \$100 of such taxable assessed value (an amount that is set annually by the Board), which combined tax rate of \$1.2301 adopted by the Board on August 11, 2021 represents an increase of an additional and approximate \$3,000,000 to the District in the 2021-2022 school year and a larger amount annually thereafter, which is approximately 2.3% higher than the amount collected last year pursuant to Section 26.08, as amended, Texas Tax Code?”

SECTION 2: One or more District election precincts are hereby established for the purpose of holding the Election, and one or more polling places hereby designated for holding the Election in the District election precinct as identified in Exhibit A to this Order (which is incorporated herein by reference for all purposes). In compliance with the Code, the County Clerk will identify and formally approve the appointment of the Presiding Judges, Alternate Presiding Judges, Election Clerks, and all other election officials for the Election. The Superintendent of Schools, the President of the Board of Trustees, or their designees can correct, modify, or change the Exhibits to this Order based upon the final locations and times agreed upon by the District, the County Clerk, and the Participants, if any and as applicable, to the extent permitted by applicable law.

A. To the extent required by the Code or other applicable law, the appointment of election officials at polling locations must include a person fluent in the Spanish language.

B. On Election Day, the polls shall be open as designated on Exhibit A.

The County participates in the Countywide Polling Place Program under Section 43.007 of the Code, meaning that any District voter registered in the County can vote in the Election at any polling place identified in Exhibit A.

C. The main early voting location is designated in Exhibit B to this Order (which is incorporated herein by reference for all purposes). The individual named as the Early Voting Clerk as designated in Exhibit B is hereby appointed as the Early Voting Clerk to conduct such early voting in the Election. The Early Voting Clerk shall appoint the Deputy Early Voting Clerks. This office or place shall remain open to permit early voting each day on the days and at the times as stated in Exhibit B. Early voting shall commence as provided on Exhibit B and continue through the date set forth on Exhibit B, all as provided by the provisions of the Code.

Additionally, permanent and/or temporary branch offices for early voting by personal appearance may be established and maintained in accordance with the Code. In the event such permanent and/or temporary branch locations are established, information regarding the locations, dates, and hours of operation for early voting at these offices shall be identified in Exhibit B hereto.

An Early Voting Ballot Board is hereby established for the purpose of processing early voting results. The individual designated in Exhibit B as the Presiding Judge of the Early Voting Ballot Board is hereby appointed the Presiding Judge of the Early Voting Ballot Board. The Presiding Judge of the Early Voting Ballot Board shall appoint two or more additional members

to constitute the Early Voting Ballot Board members and, if needed, the Signature Verification Committee members required to efficiently process the early voting ballots.

SECTION 3: Any legally permissible voting method may be used for early voting and Election Day voting by personal appearance, and when required by the Code, at least one accessible voting system per polling place will be provided. Certain early voting may be conducted by mail according to the Code.

SECTION 4: The District is authorized to utilize a Central Counting Station (the *Station*) as provided by the Code. The County Clerk, or the designee thereof, is hereby appointed as the Manager of the Station, who will establish a written plan for the orderly operation of the Station according to the Code. The Board hereby authorizes the County Clerk, or the designee thereof, to appoint the Presiding Judge of the Station, the Tabulation Supervisor, and the Programmer for the Station and may appoint Station clerks as needed or desirable. The County Clerk will publish (or cause to be published) notice and conduct testing on the automatic tabulation equipment relating to the Station and conduct instruction for the officials and clerks for the Station according to the Code.

SECTION 5: The official ballot shall be prepared in accordance with the provisions of the Code so as to permit voters to vote “FOR” or “AGAINST” the aforesaid measure which shall appear on the ballot substantially as follows:

PROPOSITION A

RATIFYING THE AD VALOREM TAX RATE OF \$1.2301 PER \$100 VALUATION IN THE LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT FOR THE CURRENT YEAR, A RATE THAT WILL RESULT IN AN INCREASE OF 2.3 PERCENT IN MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS TAX REVENUE FOR THE DISTRICT FOR THE CURRENT YEAR AS COMPARED TO THE PRECEDING YEAR, WHICH IS AN ADDITIONAL \$3,000,000.

SECTION 6: All resident, qualified voters of the District shall be permitted to vote at the Election, and on Election Day, such voters shall vote at the designated polling places. The Election shall be held and conducted according to the Code and other applicable law. To the extent required by law, all election materials and proceedings relating to the Election shall be printed in both English and Spanish.

SECTION 7: A substantial copy of this Order shall serve as proper notice of the Election. This notice, including a Spanish translation thereof, shall be published at least one time in a newspaper of general circulation in the District, with such publication occurring not more than 30 days and not less than 10 days before Election Day. Additionally, this notice, including a Spanish translation thereof, shall be posted on the bulletin board used for posting notices of Board meetings not later than 21 days prior to Election Day. During the 21 days prior to Election Day, the District shall, in a prominent manner, maintain such notice on its Internet website.

SECTION 8: The Board authorizes the President of the Board of Trustees, the Superintendent of Schools, or their designees to negotiate and enter into one or more joint election agreements, election services contracts, and/or similar contracts or agreements with the County,

acting by and through the County Clerk, and any Participants if desired or if required to comply with applicable law, as permitted and in accordance with the Code. In addition, the Board authorizes the President, Board of Trustees, the Superintendent of Schools, or their designees to make such technical modifications to this Order that are necessary for compliance with applicable Texas or federal law or to carry out the intent of the Board, as evidenced herein.

SECTION 9: The recitals contained in the preamble hereof are hereby found to be true, and such recitals are hereby made a part of this Order for all purposes and are adopted as a part of the judgment and findings of the Board.

SECTION 10: All orders and resolutions, or parts thereof, which are in conflict or inconsistent with any provision of this Order are hereby repealed to the extent of such conflict, and the provisions of this Order shall be and remain controlling as to the matters ordered herein.

SECTION 11: This Order shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of Texas and the United States of America.

SECTION 12: It is officially found, determined, and declared that the meeting at which this Order is adopted was open to the public and public notice of the time, place, and subject matter of the public business to be considered at such meeting, including this Order, was given, all as required by Chapter 551, as amended, Texas Government Code.

SECTION 13: If any provision of this Order or the application thereof to any person or circumstance shall be held to be invalid, the remainder of this Order and the application of such provision to other persons and circumstances shall nevertheless be valid, and the Board hereby declares that this Order would have been enacted without such invalid provision.

SECTION 14: This Order shall be in force and effect from and after its final passage, and it is so ordered.

\* \* \*

PASSED AND APPROVED, this the 11th day of August, 2021.

LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL  
DISTRICT

---

John Aouelle  
President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

---

Lauren White  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

(DISTRICT SEAL)

[Signature Page to Lake Travis Independent School District  
Order Calling a Voter-Approval Tax Rate Election]

**Lake Travis ISD Voter-Approval Tax Ratification Election (VATR) for November 2, 2021<sup>1</sup>**

<b>Event</b>	<b>Time Required<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Deadline/Date</b>	<b>T</b>
Board approves Golden Pennies resolution and forms advisory committee		April 21, 2021	
Chief appraiser certifies estimates	latest date	April 30, 2021	
District publishes notice of hearing to discuss budget and proposed tax rate	10-30 days before meeting	<i>To be determined</i> (July 1-July 31, 2021)	
Select auditor for efficiency audit	4 months before election	July 2, 2021	
Board anticipates conducting a hearing, adopting a tax rate, and calling VATRE <sup>3</sup>	Last regular board meeting before deadline to call VATRE <sup>3</sup>	July 21, 2021 <sup>3</sup>	
District receives certified appraisal roll	latest date <sup>4</sup>	July 26, 2021	
TEA provides max compressed tax rate	latest date	August 5, 2021	
Deadline to prepare a budget (no VATRE)	latest date	August 20, 2021	
Deadline to adopt a budget (no VATRE)	latest date	August 31, 2021	
Deadline to complete efficiency audit	3 months after auditor chosen	October 2, 2021	
Deadline to post efficiency audit to website	30 days before election	October 3, 2021	
District publishes notice of election	10-30 days before election <sup>5</sup>	<i>To be determined</i>	
District posts notice of election	21 days before election	October 12, 2021	
Early voting begins	17 days before election	October 18, 2021	
Early voting ends	4 days before election	October 29, 2021	
Deadline for meeting to discuss audit	before election	November 1, 2021	
Election day	1st Tuesday after 1st Monday in November	November 2, 2021	
Board canvasses election returns	3-11 days after election day <sup>6</sup>	November 5-15, 2021	

<sup>1</sup> Subject to legislative change. On February 12, 2021, Governor Abbott declared a state of disaster for all Texas counties, making the efficiency audit discretionary until February 12, 2023.

<sup>2</sup> Unless otherwise noted, if the last date to act falls on a weekend or holiday, the date moves to the next business day.

<sup>3</sup> These items can be addressed at separate meetings or a single meeting provided that the budget is adopted before the tax rate and both the budget and tax rate are adopted **before** calling the VATRE. If the board cannot take action on this regular meeting date, it will need to call a special election no later than 78 days before the election or August 16, 2021. Likewise, if the board cannot take action on this regular meeting date, the deadline for publishing notice of the meeting to discuss the budget and tax rate will change to 10-30 days before the date of the specially called meeting. If an election is not called until August 16, 2021, then the latest day to publish this notice is August 6, 2021.

<sup>4</sup> Because the deadline falls on Sunday, July 25, 2021, it moves to the next business day.

<sup>5</sup> The first day to publish notice of election is October 3, 2021, and the last day is October 25, 2021 (because the deadline falls on Saturday, October 23, it moves to the next business day). Legal notices are published in *Lake Travis View* every Thursday. Notice must be submitted by noon two days before publication. Payment may be required at the same time.

<sup>6</sup> This canvassing period applies to a November election in odd-numbered years. Because the deadline falls on Saturday, November 13, 2021, it moves to the next business day. Especially in close elections, the canvass should not occur before provisional and overseas ballots are counted. Notice of the meeting to canvass the election should be posted at least 72 hours before the meeting.



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

Rescind Resolution No. 081920-03 Regarding the Continuation of Delegation of Authority to Superintendent in Response to COVID-19

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Rescind Resolution No. 081920-03 Regarding the Continuation of Delegation of Authority to Superintendent in Response to COVID-19

### **RATIONALE**

In response to the COVID-19 pandemic and the national and state emergency disaster proclamations, on March 23, 2020, the Board approved Resolution No. 03252020-01 delegating authority to the Superintendent, which allowed for more flexibility and quicker decision-making for needs of the District due to COVID-19. On August 19, 2020, the Board rescinded Resolution No. 03252020-01 and replaced it with Resolution No. 081920-03 continuing its delegation of authority to the Superintendent. While COVID-19 is still present and continues to pose challenges to the District, the need for the additional flexibility or ability to make quicker decisions has subsided, and the administration believes that, at this time, the District can return to standard procedures and process. Therefore, it recommends that the Board rescind Resolution No. 081920-03.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

N/A

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Paul Norton, Superintendent  
Amber King, General Counsel

### **ATTACHMENTS**

Resolution No. 081920-03

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

**RESOLUTION NO. 081920-03**

**THE LAKE TRAVIS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**Continuation of Delegation of Authority to Superintendent in Response to COVID-19**

**WHEREAS**, the Lake Travis Independent School District Board of Trustees (Board) recognizes that officials in the City of Austin, Travis County, and the State of Texas have declared an emergency regarding the potential spread of coronavirus/COVID-19 (hereafter “COVID-19”) and that the territory included in the Lake Travis Independent School District is within the areas where an emergency has been declared;

**WHEREAS**, on March 6, 2020, the Travis County Judge issued a local state of disaster proclamation for Travis County; on March 13, 2020, the Governor of the State of Texas issued a disaster proclamation certifying that COVID-19 poses an imminent threat of disaster for all counties in the state of Texas, and, later that same day, the President of the United States declared a national emergency regarding COVID-19. These disaster declarations have been continued or renewed since those dates;

**WHEREAS**, on March 23, 2020, the Board approved Resolution No. 03252020-01 Delegating Authority to the Superintendent in Response to COVID-19;

**WHEREAS**, as a result of the public health crisis caused by COVID-19, all schools in the state of Texas remained closed to on-campus learning from March 23, 2020 until the end of the 2019-2020 school year;

**WHEREAS**, as a result of the public health crisis caused by COVID-19, Lake Travis ISD will begin the 2020-2021 school year closed to on-campus learning and serving all students in a remote learning environment for at least the first three weeks;

**WHEREAS**, the Board recognizes that COVID-19 is an unforeseen and unavoidable emergency of urgent public necessity;

**WHEREAS**, the Board and Administration are following advice and directives from federal, state, and local authorities in responding to COVID-19, and further recognizes that such guidance and/or orders from federal, state, and local authorities is evolving and changing at a rapid pace;

**WHEREAS**, the Board has a substantial public interest in protecting the health and safety of its students, staff, and community and therefore desires to ensure that the school district and community are prepared to the fullest extent possible to protect the health and safety of students, staff, and community in light of COVID-19;

**WHEREAS**, the Board seeks to retain its employees, reduce turnover, increase morale, help employees focus on work-related matters while at work, and facilitate the return to duty of employees when schools are closed or operating in a modified way and believes that an additional public purpose exists in doing so; and

**WHEREAS**, the Board supports future decisions the Superintendent or designee may make under the authority of this Resolution regarding the continuation of wage payments to all regular employees—contractual and non-contractual, salaried and non-salaried—who suffer a loss

in pay due to an emergency closing or modified operations, as continuation of wage payments as feasible will serve the public purposes of maintaining morale, reducing turnover, and ensuring continuity of District staffing when schools reopen; and

**WHEREAS**, the Board supports future decisions the Superintendent or designee may make under the authority of this resolution regarding premium and/or additional pay for exempt or nonexempt employees who are called on to work during an emergency closing, as provided at DEA (LOCAL) or by other authority, as such expenditures serve the public purposes of maintaining morale, providing equity between idled employees and employees who provide emergency-related services, and recognizing the services of essential staff;

**WHEREAS**, the Board supports future decisions the Superintendent or designee may make under the authority of this resolution regarding extended leave and continued compensation for individuals quarantines as may be necessary when classes resume, as such expenditures serve the public purposes of promoting conscientious health choices and prompting the health and safety of other staff and students;

**WHEREAS**, the Board supports future decisions the Superintendent or designee may make under the authority of this resolution regarding necessary expenditures for continued learning during times of school suspension and/or quarantine, as such expenditures serve the public purpose of learning and supporting students;

**WHEREAS**, the Board supports future decisions the Superintendent or designee may make under the authority of this resolution regarding necessary expenditures and preventative measures to ensure District facilities are properly prepared and optimized, as such expenditures serve the public purposes of providing for a safe return for students and staff;

**WHEREAS**, the Board believes the public purposes described above are fulfilled by efficiently and effectively making certain delegations, as described more fully herein, to the Superintendent to address this ever-changing emergency situation in the best interest of the health, safety, and well-being of its students, staff, community, and the citizenship at-large.

**IT IS THEREFORE RESOLVED THAT** the Board of Trustees of the Lake Travis Independent School District finds a substantial public purpose exists in protecting the health and safety of its students, staff, and community and therefore in ensuring that the school district and community are prepared to the fullest extent possible to protect the health and safety of students, staff, and community in light of COVID-19.

In furtherance of the public purposes so stated in this Resolution, the Board of Trustees of the Lake Travis Independent School District approves a continuation of the following delegations to the Superintendent and designee(s) in order to efficiently and effectively prepare the school district in response to the declarations or orders issued by appropriate federal, state, or local authorities in response to COVID-19:

1. The authority to act in the place of the Board under Board Policy DEA (LOCAL) and thus make all decisions regarding payment of employees during an emergency closure, to implement the provisions of Board Policy DEA (LOCAL), and to make determinations regarding the purpose and parameters of any such payments;

2. The authority to make decisions regarding the compensation of employees during an emergency closure, including premium or additional payments to certain employees, and to implement those decisions;
3. The authority to alter the Lake Travis ISD 2020-2021 school calendar by changing and/or adding school/instructional minutes or hours and work/school days as necessitated by any emergency or ordered closure or related concerns;
4. The authority to act in the place of the Board under Board Policy DEC (LOCAL) to create guidelines and make determinations regarding allowing for additional absences, leave time, leave days, and compensation while on leave for all regular employees – contractual and non-contractual, salaried and non-salaried – whose absences or inability to report to work are a result of COVID-19;
5. The authority to seek any necessary waivers from the Texas Education Agency without further action of the Board of Trustees regarding missed instructional days, low attendance, or any other matters related to responding to COVID-19;
6. The authority to declare a catastrophe and take all actions as appropriate in accordance with Texas Government Code Section 552.233 regarding temporary suspension of the Texas Public Information Act;
7. The authority to act in place of the Board under Board Policies COA, CH, and CV regarding procurement, negotiation and execution of contracts for goods and services that are necessary to effectuate the administrative actions authorized herein, and to remain in compliance with local, state, and federal laws, administrative guidance, and directives during this health crisis.
8. Exercise the authority already granted pursuant to EB (LOCAL) to close schools for reasons of public health and safety.
9. In the event other waivers or immediate actions are needed, the Superintendent is authorized to take other action and to submit/apply for other waivers in accordance with guidance and instructions from the national and state authorities and/or agencies.

The Superintendent and/or designee(s) will provide timely and reasonable information to the Board of Trustees with regard to decisions made pursuant to this Resolution.

Resolution No. 03252020-01 is rescinded and replaced by this Resolution. Resolution No. 081920-03 shall remain in effect until rescinded by Board Action at a duly-called Board Meeting.

**THE ABOVE RESOLUTION IS PASSED AND APPROVED BY A MAJORITY OF THE BOARD OF TRUSTEES ON THIS 19th DAY OF AUGUST, 2020.**

**APPROVED:**

**ATTEST:**

---

John Aouelle  
Vice President, Board of Trustees

---

Lauren White  
Secretary, Board of Trustees



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

2021-2022 Lake Travis ISD Student Code of Conduct

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

Approve the 2021-2022 Lake Travis ISD Student Code of Conduct as presented.

### **RATIONALE**

Each year the LTISD Student Code of Conduct is reviewed by the administration and revised as necessary. The current proposed revisions are minimal and include an update the duties of the district's security personnel as a result of the implementation of LTISD's Police Department and changes prompted by the 87<sup>th</sup> Legislature.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

None

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Amber King, General Counsel

### **ATTACHMENTS**

Draft 2021-2022 LTISD Student Code of Conduct  
Comparison Document

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021



~~2020-2021~~-2022

# STUDENT CODE OF CONDUCT

## Table of Contents

<b>STUDENT CODE OF CONDUCT</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>ACCESSIBILITY</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>PURPOSE</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>SCHOOL DISTRICT AUTHORITY AND JURISDICTION</b> .....	<b>6</b>
<b>Disciplinary Authority</b> .....	<b>6</b>
<b>Campus Behavior Coordinator</b> .....	<b>7</b>
<b>Threat Assessments and Safe and Supportive School Team</b> .....	<b>7</b>
<b>Searches</b> .....	<b>7</b>
<b>Reporting Crimes</b> .....	<b>7</b>
<b>Security Personnel</b> .....	<b>8</b>
<b>Parent Defined</b> .....	<b>9</b>
<b>Participating in Graduation Activities</b> .....	<b>9</b>
<b>Unauthorized Persons</b> .....	<b>9</b>
<b>STANDARDS FOR STUDENT CONDUCT</b> .....	<b>10</b>
<b>NONDISCRIMINATION STATEMENT</b> .....	<b>10</b>
<b>GENERAL CONDUCT VIOLATIONS</b> .....	<b>10</b>
<b>Disregard for Authority</b> .....	<b>11</b>
<b>Mistreatment of Others</b> .....	<b>11</b>
<b>Property Offenses</b> .....	<b>12</b>
<b>Possession of Prohibited Items</b> .....	<b>12</b>
<b>Possession of Telecommunications or Other Electronic Devices</b> .....	<b>13</b>
<b>Illegal, Prescription, and Over-the-Counter Drugs</b> .....	<b>13</b>
<b>Misuse of Technology Resources and the Internet</b> .....	<b>14</b>
<b>Safety Transgressions</b> .....	<b>14</b>
<b>Miscellaneous Offenses</b> .....	<b>15</b>
<b>DISCIPLINE MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES</b> .....	<b>15</b>
<b>Students with Disabilities</b> .....	<b>15</b>
<b>Techniques</b> .....	<b>16</b>
<b>Prohibited Aversive Techniques</b> .....	<b>17</b>
<b>Notification</b> .....	<b>18</b>
<b>Appeals</b> .....	<b>18</b>

<b>REMOVAL FROM THE SCHOOL BUS OR DISTRICT TRANSPORTATION .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>REMOVAL FROM THE REGULAR EDUCATION SETTING .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Routine Referral .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Formal Removal .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Returning Students to Class .....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>OUT-OF-SCHOOL SUSPENSION.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Misconduct.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Process.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Coursework During Suspension.....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>DISCIPLINARY ALTERNATIVE EDUCATION PROGRAM (DAEP) PLACEMENT.....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Discretionary Placement: Misconduct That May Result in DAEP Placement .....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>Mandatory Placement: Misconduct That Requires DAEP Placement.....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Sexual Assault and Campus Assignments .....</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Process.....</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Length of Placement .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Appeals.....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>Restrictions During Placement.....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>Placement Review .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Additional Misconduct .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Notice of Criminal Proceedings.....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Withdrawal During Process .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Newly Enrolled Students .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Emergency Placement Procedures .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Transition Services .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>PLACEMENT AND EXPULSION FOR CERTAIN OFFENSES .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Registered Sex Offenders.....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Certain Felonies .....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>EXPULSION .....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Discretionary Expulsion: Misconduct That May Result in Expulsion.....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Mandatory Expulsion: Misconduct That Requires Expulsion .....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Under Age Ten.....</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Process.....</b>	<b>35</b>

<b>Length of Expulsion</b> .....	36
<b>Withdrawal During Process</b> .....	37
<b>Additional Misconduct While Expelled</b> .....	37
<b>Restrictions During Expulsion</b> .....	37
<b>Newly Enrolled Students</b> .....	37
<b>Emergency Expulsion Procedures</b> .....	38
<b>DAEP Placement of Expelled Students</b> .....	38
<b>Transition Services</b> .....	38
<b>GLOSSARY</b> .....	39

## STUDENT CODE OF CONDUCT

### ACCESSIBILITY

If you have difficulty accessing the information in this document because of disability, please contact ~~Stefani Allen~~~~Elizabeth Deterra~~, Assistant Superintendent, ~~Learning & Teaching Services for Curriculum & Instruction~~, ~~allens@ltsdschools.org deterrae@ltsdschools.org~~ or 512-533-6023.

### PURPOSE

The Student Code of Conduct (“Code”) is the district’s response to the requirements of Chapter 37 of the Texas Education Code.

The Code provides methods and options for managing students in the classroom and on school grounds, disciplining students, and preventing and intervening in student discipline problems.

The law requires the district to define misconduct that may—or must—result in a range of specific disciplinary consequences including removal from a regular classroom or campus, out-of-school suspension, placement in a disciplinary alternative education program (DAEP), placement in a juvenile justice alternative education program (JJAEP), or expulsion from school.

This Code has been adopted by the Lake Travis Independent School District Board of Trustees and developed with the advice of the district-level committee. This Code provides information to parents and students regarding standards of conduct, consequences of misconduct, and procedures for administering discipline. It remains in effect during summer school and at all school-related events and activities outside of the school year until an updated version adopted by the board becomes effective for the next school year.

In accordance with state law, The Code shall be posted at each school campus or shall be available for review at the office of the campus principal. Additionally, the Code shall be available at the office of the campus behavior coordinator(s) and posted on the [LTISD Website](#). Parents shall be notified of any conduct violation that may result in a student being suspended, placed in a DAEP or JJAEP, expelled, or taken into custody by a law enforcement officer under Chapter 37 of the Education Code.

Because the Student Code of Conduct is adopted by the district’s board of trustees, it has the force of policy; therefore, in case of conflict between the Code and the Student Parent Handbook, the Code shall prevail.

**Please note:** The discipline of students with disabilities who are eligible for services under federal law (Individuals with Disabilities Education Act and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973) is subject to the provisions of those laws.

## **SCHOOL DISTRICT AUTHORITY AND JURISDICTION**

### **Disciplinary Authority**

School rules and the authority of the district to administer discipline apply whenever the interest of the district is involved, on or off school grounds, in conjunction with or independent of classes and school-sponsored activities.

The district has disciplinary authority over a student:

- During the regular school day;
- During school-related activities or instruction, whether that occurs in an in-person or online environment;
- While the student is going to and from school or a school-sponsored or school-related activity on district transportation;
- During lunch periods in which a student is allowed to leave campus;
- While the student is in attendance at any school-related activity, regardless of time or location;
- For any school-related misconduct, regardless of time or location;
- When retaliation against a school employee, board member, or volunteer occurs or is threatened, regardless of time or location;
- When a student engages in cyberbullying, as provided by Education Code 37.0832;
- When criminal mischief is committed on or off school property or at a school-related event;
- For certain offenses committed within 300 feet of school property as measured from any point on the school's real property boundary line;
- For certain offenses committed while on school property or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity of another district in Texas;
- When the student commits a felony, as provided by Education Code 37.006 or 37.0081; and
- When the student is required to register as a sex offender.

Students may be subject to campus, classroom, extracurricular, and/or organization rules in addition to those found in this Code. Students may face consequences under these additional rules as well as possible disciplinary action under this Code. Further, to the extent a student engages in misconduct that is not specifically addressed in the Code, the student may still be disciplined if the misconduct disrupts or interferes with the educational process, learning environment, or school safety.

## **Campus Behavior Coordinator**

As required by law, a person at each campus must be designated to serve as the campus behavior coordinator. The designated person may be the principal of the campus or any other campus administrator selected by the principal. At Lake Travis ISD, the assistant principal(s) at each campus have been designated as the campus behavior coordinator(s). The campus behavior coordinator is primarily responsible for maintaining student discipline. The district shall post on its website and in the Student Handbook, for each campus, the email address and telephone number of the person serving as campus behavior coordinator. Contact information may be found at the [Required Postings](#) section of the district's website and the [Student/Parent Handbook](#).

## **Threat Assessments and Safe and Supportive School Team**

The campus behavior coordinator or other appropriate administrator will work closely with the campus threat assessment safe and supportive school team to implement the district's threat assessment policy and procedures, as required by law, and shall take appropriate disciplinary action in accordance with the Code of Conduct.

## **Searches**

In the interest of promoting safety and attempting to ensure that schools are safe and drug free, district officials may occasionally conduct searches. District officials may conduct searches of students, their belongings, and their vehicles in accordance with law and district policy. Searches of students shall be conducted in a reasonable and nondiscriminatory manner. Searches of students will be conducted without discrimination, based on, for example, reasonable suspicion, voluntary consent, or pursuant to district policy providing for suspicionless security procedures. Students are responsible for prohibited items found in their possession, including items in their personal belongings.

A vehicle owner/driver has full responsibility for the security and content of his or her vehicle parked on district property and must make certain that it is locked and that the keys are not given to others. Vehicles parked on district property are under the jurisdiction of the district. District officials may search any vehicle any time there is reasonable suspicion to do so, with or without the permission of the student.

Desks, lockers, district-provided technology, and similar items are the property of the district and are provided for student use as a matter of convenience. District property is subject to search or inspection at any time without notice. Students have no expectations of privacy in district property. Students are responsible for any item found in district property provided to the student that is prohibited by law, district policy, or the Student Code of Conduct.

Refer to the district's policy at FNF (LEGAL) and FNF (LOCAL) for more information regarding investigations and searches.

## **Reporting Crimes**

The campus behavior coordinator and other school administrators as appropriate will report crimes as required by law and shall call local law enforcement when an administrator suspects

that a crime has been committed on campus.

## Security Personnel

To ensure sufficient security and protection of students, staff, and property, the board ~~employs police officers~~ ~~has entered into a memorandum of understanding with a local law enforcement agency for the provision of school resource officers (SROs)~~. In accordance with law, the board has coordinated with the campus behavior coordinators and other district employees to ensure appropriate law enforcement duties are assigned to security staff. ~~The law enforcement~~ ~~these~~ ~~duties of district peace officers~~ ~~include~~ ~~are listed in CKE (LOCAL):~~

- ~~Enforce criminal law and protect the safety and welfare of any person engaged in the educational process within the jurisdiction of the District and protect the property, real and personal, of the District.~~
- ~~Assist the District with order and maintenance by enforcing laws, intervening in disruptions, and engaging in crime prevention activities, which may include awareness of gangs and their actions; and gathering information to assist with crime reduction at school and the surrounding community.~~
- ~~Complete reports and investigate crimes committed within the SROs jurisdiction.~~
- ~~Respond to requests from District administration for law enforcement assistance at any District Campus or facility.~~
- ~~Coordinate, whenever practical, investigative procedures between law enforcement and school administrators, while abiding by all applicable legal requirements concerning interviews or searches.~~
- ~~Take appropriate enforcement action on criminal matters as necessary.~~
- ~~Conduct themselves in a manner that provides a positive role model to students and maintain good relations with the school community, which may include providing information concerning questions about law enforcement topics to students and staff.~~
- ~~Remain highly visible throughout the campus, yet be unpredictable in their movements.~~
- ~~Confer with the principal to develop plans and strategies to prevent and/or minimize dangerous situations on or near the campus or involving students at school-related activities.~~
- ~~Comply with all laws, regulations, and school board policies applicable to employees of the District, including but not limited to laws, regulations and policies regarding access to confidential student records and/or the detention, investigation, and searching of students on school premises, provided the SRO shall under no circumstances be required or expected to act or in a manner inconsistent with their duties as law enforcement officers.~~
- ~~Refrain from using any prohibited "aversive technique" against a student, as defined by Texas Education Code §37.0023.~~
- ~~Provide information concerning questions about law enforcement topics to students and staff, only as directed by the County.~~

- ~~• Attend meetings of parent and faculty groups to solicit their support and understanding of the school resource program and to promote awareness of law enforcement functions.~~
- ~~• Remain familiar with all community agencies offering assistance to youths and their families such as mental health clinics, drug treatment centers, etc., and may make referrals when appropriate.~~
- ~~• Serve on a campus threat assessment team, at the request of the District, for the purpose of assisting in assessing students who make threats of violence or exhibit harmful, threatening, or violent behavior, as defined by law.~~

## Parent Defined

Throughout this Code and related discipline policies, the term “parent” includes a parent, legal guardian, or other person having lawful control of the child.

## Participating in Graduation Activities

The district has the right to limit a student’s participation in graduation activities for violating the district’s Code. Participation might include a speaking role, as established by district policy and procedures.

Students eligible to give opening and closing remarks or other speaking roles at graduation will be notified by the campus principal. Notwithstanding any other eligibility requirements, in order to be considered as an eligible student speaker at graduation ceremonies, a student shall not have engaged in any misconduct in violation of the district’s Code resulting in removal to a DAEP or expulsion during the semester immediately preceding graduation.

See **DAEP – Restrictions During Placement**, for information regarding a student assigned to DAEP at the time of graduation.

## Unauthorized Persons

In accordance with Education Code 37.105, a school administrator, school resource officer (SRO), or district police officer shall have the authority to refuse entry or eject a person from district property if the person refuses to leave peaceably on request and:

1. The person poses a substantial risk of harm to any person; or
2. The person behaves in a manner that is inappropriate for a school setting, and the person persists in the behavior after being given a verbal warning that the behavior is inappropriate and may result in refusal of entry or ejection.

Appeals regarding refusal of entry or ejection from district property may be filed in accordance with policies FNG(LOCAL) or GF(LOCAL), as appropriate. ~~However, the timelines for the district’s grievance procedures shall be adjusted as necessary to permit the person to address the board in person within 90 days, unless the complaint is resolved before the board hearing.~~

## **STANDARDS FOR STUDENT CONDUCT**

Each student is expected to:

- Demonstrate courtesy, even when others do not.
- Behave in a responsible manner, always exercising self-discipline, self-control, and self-respect.
- Attend all classes, regularly and on time.
- Prepare for each class; take appropriate materials and assignments to class.
- Meet district and campus standards of grooming and dress.
- Obey all campus and classroom rules.
- Respect the rights and privileges of students, teachers, and other district staff and volunteers.
- Respect the property of others, including district property and facilities.
- Cooperate with and assist the school staff in maintaining safety, order, and discipline.
- Adhere to the requirements of the Student Code of Conduct.
- Report any acts of bullying.
- Report dangerous behaviors and/or situations to school personnel.
- Report threats of safety of students and staff members as well as misconduct on the part of any other students or staff members to the building principal, a teacher, or another adult.

Because of significant variations in student conduct, it is not always possible for the Code to address each and every act of student misbehavior. To that end, the District retains discretion to address student misconduct that is inconsistent with these standard of conduct even though the conduct may not be specifically included in the Code.

## **NONDISCRIMINATION STATEMENT**

The district does not discriminate against students on the basis of race, sex, sexual orientation, national origin, disability, religion, color, ethnicity, or any other prohibited basis when enforcing the provisions of the Code.

## **GENERAL CONDUCT VIOLATIONS**

The categories of conduct below are prohibited behaviors and will result in the assignment of one or more Discipline Management Techniques if the behavior occurs at school, in vehicles owned or operated by the district, at all school-related or school-sponsored activities, or when the District has disciplinary authority as outlined in the Code. The list does not include the most severe offenses. In the subsequent sections on Out-of-School Suspension, DAEP Placement, Placement and/or Expulsion for Certain Offenses, and Expulsion, certain offenses that require or permit

specific consequences are listed. Any offense, however, may be severe enough to result in Removal from the Regular Educational Setting as detailed in that section.

### **Disregard for Authority**

Students shall not:

- Fail to comply with directives given by school personnel (insubordination).
- Leave assigned location or activity, school grounds or school-sponsored events without permission.
- Disobey rules for conduct in district vehicles.
- Refuse to accept discipline management techniques assigned by a teacher or principal.

### **Mistreatment of Others**

Students shall not:

- Use profanity or vulgar language or make obscene gestures.
- Fight or scuffle. (For assault, see DAEP Placement and Expulsion.)
- Threaten a district student, employee, or volunteer, including off school property, if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment.
- Engage in bullying, cyberbullying, harassment, or making hit lists. (See glossary for all four terms.)
- Release or threaten to release intimate visual material of a minor or a student who is 18 years of age or older without the student's consent.
- Engage in conduct that constitutes sexual or gender-based harassment or sexual abuse, whether by word, gesture, or any other conduct, directed toward another person, including a district student, employee, board member, or volunteer.
- Engage in conduct that constitutes dating violence. (See glossary.)
- Engage in inappropriate or indecent exposure of private body parts.
- Participate in hazing. (See glossary.)
- Cause an individual to act through the use of or threat of force (coercion).
- Commit extortion or blackmail (obtaining money or an object of value from an unwilling person).
- Engage in inappropriate verbal, physical, or sexual conduct directed toward another person, including a district student, employee, or volunteer.
- Record the voice or image of another without the prior consent of the individual being recorded or in any way that disrupts the educational environment or invades the privacy of others.

## Property Offenses

Students shall not:

- Damage or vandalize property owned by others. (For felony criminal mischief, see DAEP Placement or Expulsion.)
- Deface or damage school property—including textbooks, technology and electronic resources, lockers, furniture, and other equipment—with graffiti or by other means.
- Steal from students, staff, or the school.
- Knowingly use another student’s identification card or number to obtain goods or services.
- Commit or assist in a robbery or theft, even if it does not constitute a felony according to the Penal Code. (For felony robbery, aggravated robbery, and theft, see DAEP Placement and Expulsion.)
- Enter, without authorization, district facilities that are not open for operations.

## Possession of Prohibited Items

Students shall not possess or use:

- Fireworks of any kind, smoke or stink bombs, or any other pyrotechnic device;
- A razor, box cutter, chain, or any other object used in a way that threatens or inflicts bodily injury to another person;
- Fake or “look-alike” weapons intended to be used as a weapon or could reasonably be perceived as a weapon;
- A location-restricted knife\*;
- A hand instrument designed to cut or stab another by being thrown;
- A firearm silencer or suppressor;
- Knuckles
- A club\*
- A firearm\*;
- An air gun or BB gun;
- Ammunition, shells, bullets, or gunpowder;
- A stun gun, taser, taser gun, or any other electroshock weapon;
- A pocketknife or any other small knife (less than 5 ½ inches long);
- Mace, pepper spray, or other small chemical dispenser sold commercially for personal protection;
- Material that is sexually-oriented, pornographic, or reveals a person’s private body parts;
- Tobacco products; cigarettes; e-cigarettes; vape products; any component, part, or

**Commented [KA1]:** HB 957 removed from state law criminal penalties for possession of a firearm silencer and added provisions to the Government Code regarding regulation of firearm suppressors, defined as any device designed to muffle the report of a firearm. Therefore, it is recommended to be added as a prohibited item. Also note however that Federal law continues to require expulsion for one year of a student who brings to school a “firearm,” including a firearm muffler or silencer.

accessory for an e-cigarette device (including tobacco/vapor oils); or any other smoking/vaping device or paraphernalia;

- Any consumable hemp products; oils (e.g., CBD oil), lotions, or similar products that contain hemp; hemp products in any form suitable for smoking, vaping or other uses. The sale or distribution of any such hemp products is also prohibited. The term “hemp” is as defined in Title 5, Chapter 121 of the Texas Agriculture Code. A student using such a product with a valid prescription for low-THC cannabis as authorized by Chapter 487 of the Health and Safety Code does not violate this provision, as long as the student complies with district policies and procedures related to use of prescription medication on campus;
- Matches or a lighter;
- A laser pointer for other than an approved use; or
- Any articles not generally considered to be weapons, including school supplies, when the principal or designee determines that a danger exists.

\*For weapons and firearms, see DAEP Placement and/or Expulsion. In many circumstances, possession of these items is punishable by mandatory expulsion under federal or state law.

### **Possession of Telecommunications or Other Electronic Devices**

Students shall not:

- Use a telecommunication device, including a cellular telephone, or other electronic device in violation of district and campus rules.

### **Illegal, Prescription, and Over-the-Counter Drugs**

Students shall not:

- Possess, use, give, or sell alcohol or an illegal drug. (Also see DAEP Placement and Expulsion for mandatory and permissive consequences under state law.)
- Possess or sell seeds or pieces of marijuana in less than a usable amount.
- Possess, use, give, or sell paraphernalia related to any prohibited substance. (See glossary for “paraphernalia.”)
- Possess, use, abuse, or sell look-alike drugs or attempt to pass items off as drugs or contraband.
- Abuse the student’s own prescription drug, give a prescription drug to another student, or possess or be under the influence of another person’s prescription drug on school property or at a school-related event. (See glossary for “abuse.”)
- Abuse over-the-counter drugs. (See glossary for “abuse.”)
- Be under the influence of prescription or over-the-counter drugs that cause impairment of the physical or mental faculties. (See glossary for “under the influence.”)
- Have or take prescription drugs or over-the-counter drugs at school other than as provided by district policy.

## **Misuse of Technology Resources and the Internet**

Students shall not:

- Violate policies, rules, or agreements signed by the student or the student's parent regarding the use of technology resources.
- Attempt to access or circumvent passwords or other security-related information of the district, students, or employees or upload or create computer viruses, including off school property if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment.
- Attempt to alter, destroy, or disable district technology resources including, but not limited to, computers and related equipment, district data, the data of others, or other networks connected to the district's system, including off school property if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment.
- Use the Internet or other electronic communications to threaten or harass district students, employees, board members, or volunteers, including off school property if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment or infringes on the rights of another student at school.
- Send, post, deliver, or possess electronic messages that are abusive, obscene, sexually oriented, threatening, harassing, damaging to another's reputation, or illegal, including cyberbullying and "sexting," either on or off school property, if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment or infringes on the rights of another student at school.
- Use the Internet or other electronic communication to engage in or encourage illegal behavior or threaten school safety, including off school property if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment or infringes on the rights of another student at school.

## **Safety Transgressions**

Students shall not:

- Possess published or electronic material that is designed to promote or encourage illegal behavior or that could threaten school safety.
- Engage in verbal (oral or written) and/or physical actions and/or exchanges that threaten the safety of another student, a school employee, or school property.
- Make false accusations or perpetrate hoaxes regarding school safety.
- Engage in any conduct that school officials might reasonably believe will substantially disrupt, or is likely to cause a disruption to the school program or incite violence.
- Throw objects that can cause bodily injury or property damage.
- Discharge a fire extinguisher without valid cause.

## Miscellaneous Offenses

Students shall not:

- Violate dress and grooming standards as communicated in the Student Handbook.
- Engage in academic dishonesty, which includes cheating~~Cheat~~ or copying the work of another student, plagiarism, and unauthorized communication between students during an examination.
- Gamble.
- Falsify records, passes, or other school-related documents.
- Engage in actions or demonstrations that substantially disrupt or materially interfere with school activities.
- Engage in public displays of affection that are inappropriate for the student's age and grade level.
- Repeatedly violate other communicated campus or classroom standards of conduct.

The district may impose campus, classroom, or club/organization rules in addition to those found in the Code. These rules may be listed in the student and campus handbooks; posted in classrooms; given to the student; or published in extracurricular handbooks, state or national organization by-laws and/or constitutes, and may or may not constitute violations of the Code.

## DISCIPLINE MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES

Discipline shall be designed to improve conduct and to encourage students to adhere to their responsibilities as members of the school community. Disciplinary action shall draw on the professional judgment of teachers and administrators and on a range of discipline management techniques, including positive behavior supports. Discipline shall be based on the seriousness of the offense, the student's age and grade level, the frequency of misbehavior, the student's attitude, the effect of the misconduct on the school environment, and statutory requirements.

Because of these factors, discipline for a particular offense, including misconduct in a district vehicle owned or operated by the district, unless otherwise specified by law, may bring into consideration varying techniques and responses.

## Students with Disabilities

The discipline of students with disabilities is subject to applicable state and federal law in addition to the Student Code of Conduct. To the extent any conflict exists, the district shall comply with federal law. For more information regarding discipline of students with disabilities, see policy FOF (LEGAL).

In accordance with the Texas Education Code, a student who receives special education services may not be disciplined for conduct meeting the definition of bullying, cyberbullying, harassment, or making hit lists (see glossary) until an ARD committee meeting has been held to review the

conduct.

In deciding whether to order suspension, DAEP placement, or expulsion, regardless of whether the action is mandatory or discretionary, the district shall take into consideration a disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct.

## **Techniques**

The following discipline management techniques may be used alone, in combination, or as part of progressive interventions for behavior prohibited by the Student Code of Conduct or by campus or classroom rules:

- Verbal correction, oral or written.
- Cooling-off time or a brief "time-out" period, in accordance with law.
- Seating changes within the classroom or vehicles owned or operated by the district.
- Temporary confiscation of items that disrupt the educational process.
- Rewards or demerits.
- Behavioral contracts.
- Counseling by teachers, school counselors, or administrative personnel.
- Parent-teacher conferences.
- Behavior coaching.
- Anger management classes.
- Mediation (victim-offender).
- Classroom circles.
- Family group conferencing.
- Grade reductions for cheating, plagiarism, and as otherwise permitted by policy.
- Detention, including outside regular school hours.
- Sending the student to the office or other assigned area, or to in-school suspension.
- Assignment of school duties, such as cleaning or picking up litter.
- Withdrawal of privileges, such as participation in extracurricular activities, eligibility for seeking and holding honorary offices, or membership in school-sponsored clubs and organizations.
- Penalties identified in individual student organizations' extracurricular standards of behavior.
- Restriction or revocation of district transportation privileges.

- Out-of-school suspension, as specified in the Out-of-School Suspension section of this Code.
- Placement in a DAEP, as specified in the DAEP section of this Code.
- Placement and/or expulsion in an alternative educational setting, as specified in the Placement and/or Expulsion for Certain Offenses section of this Code.
- Expulsion, as specified in the Expulsion section of this Code.
- Referral to an outside agency or legal authority for criminal prosecution in addition to disciplinary measures imposed by the district.
- Other strategies and consequences as determined by school officials.

### **Prohibited Aversive Techniques**

Aversive techniques are prohibited for use with students and are defined as techniques or interventions intended to reduce the reoccurrence of a behavior by intentionally inflicting significant physical or emotional discomfort or pain. Aversive techniques include:

- Using techniques designed or likely to cause physical pain. [See policy FO(LOCAL).]
- Using techniques designed or likely to cause physical pain by electric shock or any procedure involving pressure points or joint locks.
- Directed release of noxious, toxic, or unpleasant spray, mist, or substance near a student's face.
- Denying adequate sleep, air, food, water, shelter, bedding, physical comfort, supervision, or access to a restroom facility.
- Ridiculing or demeaning a student in a manner that adversely affects or endangers the learning or mental health of the student or constitutes verbal abuse.
- Employing a device, material, or object that immobilizes all four of a student's extremities, including prone or supine floor restraint.
- Impairing the student's breathing, including applying pressure to the student's torso or neck or placing something in, on, or over the student's mouth or nose or covering the student's face.
- Restricting the student's circulation.
- Securing the student to a stationary object while the student is standing or sitting.
- Inhibiting, reducing, or hindering the student's ability to communicate.
- Using chemical restraints.
- Using time-out in a manner that prevents the student from being able to be involved in and progress appropriately in the required curriculum or any applicable individualized education program (IEP) goals, including isolating the student by the use of physical barriers.

- Depriving the student of one or more of the student's senses, unless the technique does not cause the student discomfort or complies with the student's IEP or behavior intervention plan (BIP).

## **Notification**

The campus behavior coordinator shall promptly notify a student's parent by phone or in person of any violation that may result in in-school or out-of-school suspension, placement in a DAEP, placement in a JJAEP, or expulsion. The campus behavior coordinator shall also notify a student's parent if the student is taken into custody by a law enforcement officer under the disciplinary provisions of the Education Code. A good faith effort shall be made on the day the action was taken to provide to the student for delivery to the student's parent written notification of the disciplinary action. If the parent has not been reached by telephone or in person by 5:00 p.m. of the first business day after the day the disciplinary action was taken, the campus behavior coordinator shall send written notification by U.S. Mail. If the campus behavior coordinator is not able to provide notice to the parent, the principal or designee shall provide the notice.

Before the principal or appropriate administrator assigns a student under age 18 to detention outside regular school hours, notice shall be given to the student's parent to inform him or her of the reason for the detention and permit arrangements for necessary transportation.

## **Appeals**

Questions from parents regarding disciplinary measures should be addressed to the teacher, campus administration, or campus behavior coordinator, as appropriate. Appeals or complaints regarding the use of specific discipline management techniques should be addressed in accordance with policy FNG (LOCAL). A copy of the policy may be obtained from the principal's office, the campus behavior coordinator's office, the central administration office or online through the [Lake Travis ISD Board Policy Manual](#).

The district shall not delay a disciplinary consequence while a student or parent pursues a grievance. In the instance of a student who is accused of conduct that meets the definition of sexual harassment as defined by Title IX, the district will comply with applicable federal law, including the Title IX formal complaint process. See policies FFH (LEGAL) and (LOCAL).

## **REMOVAL FROM THE SCHOOL BUS OR DISTRICT TRANSPORTATION**

District rules and guidelines are applicable on all buses or vehicles owned, operated or controlled by the District. Bus safety and discipline issues are managed collaboratively with the Director of Transportation and the appropriate campus administrator and/or the campus behavior coordinator. The transportation department or campus administrator will employ discipline management techniques, as appropriate, which can include restricting or revoking a student's bus riding or other district transportation privileges, in accordance with law.

## **REMOVAL FROM THE REGULAR EDUCATION SETTING**

In addition to other discipline management techniques, misconduct may result in removal from the regular educational setting in the form of a routine referral or a formal removal.

### **Routine Referral**

A routine referral occurs when a teacher sends a student to the campus behavior coordinator's office as a discipline management technique. The campus behavior coordinator shall employ alternative discipline management techniques, including progressive interventions. A teacher or administrator may remove a student from class for a behavior that violates this Code to maintain effective discipline in the classroom.

### **Formal Removal**

A teacher **may** also initiate a formal removal from class if:

1. The student's behavior has been documented by the teacher as repeatedly interfering with the teacher's ability to teach his or her class or with the student's classmates' ability to learn; or
2. The behavior is so unruly, disruptive, or abusive that the teacher cannot teach, and the students in the classroom cannot learn.

Within three school days of the formal removal, the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator shall schedule a conference with the student's parent, the student, the teacher who removed the student from class, and any other appropriate administrator.

At the conference, the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator shall inform the student of the alleged misconduct and the proposed consequences. The student shall have an opportunity to respond to the allegations.

When a student is removed from the regular classroom by a teacher and a conference is pending, the campus behavior coordinator or other administrator may place the student in:

- Another appropriate classroom.
- In-school suspension.
- Out-of-school suspension.
- DAEP.

A teacher or administrator **must** remove a student from class if the student engages in behavior that under the Education Code requires or permits the student to be placed in a DAEP or expelled. When removing for those reasons, the procedures in the subsequent sections on DAEP or expulsion shall be followed.

## Returning Students to Class

When a student has been formally removed from class by a teacher for conduct against the teacher containing the elements of assault, aggravated assault, sexual assault, aggravated sexual assault, murder, capital murder, or criminal attempt to commit murder or capital murder, the student may not be returned to the teacher's class without the teacher's consent.

When a student has been formally removed by a teacher for any other conduct, the student may be returned to the teacher's class without the teacher's consent if the placement review committee determines that the teacher's class is the best or only alternative available.

## OUT-OF-SCHOOL SUSPENSION

### Misconduct

Students may be suspended for any behavior listed in the Code as a general conduct violation, DAEP offense, or expellable offense.

A student ~~in grade 2 or below or a student~~ who is homeless shall not be placed in out-of-school suspension unless, while on school property or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property, the student engages in:

- Conduct that contains the elements of a weapons offense, as provided in Penal Code Section 46.02 or 46.05;
- Conduct that contains the elements of assault, sexual assault, aggravated assault, or aggravated sexual assault, as provided by the Penal Code; or
- Selling, giving, or delivering to another person or possessing, using, or being under the influence of any amount of marijuana, an alcoholic beverage, or a controlled substance or dangerous drug as defined by federal or state law.

### Process

State law allows a student to be suspended for **no more than three school days per behavior violation**, with no limit on the number of times a student may be suspended in a semester or school year.

Before being suspended a student shall have an informal conference with the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator, who shall advise the student of the alleged misconduct. The student shall have the opportunity respond to the allegation before the administrator makes a decision.

The campus behavior coordinator shall determine the number of days of a student's suspension, not to exceed three school days.

In deciding whether to order out-of-school suspension, the campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history,
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct,
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student status as homeless.

The appropriate administrator shall determine any restrictions on participation in school-sponsored or school-related extracurricular and co-curricular activities.

### **Coursework During Suspension**

The district shall ensure a student receives access to coursework for foundation curriculum courses while the student is placed in in-school or out-of-school suspension, including at least one method of receiving this coursework that doesn't require the use of the internet.

A student removed from the regular classroom to in-school suspension or another setting, other than a DAEP, will have an opportunity to complete before the beginning of the next school year each course the student was enrolled in at the time of removal from the regular classroom. The district may provide the opportunity by any method available, including a correspondence course, another distance learning option, or summer school. The district will not charge the student for any method of completion provided by the district.

### **DISCIPLINARY ALTERNATIVE EDUCATION PROGRAM (DAEP) PLACEMENT**

The DAEP shall be provided in a setting other than the student's regular classroom, unless the student meets certain exemption criteria as established in LTISD's District of Innovation Plan and accompanying regulations.

An elementary school student may not be placed in a DAEP with a student who is not an elementary school student.

For purposes of DAEP, elementary classification shall be kindergarten–grade 5 and secondary classification shall be grades 6–12.

Summer school provided by the district may serve students assigned to a DAEP in conjunction with other students.

A student who is expelled for an offense that otherwise would have resulted in a DAEP placement does not have to be placed in a DAEP in addition to the expulsion.

In deciding whether to place a student in a DAEP, regardless of whether the action is mandatory or discretionary, the campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history,
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct,
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student's status as homeless.

### **Discretionary Placement: Misconduct That May Result in DAEP Placement**

A student **may** be placed in a DAEP for behaviors prohibited in the General Conduct Violations section of this Code.

#### **Misconduct Identified in State Law**

In accordance with state law, a student **MAY** be placed in a DAEP for any one of the following offenses:

- Engaging in bullying that encourages a student to commit or attempt to commit suicide.
- Inciting violence against a student through group bullying.
- Releasing or threatening to release intimate visual material of a minor or a student who is 18 years of age or older without the student's consent.
- Involvement in a public school fraternity, sorority, or secret society, including participating as a member or pledge, or soliciting another person to become a pledge or member of a public school fraternity, sorority, secret society, or gang. (See glossary.)
- Involvement in criminal street gang activity. (See glossary.)
- Criminal mischief, not punishable as a felony.
- Assault (no bodily injury) with threat of imminent bodily injury.
- Assault by offensive or provocative physical contact.

In accordance with state law, a student **may** be placed in a DAEP if the superintendent or the superintendent's designee has reasonable belief (see glossary) that the student has engaged in conduct punishable as a felony, other than aggravated robbery or those listed as offenses in Title 5 (see glossary) of the Penal Code, that occurs off school property and not at a school-sponsored or school-related event, if the student's presence in the regular classroom threatens the safety of other students or teachers or will be detrimental to the educational process.

The campus behavior coordinator **may**, but is not required to, place a student in a DAEP for off-

campus conduct for which DAEP placement is required by state law if the administrator does not have knowledge of the conduct before the first anniversary of the date the conduct occurred.

### **Mandatory Placement: Misconduct That Requires DAEP Placement**

A student **must** be placed in a DAEP if the student:

- Engages in conduct relating to a false alarm or report (including a bomb threat) or a terroristic threat involving a public school. (See glossary.)
- Commits the following offenses on school property or within 300 feet of school property as measured from any point on the school's real property boundary line, or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property:
  1. Engages in conduct punishable as a felony.
  2. Commits an assault (see glossary) under Penal Code 22.01(a)(1).
  3. Sells, gives, or delivers to another person, or possesses, uses, or is under the influence of marijuana, a controlled substance, or a dangerous drug in an amount not constituting a felony offense. A student with a valid prescription for low-THC cannabis as authorized by Chapter 487 of the Health and Safety Code does not violate this provision, as long as the student complies with district policies and procedures related to use of prescription medication on campus. (School-related felony drug offenses are addressed in the Expulsion section.) (See glossary for "under the influence.")
  4. Sells, gives, or delivers to another person an alcoholic beverage; commits a serious act or offense while under the influence of alcohol; or possesses, uses, or is under the influence of alcohol, if the conduct is not punishable as a felony offense. (School-related felony alcohol offenses are addressed in the Expulsion section.)
  5. Behaves in a manner that contains the elements of an offense relating to abusable volatile chemicals. (Whether a student should be placed in DAEP or expelled will be determined on a case-by-case basis. See Expulsion section.)
  6. Behaves in a manner that contains the elements of the offense of public lewdness or indecent exposure.
  7. Engages in conduct that contains the elements of an offense of harassment against an employee under Penal Code 42.07(a)(1), (2), (3), or (7).
- Engages in expellable conduct and is between six and nine years of age.
- Commits a federal firearms violation and is younger than six years of age.
- Engages in conduct that contains the elements of the offense of retaliation against any school employee or volunteer on or off school property. (Committing retaliation in combination with another expellable offense is addressed in the Expulsion section of this Code.)
- Engages in conduct punishable as aggravated robbery or a felony listed under Title 5 (see glossary) of the Penal Code when the conduct occurs off school property and not at a school-sponsored or school-related event and:

1. The student receives deferred prosecution (see glossary),
2. A court or jury finds that the student has engaged in delinquent conduct (see glossary), or
3. The superintendent or designee has a reasonable belief (see glossary) that the student engaged in the conduct.

## Sexual Assault and Campus Assignments

If a student has been convicted of continuous sexual abuse of a young child or childrendisabled individual or convicted of or placed on deferred adjudication for sexual assault or aggravated sexual assault against another student on the same campus, and if the victim's parent or another person with the authority to act on behalf of the victim requests that the board transfer the offending student to another campus, the offending student shall be transferred to another campus in the district. If there is no other campus in the district serving the grade level of the offending student, the offending student shall be transferred to a DAEP.

**Commented [KA2]:** HB 375 amends the offense of continuous sexual abuse of a young child or children under Penal Code 21.02 to include continuous sexual abuse of "a disabled individual" and amends the name of the offense to reflect this change.

## Process

Removals to a DAEP shall be made by the campus behavior coordinator.

### Conference

When a student is removed from class for a DAEP offense, the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator shall schedule a conference within three (3) school days with the student's parent, the student, and the teacher, in the case of a teacher removal. The student may not be returned to the regular classroom pending the conference.

At the conference, the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator shall inform the student, orally or in writing, of the reasons for the removal and shall give the student an explanation of the basis for the removal and an opportunity to respond to the reasons for the removal.

Following valid attempts to require attendance, the district may hold the conference and make a placement decision regardless of whether the student or the student's parents attend the conference.

### Consideration of Mitigating Factors

In deciding whether to place a student in a DAEP, regardless of whether the action is mandatory or discretionary, the campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history,
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct,
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or

6. A student's status as homeless.

### **Placement Order**

After the conference, if the student is placed in the DAEP, the campus behavior coordinator shall write a placement order. A copy of the DAEP placement order shall be sent to the student and the student's parent.

Not later than the second business day after the conference, the principal or designee shall deliver to the juvenile court a copy of the placement order and all information required by Section 52.04 of the Family Code.

If the student is placed in the DAEP and the length of placement is inconsistent with the guidelines included in this Code, the placement order shall give notice of the inconsistency.

### **Coursework Notice**

The parent or guardian of a student placed in DAEP shall be given written notice of the student's opportunity to complete a foundation curriculum course in which the student was enrolled at the time of removal and which is required for graduation, at no cost to the student. The notice shall include information regarding all methods available for completing the coursework.

### **Length of Placement**

The campus behavior coordinator shall determine the duration of a student's placement in a DAEP.

The duration of a student's placement shall be determined case-by-case basis based on the seriousness of the offense, the student's age and grade level, the frequency of misconduct, the student's attitude, and statutory requirements.

The maximum period of DAEP placement shall be one calendar year, except as provided below.

Unless otherwise specified in the placement order, days absent from a DAEP shall not count toward fulfilling the total number of days required in a student's DAEP placement order.

The district shall administer the required pre- and post-assessments for students assigned to DAEP for a period of 90 days or longer in accordance with established district administrative procedures for administering other diagnostic or benchmark assessments.

### **Exceeds One Year**

Placement in a DAEP may exceed one year when a review by the district determines that the student is a threat to the safety of other students or to district employees.

The statutory limitations on the length of a DAEP placement do not apply to a placement resulting from the board's decision to place a student who engaged in the sexual assault of another student so that the students are not assigned to the same campus.

### **Exceeds School Year**

Students who commit offenses requiring placement in a DAEP at the end of one school year may be required to continue that placement at the start of the next school year to complete the assigned term of placement.

For placement in a DAEP to extend beyond the end of the school year, the campus behavior coordinator or the board's designee must determine that:

- The student's presence in the regular classroom or campus presents a danger of physical harm to the student or others, or
- The student has engaged in serious or persistent misbehavior (see glossary) that violates the district's Code.

### **Exceeds 60 Days**

For placement in a DAEP to extend beyond 60 days or the end of the next grading period, whichever is sooner, a student's parent shall be given notice and the opportunity to participate in a proceeding before the board or the board's designee.

### **Appeals**

Questions from parents regarding disciplinary measures should be addressed to the campus administration.

Student or parent appeals regarding a student's placement in a DAEP should be addressed in accordance with policy FNG (LOCAL). A copy of this policy may be obtained from the principal's office, the campus behavior coordinator's office, or the central administration office or online through the [Lake Travis ISD Board Policy Manual](#).

Appeals should begin at Level One with the campus principal.

The district shall not delay disciplinary consequences pending the outcome of an appeal. The decision to place a student in a DAEP cannot be appealed beyond the board.

### **Restrictions During Placement**

The district does not permit a student who is placed in DAEP to participate in any school-sponsored or school-related extracurricular or co-curricular activity, including seeking or holding honorary positions and/or membership in school-sponsored clubs and organizations.

The district will provide transportation to students in a DAEP. However, a student may be removed from the bus due to misbehavior and may be responsible for his/her transportation to DAEP.

For seniors who are eligible to graduate and are assigned to a DAEP at the time of graduation, the last day of placement in the program will be the last instructional day, and the student may be allowed to participate in the graduation ceremony and related graduation activities unless otherwise specified in the DAEP placement order.

## **Placement Review**

A student placed in a DAEP shall be provided a review of his or her status, including academic status, by the campus behavior coordinator or the board's designee at intervals not to exceed 120 days. In the case of a high school student, the student's progress toward graduation and the student's graduation plan shall also be reviewed. At the review, the student or the student's parent shall be given the opportunity to present arguments for the student's return to the regular classroom or campus. The student may not be returned to the classroom of a teacher who removed the student without that teacher's consent.

## **Additional Misconduct**

If during the term of placement in a DAEP the student engages in additional misconduct for which placement in a DAEP or expulsion is required or permitted, additional proceedings may be conducted, and the campus behavior coordinator may enter an additional disciplinary order as a result of those proceedings.

## **Notice of Criminal Proceedings**

When a student is placed in a DAEP for certain offenses, the office of the prosecuting attorney shall notify the district if:

1. Prosecution of a student's case was refused for lack of prosecutorial merit or insufficient evidence and no formal proceedings, deferred adjudication (see glossary), or deferred prosecution will be initiated; or
2. The court or jury found a student not guilty, or made a finding that the student did not engage in delinquent conduct or conduct indicating a need for supervision, and the case was dismissed with prejudice.

If a student was placed in a DAEP for such conduct, on receiving the notice from the prosecutor, the superintendent or designee shall review the student's placement and schedule a review with the student's parent not later than the third day after the superintendent or designee receives notice from the prosecutor. The student may not be returned to the regular classroom pending the review.

After reviewing the notice and receiving information from the student's parent, the superintendent or designee may continue the student's placement if there is reason to believe that the presence of the student in the regular classroom threatens the safety of other students or teachers.

The student or the student's parent may appeal the superintendent's decision to the board. The student may not be returned to the regular classroom pending the appeal. In the case of an appeal, the board shall, at the next scheduled meeting, review the notice from the prosecutor and receive information from the student, the student's parent, and the superintendent or designee, and confirm or reverse the decision of the superintendent or designee. The board shall make a record of the proceedings.

If the board confirms the decision of the superintendent or designee, the student and the student's parent may appeal to the Commissioner of Education. The student may not be returned to the regular classroom pending the appeal.

### **Withdrawal During Process**

When a student violates the district's Code in a way that requires or permits the student to be placed in a DAEP and the student withdraws from the district before a placement order is completed, the campus behavior coordinator may complete the proceedings and issue a placement order. If the student then re-enrolls in the district during the same or a subsequent school year, the district may enforce the order at that time, less any period of the placement that has been served by the student during enrollment in another district. If the campus behavior coordinator or the board fails to issue a placement order after the student withdraws, the next district in which the student enrolls may complete the proceedings and issue a placement order.

### **Newly Enrolled Students**

The district shall continue the DAEP placement of a student who enrolls in the district and was assigned to a DAEP in an open-enrollment charter school or another district.

A newly enrolled student with a DAEP placement from a district in another state will be placed as any other newly enrolled student if the behavior committed is a reason for DAEP placement in the receiving district.

If the student was placed in a DAEP by a school district in another state for a period that exceeds one year, this district, by state law, shall reduce the period of the placement so that the total placement does not exceed one year. After a review, however, the placement may be extended beyond a year if the district determines that the student is a threat to the safety of other students or employees or the extended placement is in the best interest of the student.

### **Emergency Placement Procedures**

When an emergency placement is necessary because the student's behavior is so unruly, disruptive, or abusive that it seriously interferes with classroom or school operations, the student shall be given oral notice of the reason for the action. Not later than the tenth day after the date of the placement, the student shall be given the appropriate conference required for assignment to a DAEP.

### **Transition Services**

In accordance with law and district procedures, campus staff shall provide transition services to a student returning to the regular classroom from an alternative education program, including a DAEP. See policy FOCA (LEGAL) for more information.

### **PLACEMENT AND EXPULSION FOR CERTAIN OFFENSES**

This section includes two categories of offenses for which the Education Code provides unique procedures and specific consequences.

## **Registered Sex Offenders**

Upon receiving notification in accordance with state law that a student is currently required to register as a sex offender, the district must remove the student from the regular classroom and determine appropriate placement unless the court orders JJAEP placement.

If the student is under any form of court supervision, including probation, community supervision, or parole, the placement shall be in either DAEP or JJAEP for at least one semester.

If the student is not under any form of court supervision, the placement may be in DAEP or JJAEP for one semester or the placement may be in a regular classroom. The placement may not be in the regular classroom if the board or its designee determines that the student's presence:

- Threatens the safety of other students or teachers,
- Will be detrimental to the educational process, or
- Is not in the best interests of the district's students.

## **Review Committee (for Registered Sex Offenders)**

At the end of the first semester of a student's placement in an alternative educational setting and before the beginning of each school year for which the student remains in an alternative placement, the district shall convene a committee, in accordance with state law, to review the student's placement. The committee shall recommend whether the student should return to the regular classroom or remain in the placement. Absent a special finding, the board or its designee must follow the committee's recommendation.

The placement review of a student with a disability who receives special education services must be made by the ARD committee.

## **Newly Enrolled Students**

If a student enrolls in the district during a mandatory placement as a registered sex offender, the district may count any time already spent by the student in a placement or may require an additional semester in an alternative placement without conducting a review of the placement.

## **Appeal of Placement for Registered Sex Offenders**

A student or the student's parent may appeal the placement by requesting a conference between the board or its designee, the student, and the student's parent. The conference is limited to the factual question of whether the student is required to register as a sex offender. Any decision of the board or its designee under this section is final and may not be appealed.

## **Certain Felonies**

Regardless of whether placement or expulsion is required or permitted by one of the reasons in the DAEP Placement or Expulsion sections, in accordance with Education Code 37.0081, a student **may** be expelled and placed in either DAEP or JJAEP if the board or campus behavior coordinator makes certain findings and the following circumstances exist in relation to aggravated robbery or a felony offense under Title 5 (see glossary) of the Penal Code.

The student must:

- Have received deferred prosecution for conduct defined as aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense;
- Have been found by a court or jury to have engaged in delinquent conduct for conduct defined as aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense;
- Have been charged with engaging in conduct defined as aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense;
- Have been referred to a juvenile court for allegedly engaging in delinquent conduct for conduct defined as aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense; or
- Have received probation or deferred adjudication or have been arrested for, charged with, or convicted of aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense.

The district **may** expel the student and order placement under these circumstances regardless of:

- The date on which the student's conduct occurred,
- The location at which the conduct occurred,
- Whether the conduct occurred while the student was enrolled in the district, or
- Whether the student has successfully completed any court disposition requirements imposed in connection with the conduct.

### **Hearing and Required Findings**

The student must first have a hearing before the board or its designee, who must determine that in addition to the circumstances above that allow for the expulsion, the student's presence in the regular classroom:

- Threatens the safety of other students or teachers,
- Will be detrimental to the educational process, or
- Is not in the best interest of the district's students.

Any decision of the board or the board's designee under this section is final and may not be appealed.

### **Length of Placement**

The student is subject to the placement until:

- The student graduates from high school,
- The charges are dismissed or reduced to a misdemeanor offense, or
- The student completes the term of the placement or is assigned to another program.

### **Placement Review**

A student placed in a DAEP or JJAEP under these circumstances is entitled to a review of his or her status, including academic status, by the campus behavior coordinator or board's designee at

intervals not to exceed 120 days. In the case of a high school student, the student's progress toward graduation and the student's graduation plan shall also be reviewed. At the review, the student or the student's parent shall have the opportunity to present arguments for the student's return to the regular classroom or campus.

### **Newly Enrolled Students**

A student who enrolls in the district before completing a placement under this section from another school district must complete the term of the placement.

### **EXPULSION**

In deciding whether to order expulsion, regardless of whether the action is mandatory or discretionary, the campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history,
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct,
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student's status as homeless.

An expelled student may be enrolled in the Travis County Juvenile Justice Alternative Education Program (JJAEP).

### **Discretionary Expulsion: Misconduct That May Result in Expulsion**

Some of the following types of misconduct may result in mandatory placement in a DAEP, whether or not a student is expelled. (See DAEP Placement)

### **Any Location**

A student **may** be expelled for:

- Engaging in bullying that encourages a student to commit or attempt to commit suicide.
- Inciting violence against a student through group bullying.
- Releasing or threatening to release intimate visual material of a minor or a student who is 18 years of age or older without the student's consent.
- Conduct that contains the elements of assault under Penal Code 22.01(a)(1) in retaliation against a school employee or volunteer.
- Criminal mischief, if punishable as a felony.
- Engaging in conduct that contains the elements of one of the following offenses against another student:

- Aggravated assault.
- Sexual assault.
- Aggravated sexual assault.
- Murder.
- Capital murder.
- Criminal attempt to commit murder or capital murder.
- Aggravated robbery.
- Breach of computer security. (See glossary)
- Engaging in conduct relating to a false alarm or report (including a bomb threat) or a terroristic threat involving a public school.

#### **At School, Within 300 Feet, or at a School Event**

A student **may** be expelled for committing any of the following offenses on or within 300 feet of school property, as measured from any point on the school’s real property boundary line, or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property:

- Selling, giving, or delivering to another person, or possessing, using, or being under the influence of marijuana, a controlled substance, or a dangerous drug, if the conduct is not punishable as a felony. A student with a valid prescription for low-THC cannabis as authorized by Chapter 487 of the Health and Safety Code does not violate this provision, as long as the student complies with district policies and procedures related to use of prescription medication on campus. (See glossary for “under the influence.”)
- Selling, giving, or delivering to another person, or possessing, using, or being under the influence of alcohol; or committing a serious act or offense while under the influence of alcohol, if the conduct is not punishable as a felony.
- Engaging in conduct that contains the elements of an offense relating to abusable volatile chemicals.
- Engaging in conduct that contains the elements of assault under Section 22.01(a)(1) against an employee or a volunteer.
- Engaging in deadly conduct. (See glossary.)

#### **Within 300 Feet of School**

A student **may** be expelled for engaging in the following conduct while within 300 feet of school property, as measured from any point on the school’s real property boundary line:

- Aggravated assault, sexual assault, or aggravated sexual assault.
- Arson. (See glossary.)
- Murder, capital murder, or criminal attempt to commit murder or capital murder.
- Indecency with a child, aggravated kidnapping, manslaughter, criminally negligent homicide, or aggravated robbery.

- Continuous sexual abuse of a young child or children disabled individual.
- Felony drug- or alcohol-related offense.
- Unlawful carrying on or about the student's person a handgun, or a location-restricted knife, as these terms are defined by state law. (See glossary.)
- Possessing, manufacturing, transporting, repairing, or selling a prohibited weapon, as defined by state law. (See glossary.)
- Possession of a firearm, as defined by federal law. (See glossary.)

### **Property of Another District**

A student **may** be expelled for committing any offense that is a state-mandated expellable offense if the offense is committed on the property of another district in Texas or while the student is attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity of a school in another district in Texas.

### **Misconduct While in DAEP**

A student **may** be expelled for engaging in documented serious misbehavior (see glossary) that violates the district's Code, despite documented behavioral interventions while placed in a DAEP. For purposes of discretionary expulsion from a DAEP, serious misbehavior means:

- Deliberate violent behavior that poses a direct threat to the health or safety of others;
- Extortion, meaning the gaining of money or other property by force or threat;
- Conduct that constitutes coercion, as defined by Section 1.07, Penal Code; or
- Conduct that constitutes the offense of:
  1. Public lewdness under Penal Code 21.07;
  2. Indecent exposure under Penal Code 21.08;
  3. Criminal mischief under Penal Code 28.03;
  4. Personal hazing under Penal Code 37.152; or
  5. Harassment under Penal Code 42.07(a)(1), of a student or district employee.

### **Mandatory Expulsion: Misconduct That Requires Expulsion**

A student **must** be expelled under federal or state law for any of the following offenses that occur on school property or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property:

#### **Under Federal Law**

- Bringing to school or possessing at school, including any setting that is under the district's control or supervision for the purpose of a school activity, a firearm, as defined by federal law. (See glossary.)

**Note:** Mandatory expulsion under the federal Gun Free Schools Act does not apply to a firearm that is lawfully stored inside a locked vehicle, or to firearms used in activities approved and

authorized by the district when the district has adopted appropriate safeguards to ensure student safety.

### **Under the Penal Code**

- Unlawful carrying on or about the student’s person the following, in a matter prohibited by Penal Code 46.02:
  1. A handgun, defined by state law as any firearm designed, made, or adapted to be used with one hand. (See glossary.) Note: A student may not be expelled solely on the basis of the student’s use, exhibition, or possession of a firearm that occurs at an approved target range facility that is not located on a school campus, while participating in or preparing for a school-sponsored, shooting sports competition or a shooting sports educational activity that is sponsored or supported by the Parks and Wildlife Department, or a shooting sports sanctioning organization working with the department. [See policy FNCG (LEGAL).]
  2. A location-restricted knife, as defined by state law. (See glossary.)
- Possessing, manufacturing, transporting, repairing, or selling a prohibited weapon, as defined in state law. (See glossary.)
- Behaving in a manner that contains elements of the following offenses under the Texas Penal Code:
  1. Aggravated assault, sexual assault, or aggravated sexual assault.
  2. Arson. (See glossary.)
  3. Murder, capital murder, or criminal attempt to commit murder or capital murder.
  4. Indecency with a child.
  5. Aggravated kidnapping.
  6. Aggravated robbery.
  7. Manslaughter.
  8. Criminally negligent homicide.
  9. Continuous sexual abuse of a young child or ~~children~~ **disabled individual**.
  10. Behavior punishable as a felony that involves selling, giving, or delivering to another person, or possessing, using, or being under the influence of marijuana, a controlled substance, a dangerous drug, or alcohol; or committing a serious act or offense while under the influence of alcohol.
- Engaging in retaliation against a school employee or volunteer combined with one of the above-listed mandatory expulsion offenses.

### **Under Age Ten**

When a student under the age of ten engages in behavior that is expellable behavior, the student shall not be expelled, but shall be placed in a DAEP. A student under age six shall not be placed in a DAEP unless the student commits a federal firearm offense.

## **Process**

If a student is believed to have committed an expellable offense, the campus behavior coordinator or other appropriate administrator shall schedule a hearing within a reasonable time. The student's parent shall be invited in writing to attend the hearing.

Until a hearing can be held, the campus behavior coordinator or other administrator may place the student in:

- Another appropriate classroom.
- In-school suspension.
- Out-of-school suspension.
- DAEP.

## **Hearing**

A student facing expulsion shall be given a hearing with appropriate due process. The student is entitled to:

- Representation by the student's parent or another adult who can provide guidance to the student and who is not an employee of the district,
- An opportunity to testify and to present evidence and witnesses in the student's defense, and
- An opportunity to question the witnesses called by the district at the hearing.

After providing notice to the student and parent of the hearing, the district may hold the hearing regardless of whether the student or the student's parent attends.

The board of trustees delegates to the Superintendent or his/her designee the authority to conduct hearings and expel students.

## **Board Review of Expulsion**

After the due process hearing, the expelled student may request that the board review the expulsion decisions. The student or parent must submit a written request to the Superintendent within seven (7) days after receipt of the written decision. The Superintendent must provide the student or parent written notice of the date, time, and place of the meeting at which the board will review the decision.

The board shall review the record of the expulsion hearing in a closed meeting unless the parent requests in writing that the matter be held in an open meeting. The board may also hear a statement from the student or parent and from the board's designee.

The board shall hear statements made by the parties at the review and shall base its decision on evidence reflected in the record and any statements made by the parties at the review. The board

shall make and communicate its decision orally at the conclusion of the presentation. Consequences shall not be deferred pending the outcome of the hearing.

### **Expulsion Order**

Before ordering the expulsion, the board or campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history, and
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct.
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student's status as homeless.

If the student is expelled, the board or its designee shall deliver to the student and the student's parent a copy of the order expelling the student.

Not later than the second business day after the hearing, the principal or designee shall deliver to the juvenile court a copy of the expulsion order and the information required by Section 52.04 of the Family Code.

If the length of the expulsion is inconsistent with the guidelines included in the Student Code of Conduct, the expulsion order shall give notice of the inconsistency.

### **Length of Expulsion**

The length of an expulsion shall be based on the seriousness of the offense, the student's age and grade level, the frequency of misbehavior, the student's attitude, and statutory requirements.

The duration of a student's expulsion shall be determined on a case-by-case basis. The maximum period of expulsion is one calendar year, except as provided below.

An expulsion may not exceed one year unless, after review, the district determines that:

- The student is a threat to the safety of other students or to district employees, or
- Extended expulsion is in the best interest of the student.

State and federal law require a student to be expelled from the regular classroom for a period of at least one calendar year for bringing a firearm, as defined by federal law, to school. However, the Superintendent may modify the length of the expulsion on a case-by-case basis.

Students who commit offenses that require expulsion at the end of one school year may be expelled into the next school year to complete the term of expulsion.

## **Withdrawal During Process**

When a student has violated the district's Code in a way that requires or permits expulsion from the district and the student withdraws from the district before the expulsion hearing takes place, the district may conduct the hearing after sending written notice to the parent and student.

If the student then re-enrolls in the district during the same or subsequent school year, the district may enforce the expulsion order at that time, less any expulsion period that has been served by the student during enrollment in another district.

If the campus behavior coordinator or the board fails to issue an expulsion order after the student withdraws, the next district in which the student enrolls may complete the proceedings.

## **Additional Misconduct While Expelled**

If during the expulsion, the student engages in additional conduct for which placement in a DAEP or expulsion is required or permitted, additional proceedings may be conducted, and the campus behavior coordinator or the board may issue an additional disciplinary order as a result of those proceedings.

## **Restrictions During Expulsion**

Expelled students are prohibited from being on school grounds or attending school-sponsored or school-related activities during the period of expulsion.

No district academic credit shall be earned for work missed during the period of expulsion unless the student is enrolled in a JJAEP or another district-approved program.

## **Newly Enrolled Students**

The district shall continue the expulsion of any newly enrolled student expelled from another district or an open-enrollment charter school until the period of the expulsion is completed.

If a student expelled in another state enrolls in the district, the district may continue the expulsion under the terms of the expulsion order, may place the student in a DAEP for the period specified in the order, or may allow the student to attend regular classes if:

- The out-of-state district provides the district with a copy of the expulsion order, and
- The offense resulting in the expulsion is also an expellable offense in the district in which the student is enrolling.

If a student is expelled by a district in another state for a period that exceeds one year and the district continues the expulsion or places the student in a DAEP, the district shall reduce the period of the expulsion or DAEP placement so that the entire period does not exceed one year, unless after a review it is determined that:

- The student is a threat to the safety of other students or district employees, or
- Extended placement is in the best interest of the student.

### **Emergency Expulsion Procedures**

When an emergency expulsion is necessary to protect persons or property from imminent harm, the student shall be given verbal notice of the reason for the action. Within ten days after the date of the emergency expulsion, the student shall be given appropriate due process required for a student facing expulsion.

### **DAEP Placement of Expelled Students**

The district may provide educational services to any expelled student in a DAEP; however, educational services in the DAEP must be provided if the student is less than ten years of age.

### **Transition Services**

In accordance with law and district procedures, campus staff shall provide transition services to a student returning to the regular classroom from an alternative education program, including a DAEP. See policy FOCA (LEGAL) for more information.

## **GLOSSARY**

This glossary provides legal definitions and locally established definitions and is intended to assist in understanding terms related to the Student Code of Conduct.

**Abuse** is improper or excessive use.

**Aggravated robbery** is defined in part by Penal Code 29.03(a) as when a person commits robbery and:

1. Causes serious bodily injury to another;
2. Uses or exhibits a deadly weapon; or
3. Causes bodily injury to another person or threatens or places another person in fear of imminent bodily injury or death, if the other person is:
  - a. 65 years of age or older, or
  - b. A disabled person.

**Armor-piercing ammunition** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as handgun ammunition used in pistols and revolvers and designed primarily for the purpose of penetrating metal or body armor.

**Arson** is defined in part by Penal Code 28.02 as:

1. A crime that involves starting a fire or causing an explosion with intent to destroy or damage:
  - a. Any vegetation, fence, or structure on open-space land; or
  - b. Any building, habitation, or vehicle:
    - 1) Knowing that it is within the limits of an incorporated city or town,
    - 2) Knowing that it is insured against damage or destruction,
    - 3) Knowing that it is subject to a mortgage or other security interest,
    - 4) Knowing that it is located on property belonging to another,
    - 5) Knowing that it has located within it property belonging to another, or
    - 6) When the person starting the fire is reckless about whether the burning or explosion will endanger the life of some individual or the safety of the property of another.
2. A crime that involves recklessly starting a fire or causing an explosion while manufacturing or attempting to manufacture a controlled substance and the fire or explosion damages any building, habitation, or vehicle; or
3. A crime that involves intentionally starting a fire or causing an explosion and in so doing:
  - a. Recklessly damages or destroys a building belonging to another, or
  - b. Recklessly causes another person to suffer bodily injury or death.

**Assault** is defined in part by Penal Code §22.01(a)(1) as intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly causing bodily injury to another; §22.01(a)(2) as intentionally or knowingly threatening another

with imminent bodily injury; and §22.01(a)(3) as intentionally or knowingly causing physical contact with another that can reasonably be regarded as offensive or provocative.

**Breach of Computer Security** includes knowingly accessing a computer, computer network, or computer system without the effective consent of the owner as defined in Penal Code 33.02, if the conduct involves accessing a computer, computer network, or computer system owned by or operated on behalf of a school district; and the student knowingly alters, damages, or deletes school district property or information; or commits a breach of any other computer, computer network, or computer system.

**Bullying** is defined in Section 37.0832 of the Education Code as a single significant act or a pattern of acts by one or more students directed at another student that exploits an imbalance of power and involves engaging in written or verbal expression, expression through electronic means, or physical conduct that:

1. Has the effect or will have the effect of physically harming a student, damaging a student's property, or placing a student in reasonable fear of harm to the student's person or of damage to the student's property;
2. Is sufficiently severe, persistent, or pervasive enough that the action or threat creates an intimidating, threatening, or abusive educational environment for a student;
3. Materially and substantially disrupts the educational process or the orderly operation of a classroom or school; or
4. Infringes on the rights of the victim at school.

Bullying includes cyberbullying. (See below) This state law on bullying prevention applies to:

1. Bullying that occurs on or is delivered to school property or to the site of a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property;
2. Bullying that occurs on a publicly or privately owned school bus or vehicle being used for transportation of students to or from school or a school-sponsored or school-related activity; and
3. Cyberbullying that occurs off school property or outside of a school-sponsored or school-related activity if the cyberbullying interferes with a student's educational opportunities or substantially disrupts the orderly operation of a classroom, school, or school-sponsored or school-related activity.

**Chemical dispensing device** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a device designed, made, or adapted for the purpose of dispensing a substance capable of causing an adverse psychological or physiological effect on a human being. A small chemical dispenser sold commercially for personal protection is not in this category.

**Club** is defined by Texas Penal Code 46.01 as an instrument specially designed, made, or adapted for the purpose of inflicting serious bodily injury or death. A blackjack, nightstick, mace, and tomahawk are in the same category.

**Controlled substance** means a substance, including a drug, an adulterant, and a dilutant, listed in Schedules I through V or Penalty Group 1, 1-A, 1-B, 2, 2-A, 3, or 4 of the Texas Controlled Substances Act. The term includes the aggregate weight of any mixture, solution, or other substance containing a controlled substance. The term does not include hemp, as defined by

**Commented [KA3]:** SB 768 amends the Health and Safety Code to create a new penalty group under the Texas Controlled Substances Act for fentanyl and related substances.

Agriculture Code 121.001, or the tetrahydrocannabinols (THC) in hemp.

**Criminal street gang** is defined by Penal Code 71.01 as three or more persons having a common identifying sign or symbol or an identifiable leadership who continuously or regularly associate in the commission of criminal activities.

**Cyberbullying** is defined by Section 37.0832 of the Education Code as bullying that is done through the use of any electronic communication device, including through the use of a cellular or other type of telephone, a computer, a camera, electronic mail, instant messaging, text messaging, a social media application, an Internet website, or any other Internet-based communication tool.

**Dangerous drug** is defined by Health and Safety Code 483.001 as a device or a drug that is unsafe for self-medication and that is not included in Schedules I through V or Penalty Groups 1 through 4 of the Texas Controlled Substances Act. The term includes a device or drug that federal law prohibits dispensing without prescription or restricts to use by or on the order of a licensed veterinarian.

**Dating violence** occurs when a person in a current or past dating relationship uses physical, sexual, verbal, or emotional abuse to harm, threaten, intimidate, or control another person in the relationship. Dating violence also occurs when a person commits these acts against a person in a marriage or dating relationship with the individual who is or was once in a marriage or dating relationship with the person committing the offense, as defined by Section 71.0021 of the Family Code.

**Deadly conduct** under Penal Code 22.05 occurs when a person recklessly engages in conduct that places another in imminent danger of serious bodily injury, such as knowingly discharging a firearm in the direction of an individual, habitation, building, or vehicle.

**Deferred adjudication** is an alternative to seeking a conviction in court that may be offered to a juvenile for delinquent conduct or conduct indicating a need for supervision.

**Deferred prosecution** may be offered to a juvenile as an alternative to seeking a conviction in court for delinquent conduct or conduct indicating a need for supervision.

**Delinquent conduct** is conduct that violates either state or federal law and is punishable by imprisonment or confinement in jail. It includes conduct that violates certain juvenile court orders, including probation orders, but does not include violations of traffic laws.

**Discretionary** means that something is left to or regulated by a local decision maker.

**E-cigarette** means an electronic cigarette or any other device that simulates smoking by using a mechanical heating element, battery, or electronic circuit to deliver nicotine or other substances to the individual inhaling from the device or a consumable liquid solution or other material aerosolized or vaporized during the use of an electronic cigarette or other device described by this provision. The term includes any device that is manufactured, distributed, or sold as an e-cigarette, e-cigar, or e-pipe or under another product name or description and a component, part, or accessory for the device, regardless of whether the component, part, or accessory is sold separately from the device.

**Commented [KA4]:** SB 248 expanded the definition of e-cigarettes in the Health and Safety Code.

**Explosive weapon** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as any explosive or incendiary bomb, grenade, rocket, or mine and its delivery mechanism that is designed, made, or adapted for the purpose of

inflicting serious bodily injury, death, or substantial property damage, or for the principal purpose of causing such a loud report as to cause undue public alarm or terror.

**False alarm or report** under Penal Code 42.06 occurs when a person knowingly initiates, communicates, or circulates a report of a present, past, or future bombing, fire, offense, or other emergency that he or she knows is false or baseless and that would ordinarily:

1. Cause action by an official or volunteer agency organized to deal with emergencies;
2. Place a person in fear of imminent serious bodily injury; or
3. Prevent or interrupt the occupation of a building, room, or place of assembly.

**Firearm** is defined by federal law (18 U.S.C. § 921(a)) as:

1. Any weapon (including a starter gun) that will, is designed to, or may readily be converted to expel a projectile by the action of an explosive;
2. The frame or receiver of any such weapon;
3. Any firearm muffler or firearm weapon; or
4. Any destructive device, such as any explosive, incendiary or poison gas bomb, or grenade.

Such term does not include an antique firearm.

~~**Firearm silencer** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as any device designed, made, or adapted to muffle the report of a firearm.~~

**Commented [KA5]:** HB 957 repealed the definition in the Penal Code.

**Graffiti** includes markings with paint, an indelible pen or marker, or an etching or engraving device on tangible property without the effective consent of the owner. The markings may include inscriptions, slogans, drawings, or paintings.

**Handgun** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as any firearm that is designed, made, or adapted to be fired with one hand.

**Harassment** includes:

1. Conduct that meets the definition established in district policies DIA (LOCAL) and FFH (LOCAL);
2. Conduct that threatens to cause harm or bodily injury to another person, including a district student, employee, board member, or volunteer; is sexually intimidating; causes physical damage to the property of another student; subjects another student to physical confinement or restraint; or maliciously and substantially harms another student's physical or emotional health or safety, as defined in Section 37.001(b)(2) of the Education Code; or
3. Conduct that is punishable as a crime under Penal Code 42.07, including the following types of conduct if carried out with the intent to harass, annoy, alarm, abuse, torment, or embarrass another:
  1. Initiating communication and, in the course of the communication, making a comment, request, suggestion, or proposal that is obscene, as defined by law;
  2. Threatening, in a manner reasonably likely to alarm the person receiving the threat, to inflict bodily injury on the person or to commit a felony against the person, a member of the person's family or household, or the person's property;

3. Conveying, in a manner reasonably likely to alarm the person receiving the report, a false report, which is known by the conveyor to be false, that another person has suffered death or serious bodily injury; ~~and~~
4. Sending repeated electronic communications in a manner reasonably likely to harass, annoy, alarm, abuse, torment, embarrass, or offend another; ~~and~~
- 4.5. Publishing on an internet website, including a social media platform, repeated electronic communications in a manner reasonably likely to cause emotional distress, abuse, or torment to another person, unless the communications are made in connection with a matter of public concern, as defined by law.

Formatted: Font: Bold

Commented [KA6]: SB 530 expands the offense of harassment under Penal Code 42.07.

**Hazing** is defined by Section 37.151 of the Education Code as an intentional, knowing, or reckless act, on or off campus, by one person alone or acting with others directed against a student for the purpose of pledging, initiation into, affiliation with, holding office in, or maintaining membership in a student organization if the act meets the elements in the Education Code 37.151, including:

1. Any type of physical brutality;
2. An activity that subjects the student to an unreasonable risk of harm or that adversely affects the student's mental or physical harm, such as sleep deprivation, exposure to the elements, confinements to small spaces, calisthenics, or consumption of food, liquids, drugs, or other substances;
3. An activity that induces, causes, or requires the student to perform a duty or task that violates the Penal Code; and
4. Coercing a student to consume a drug or alcoholic beverage in an amount that would lead a reasonable person to believe the student is intoxicated.

**Hit list** is defined in Section 37.001(b)(3) of the Education Code as a list of people targeted to be harmed, using a firearm, a knife, or any other object to be used with intent to cause bodily harm.

**Improvised explosive device** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a completed and operational bomb designed to cause serious bodily injury, death, or substantial property damage that is fabricated in an improvised manner using nonmilitary components.

**Indecent exposure** is defined by Penal Code 21.08 as an offense that occurs when a person exposes the person's anus or any part of the person's genitals with intent to arouse or gratify the sexual desire of any person, and is reckless about whether another is present who will be offended or alarmed by the act.

**Intimate visual material** is defined by Civil Practices and Remedies Code 98B.001 and Texas Penal Code 21.16 as visual material that depicts a person with the person's intimate parts exposed or engaged in sexual conduct. "Visual material" means any film, photograph, video tape, negative, or slide of any photographic reproduction or any other physical medium that allows an image to be displayed on a computer or other video screen and any image transmitted to a computer or other video screen.

**Location-restricted knife** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a knife with a blade over five and one-half inches.

**Knuckles** means any instrument consisting of finger rings or guards made of a hard substance and designed or adapted for inflicting serious bodily injury or death by striking a person with a fist enclosed in the knuckles.

**Machine gun** as defined by Penal Code 46.01 is any firearm that is capable of shooting more than two shots automatically, without manual reloading, by a single function of the trigger.

**Mandatory** means that something is obligatory or required because of an authority.

**Paraphernalia** are devices that can be used for inhaling, ingesting, injecting, or otherwise introducing a controlled substance into a human body.

**Possession** means to have an item on one's person or in one's personal property, including, but not limited to, clothing, purse, or backpack; a private vehicle used for transportation to or from school or school-related activities, including, but not limited, to an automobile, truck, motorcycle, or bicycle; telecommunications or electronic devices; or any school property used by the student, including, but not limited to, a locker or desk.

**Prohibited weapon** under Penal Code 46.05(a) means:

1. The following items unless registered with the U.S. Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms, and Explosives or otherwise not subject to that registration requirement or unless the item is classified as a curio or relic by the U.S. Department of Justice:
  - a. An explosive weapon;
  - b. A machine gun;
  - c. A short-barrel firearm;
2. Armor-piercing ammunition;
3. A chemical dispensing device;
4. A zip gun;
5. A tire deflation device; or
6. An improvised explosive device; ~~or~~

~~7. A firearm silencer, unless classified as a curio or relic by the U.S. Department of Justice or the actor otherwise possesses, manufactures, transports, repairs, or sells the firearm silencer in compliance with federal law.~~

**Public Lewdness** is defined by Penal Code 21.07 as an offense that occurs when a person knowingly engages in an act of sexual intercourse, deviate sexual intercourse, or sexual contact in a public place or, if not in a public place, is reckless about whether another is present who will be offended or alarmed by the act.

**Public school fraternity, sorority, secret society, or gang** means an organization composed wholly or in part of students that seeks to perpetuate itself by taking additional members from the students enrolled in school based on a decision of its membership rather than on the free choice of a qualified student. Educational organizations listed in Section 37.121(d) of the Education Code are excepted from this definition.

**Reasonable belief** is that which an ordinary person of average intelligence and sound mind would

believe. Chapter 37 requires certain disciplinary decisions when the superintendent or designee has a reasonable belief that a student engaged in conduct punishable as a felony offense. In forming such a reasonable belief, the superintendent or designee may use all available information, including the notice of a student's arrest under Article 15.27 of the Code of Criminal Procedure.

**Self-defense** is the use of force against another to the degree a person reasonably believes the force is immediately necessary to protect himself or herself.

**Serious misbehavior** means:

1. Deliberate violent behavior that poses a direct threat to the health or safety of others;
2. Extortion, meaning the gaining of money or other property by force or threat;
3. Conduct that constitutes coercion, as defined by Section 1.07, Texas Penal Code; or
4. Conduct that constitutes the offense of:
  - a. Public lewdness under Section 21.07, Texas Penal Code;
  - b. Indecent exposure under Section 21.08; Texas Penal Code;
  - c. Criminal mischief under Section 28.03, Texas Penal Code;
  - d. Personal hazing under Section 37.152, Education Code; or
  - e. Harassment under Section 42.07(a)(1), Texas Penal Code, of a student or district employee.

**Serious or persistent misbehavior** includes, but is not limited to:

1. Behavior that is grounds for permissible expulsion or mandatory DAEP placement.
2. Behavior identified by the district as grounds for discretionary DAEP placement.
3. Actions or demonstrations that substantially disrupt or materially interfere with school activities.
4. Refusal to attempt or complete schoolwork as assigned.
5. Insubordination.
6. Profanity, vulgar language, or obscene gestures.
7. Leaving school grounds without permission.
8. Falsification of records, passes, or other school-related documents.
9. Refusal to accept discipline assigned by the teacher or principal.

**Short-barrel firearm** defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a rifle with a barrel length of less than 16 inches or a shotgun with a barrel length of less than 18 inches, or any weapon made from a rifle or shotgun that, as altered, has an overall length of less than 26 inches.

**Terroristic threat** is defined by Penal Code 22.07 as a threat of violence to any person or property with intent to:

1. Cause a reaction of any type by an official or volunteer agency organized to deal with emergencies;

2. Place any person in fear of imminent serious bodily injury;
3. Prevent or interrupt the occupation or use of a building; room, place of assembly, or place to which the public has access; place of employment or occupation; aircraft, automobile, or other form of conveyance; or other public place;
4. Cause impairment or interruption of public communications; public transportation; public water, gas, or power supply; or other public service;
5. Place the public or a substantial group of the public in fear of serious bodily injury; or
6. Influence the conduct or activities of a branch or agency of the federal government, the state, or a political subdivision of the state (including the district).

**Tire deflation device** is defined in part by Penal Code 46.01 as a device, including a caltrop or spike strip, that, when driven over, impedes or stops the movement of a wheeled vehicle by puncturing one or more of the vehicle's tires.

**Title 5 offenses felonies** are those crimes listed in Title 5 of the Penal Code that typically involve injury to a person and may include:

1. Murder, manslaughter, or homicide under Sections 19.02, – .05, Texas Penal Code;
2. Kidnapping under Section 20.03, Texas Penal Code;
3. Trafficking of persons under Section 20A.02, Texas Penal Code;
4. Smuggling or continuous smuggling of persons under Sections 20.05 – .06, Texas Penal Code;
5. Assault under Section 22.01, Texas Penal Code;
6. Aggravated assault under Section 22.02, Texas Penal Code;
7. Sexual assault under Section 22.011, Texas Penal Code;
8. Aggravated sexual assault under Section 22.021, Texas Penal Code;
9. Unlawful restraint under Section 20.02, Texas Penal Code;
10. Continuous sexual abuse of a young child or ~~children~~ disabled individual under Section 21.02, Texas Penal Code;
11. Bestiality under Section 21.09, Texas Penal Code;
12. Improper relationship between educator and student under Section 21.12, Texas Penal Code;
13. Voyeurism under Section 21.17, Texas Penal Code;
14. Indecency with a child under Section 21.11, Texas Penal Code;
15. Invasive visual recording under Section 21.15, Texas Penal Code;
16. Disclosure or promotion of intimate visual material under Section 21.16, Texas Penal Code;
17. Sexual coercion under Section 21.18, Texas Penal Code;

18. Injury to a child, an elderly person, or a disabled person of any age under Section 22.04, Texas Penal Code;
19. Abandoning or endangering a child under Section 22.041, Texas Penal Code;
20. Deadly conduct under Section 22.05, Texas Penal Code;
21. Terroristic threat under Section 22.07, Texas Penal Code;
22. Aiding a person to commit suicide under Section 22.08, Texas Penal Code; and
23. Tampering with a consumer product under Section 22.09, Texas Penal Code.

**Under the influence** means lacking the normal use of mental or physical faculties. Impairment of a person's physical or mental faculties may be evidenced by a pattern of abnormal or erratic behavior, the presence of physical symptoms of drug or alcohol use, or by admission. A student "under the influence" need not be legally intoxicated to trigger disciplinary action.

**Use** means voluntarily introducing into one's body, by any means, a prohibited substance.

**Zip gun** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a device or combination of devices, not originally a firearm, but adapted to expel a projectile through a smooth-bore or rifled-bore barrel by using the energy generated by an explosion or burning substance.



**2021-2022**

**STUDENT CODE OF CONDUCT**

## Table of Contents

<b>STUDENT CODE OF CONDUCT .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>ACCESSIBILITY .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>PURPOSE.....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>SCHOOL DISTRICT AUTHORITY AND JURISDICTION .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Disciplinary Authority.....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Campus Behavior Coordinator.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Threat Assessments and Safe and Supportive School Team.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Searches .....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Reporting Crimes.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Security Personnel .....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Parent Defined.....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Participating in Graduation Activities.....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Unauthorized Persons.....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>STANDARDS FOR STUDENT CONDUCT .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>NONDISCRIMINATION STATEMENT .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>GENERAL CONDUCT VIOLATIONS.....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Disregard for Authority.....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Mistreatment of Others .....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Property Offenses.....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Possession of Prohibited Items.....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Possession of Telecommunications or Other Electronic Devices .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Illegal, Prescription, and Over-the-Counter Drugs .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Misuse of Technology Resources and the Internet.....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Safety Transgressions .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Miscellaneous Offenses.....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>DISCIPLINE MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>Students with Disabilities .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>Techniques.....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>Prohibited Aversive Techniques.....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>Notification .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>Appeals.....</b>	<b>17</b>

<b>REMOVAL FROM THE SCHOOL BUS OR DISTRICT TRANSPORTATION .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>REMOVAL FROM THE REGULAR EDUCATION SETTING .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Routine Referral.....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Formal Removal.....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Returning Students to Class.....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>OUT-OF-SCHOOL SUSPENSION.....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Misconduct.....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Process.....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Coursework During Suspension .....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>DISCIPLINARY ALTERNATIVE EDUCATION PROGRAM (DAEP) PLACEMENT.....</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Discretionary Placement: Misconduct That May Result in DAEP Placement.....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Mandatory Placement: Misconduct That Requires DAEP Placement .....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>Sexual Assault and Campus Assignments .....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Process.....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Length of Placement .....</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Appeals.....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Restrictions During Placement .....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Placement Review .....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>Additional Misconduct .....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>Notice of Criminal Proceedings .....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>Withdrawal During Process.....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Newly Enrolled Students .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Emergency Placement Procedures .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Transition Services.....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>PLACEMENT AND EXPULSION FOR CERTAIN OFFENSES .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Registered Sex Offenders .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Certain Felonies .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>EXPULSION .....</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Discretionary Expulsion: Misconduct That May Result in Expulsion.....</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Mandatory Expulsion: Misconduct That Requires Expulsion .....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Under Age Ten .....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Process.....</b>	<b>34</b>

<b>Length of Expulsion</b> .....	<b>35</b>
<b>Withdrawal During Process</b> .....	<b>36</b>
<b>Additional Misconduct While Expelled</b> .....	<b>36</b>
<b>Restrictions During Expulsion</b> .....	<b>36</b>
<b>Newly Enrolled Students</b> .....	<b>36</b>
<b>Emergency Expulsion Procedures</b> .....	<b>37</b>
<b>DAEP Placement of Expelled Students</b> .....	<b>37</b>
<b>Transition Services</b> .....	<b>37</b>
<b>GLOSSARY</b> .....	<b>38</b>

# STUDENT CODE OF CONDUCT

## ACCESSIBILITY

If you have difficulty accessing the information in this document because of disability, please contact Stefani Allen, Assistant Superintendent for Curriculum & Instruction, [allens@ltisdschools.org](mailto:allens@ltisdschools.org) or 512-533-6023.

## PURPOSE

The Student Code of Conduct (“Code”) is the district’s response to the requirements of Chapter 37 of the Texas Education Code.

The Code provides methods and options for managing students in the classroom and on school grounds, disciplining students, and preventing and intervening in student discipline problems.

The law requires the district to define misconduct that may—or must—result in a range of specific disciplinary consequences including removal from a regular classroom or campus, out-of-school suspension, placement in a disciplinary alternative education program (DAEP), placement in a juvenile justice alternative education program (JJAEP), or expulsion from school.

This Code has been adopted by the Lake Travis Independent School District Board of Trustees and developed with the advice of the district-level committee. This Code provides information to parents and students regarding standards of conduct, consequences of misconduct, and procedures for administering discipline. It remains in effect during summer school and at all school-related events and activities outside of the school year until an updated version adopted by the board becomes effective for the next school year.

In accordance with state law, The Code shall be posted at each school campus or shall be available for review at the office of the campus principal. Additionally, the Code shall be available at the office of the campus behavior coordinator(s) and posted on the [LTISD Website](#). Parents shall be notified of any conduct violation that may result in a student being suspended, placed in a DAEP or JJAEP, expelled, or taken into custody by a law enforcement officer under Chapter 37 of the Education Code.

Because the Student Code of Conduct is adopted by the district’s board of trustees, it has the force of policy; therefore, in case of conflict between the Code and the Student Parent Handbook, the Code shall prevail.

**Please note:** The discipline of students with disabilities who are eligible for services under federal law (Individuals with Disabilities Education Act and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973) is subject to the provisions of those laws.

## **SCHOOL DISTRICT AUTHORITY AND JURISDICTION**

### **Disciplinary Authority**

School rules and the authority of the district to administer discipline apply whenever the interest of the district is involved, on or off school grounds, in conjunction with or independent of classes and school-sponsored activities.

The district has disciplinary authority over a student:

- During the regular school day;
- During school-related activities or instruction, whether that occurs in an in-person or online environment;
- While the student is going to and from school or a school-sponsored or school-related activity on district transportation;
- During lunch periods in which a student is allowed to leave campus;
- While the student is in attendance at any school-related activity, regardless of time or location;
- For any school-related misconduct, regardless of time or location;
- When retaliation against a school employee, board member, or volunteer occurs or is threatened, regardless of time or location;
- When a student engages in cyberbullying, as provided by Education Code 37.0832;
- When criminal mischief is committed on or off school property or at a school-related event;
- For certain offenses committed within 300 feet of school property as measured from any point on the school's real property boundary line;
- For certain offenses committed while on school property or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity of another district in Texas;
- When the student commits a felony, as provided by Education Code 37.006 or 37.0081; and
- When the student is required to register as a sex offender.

Students may be subject to campus, classroom, extracurricular, and/or organization rules in addition to those found in this Code. Students may face consequences under these additional rules as well as possible disciplinary action under this Code. Further, to the extent a student engages in misconduct that is not specifically addressed in the Code, the student may still be disciplined if the misconduct disrupts or interferes with the educational process, learning environment, or school safety.

## **Campus Behavior Coordinator**

As required by law, a person at each campus must be designated to serve as the campus behavior coordinator. The designated person may be the principal of the campus or any other campus administrator selected by the principal. At Lake Travis ISD, the assistant principal(s) at each campus have been designated as the campus behavior coordinator(s). The campus behavior coordinator is primarily responsible for maintaining student discipline. The district shall post on its website and in the Student Handbook, for each campus, the email address and telephone number of the person serving as campus behavior coordinator. Contact information may be found at the [Required Postings](#) section of the district's website and the [Student/Parent Handbook](#).

## **Threat Assessments and Safe and Supportive School Team**

The campus behavior coordinator or other appropriate administrator will work closely with the campus threat assessment safe and supportive school team to implement the district's threat assessment policy and procedures, as required by law, and shall take appropriate disciplinary action in accordance with the Code of Conduct.

## **Searches**

In the interest of promoting safety and attempting to ensure that schools are safe and drug free, district officials may occasionally conduct searches. District officials may conduct searches of students, their belongings, and their vehicles in accordance with law and district policy. Searches of students shall be conducted in a reasonable and nondiscriminatory manner. Searches of students will be conducted without discrimination, based on, for example, reasonable suspicion, voluntary consent, or pursuant to district policy providing for suspicionless security procedures. Students are responsible for prohibited items found in their possession, including items in their personal belongings.

A vehicle owner/driver has full responsibility for the security and content of his or her vehicle parked on district property and must make certain that it is locked and that the keys are not given to others. Vehicles parked on district property are under the jurisdiction of the district. District officials may search any vehicle any time there is reasonable suspicion to do so, with or without the permission of the student.

Desks, lockers, district-provided technology, and similar items are the property of the district and are provided for student use as a matter of convenience. District property is subject to search or inspection at any time without notice. Students have no expectations of privacy in district property. Students are responsible for any item found in district property provided to the student that is prohibited by law, district policy, or the Student Code of Conduct.

Refer to the district's policy at FNF (LEGAL) and FNF (LOCAL) for more information regarding investigations and searches.

## **Reporting Crimes**

The campus behavior coordinator and other school administrators as appropriate will report crimes as required by law and shall call local law enforcement when an administrator suspects

that a crime has been committed on campus.

## **Security Personnel**

To ensure sufficient security and protection of students, staff, and property, the board employs police officers. In accordance with law, the board has coordinated with the campus behavior coordinators and other district employees to ensure appropriate law enforcement duties are assigned to security staff. The law enforcement duties of district peace officers are listed in CKE (LOCAL).

## **Parent Defined**

Throughout this Code and related discipline policies, the term “parent” includes a parent, legal guardian, or other person having lawful control of the child.

## **Participating in Graduation Activities**

The district has the right to limit a student’s participation in graduation activities for violating the district’s Code. Participation might include a speaking role, as established by district policy and procedures.

Students eligible to give opening and closing remarks or other speaking roles at graduation will be notified by the campus principal. Notwithstanding any other eligibility requirements, in order to be considered as an eligible student speaker at graduation ceremonies, a student shall not have engaged in any misconduct in violation of the district’s Code resulting in removal to a DAEP or expulsion during the semester immediately preceding graduation.

**See DAEP – Restrictions During Placement**, for information regarding a student assigned to DAEP at the time of graduation.

## **Unauthorized Persons**

In accordance with Education Code 37.105, a school administrator, school resource officer (SRO), or district police officer shall have the authority to refuse entry or eject a person from district property if the person refuses to leave peaceably on request and:

1. The person poses a substantial risk of harm to any person; or
2. The person behaves in a manner that is inappropriate for a school setting, and the person persists in the behavior after being given a verbal warning that the behavior is inappropriate and may result in refusal of entry or ejection.

Appeals regarding refusal of entry or ejection from district property may be filed in accordance with policies FNG(LOCAL) or GF(LOCAL), as appropriate.

## **STANDARDS FOR STUDENT CONDUCT**

Each student is expected to:

- Demonstrate courtesy, even when others do not.
- Behave in a responsible manner, always exercising self-discipline, self-control, and self-respect.
- Attend all classes, regularly and on time.
- Prepare for each class; take appropriate materials and assignments to class.
- Meet district and campus standards of grooming and dress.
- Obey all campus and classroom rules.
- Respect the rights and privileges of students, teachers, and other district staff and volunteers.
- Respect the property of others, including district property and facilities.
- Cooperate with and assist the school staff in maintaining safety, order, and discipline.
- Adhere to the requirements of the Student Code of Conduct.
- Report any acts of bullying.
- Report dangerous behaviors and/or situations to school personnel.
- Report threats of safety of students and staff members as well as misconduct on the part of any other students or staff members to the building principal, a teacher, or another adult.

Because of significant variations in student conduct, it is not always possible for the Code to address each and every act of student misbehavior. To that end, the District retains discretion to address student misconduct that is inconsistent with these standard of conduct even though the conduct may not be specifically included in the Code.

## **NONDISCRIMINATION STATEMENT**

The district does not discriminate against students on the basis of race, sex, sexual orientation, national origin, disability, religion, color, ethnicity, or any other prohibited basis when enforcing the provisions of the Code.

## **GENERAL CONDUCT VIOLATIONS**

The categories of conduct below are prohibited behaviors and will result in the assignment of one or more Discipline Management Techniques if the behavior occurs at school, in vehicles owned or operated by the district, at all school-related or school-sponsored activities, or when the District has disciplinary authority as outlined in the Code. The list does not include the most severe offenses. In the subsequent sections on Out-of-School Suspension, DAEP Placement, Placement and/or Expulsion for Certain Offenses, and Expulsion, certain offenses that require or permit

specific consequences are listed. Any offense, however, may be severe enough to result in Removal from the Regular Educational Setting as detailed in that section.

## **Disregard for Authority**

Students shall not:

- Fail to comply with directives given by school personnel (insubordination).
- Leave assigned location or activity, school grounds or school-sponsored events without permission.
- Disobey rules for conduct in district vehicles.
- Refuse to accept discipline management techniques assigned by a teacher or principal.

## **Mistreatment of Others**

Students shall not:

- Use profanity or vulgar language or make obscene gestures.
- Fight or scuffle. (For assault, see DAEP Placement and Expulsion.)
- Threaten a district student, employee, or volunteer, including off school property, if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment.
- Engage in bullying, cyberbullying, harassment, or making hit lists. (See glossary for all four terms.)
- Release or threaten to release intimate visual material of a minor or a student who is 18 years of age or older without the student's consent.
- Engage in conduct that constitutes sexual or gender-based harassment or sexual abuse, whether by word, gesture, or any other conduct, directed toward another person, including a district student, employee, board member, or volunteer.
- Engage in conduct that constitutes dating violence. (See glossary.)
- Engage in inappropriate or indecent exposure of private body parts.
- Participate in hazing. (See glossary.)
- Cause an individual to act through the use of or threat of force (coercion).
- Commit extortion or blackmail (obtaining money or an object of value from an unwilling person).
- Engage in inappropriate verbal, physical, or sexual conduct directed toward another person, including a district student, employee, or volunteer.
- Record the voice or image of another without the prior consent of the individual being recorded or in any way that disrupts the educational environment or invades the privacy of others.

## **Property Offenses**

Students shall not:

- Damage or vandalize property owned by others. (For felony criminal mischief, see DAEP Placement or Expulsion.)
- Deface or damage school property—including textbooks, technology and electronic resources, lockers, furniture, and other equipment—with graffiti or by other means.
- Steal from students, staff, or the school.
- Knowingly use another student’s identification card or number to obtain goods or services.
- Commit or assist in a robbery or theft, even if it does not constitute a felony according to the Penal Code. (For felony robbery, aggravated robbery, and theft, see DAEP Placement and Expulsion.)
- Enter, without authorization, district facilities that are not open for operations.

## **Possession of Prohibited Items**

Students shall not possess or use:

- Fireworks of any kind, smoke or stink bombs, or any other pyrotechnic device;
- A razor, box cutter, chain, or any other object used in a way that threatens or inflicts bodily injury to another person;
- Fake or “look-alike” weapons intended to be used as a weapon or could reasonably be perceived as a weapon;
- A location-restricted knife\*;
- A hand instrument designed to cut or stab another by being thrown;
- A firearm silencer or suppressor;
- Knuckles
- A club\*
- A firearm\*;
- An air gun or BB gun;
- Ammunition, shells, bullets, or gunpowder;
- A stun gun, taser, taser gun, or any other electroshock weapon;
- A pocketknife or any other small knife (less than 5 ½ inches long);
- Mace, pepper spray, or other small chemical dispenser sold commercially for personal protection;
- Material that is sexually-oriented, pornographic, or reveals a person’s private body parts;
- Tobacco products; cigarettes; e-cigarettes; vape products; any component, part, or

accessory for an e-cigarette device (including tobacco/vapor oils); or any other smoking/vaping device or paraphernalia;

- Any consumable hemp products; oils (e.g., CBD oil), lotions, or similar products that contain hemp; hemp products in any form suitable for smoking, vaping or other uses. The sale or distribution of any such hemp products is also prohibited. The term “hemp” is as defined in Title 5, Chapter 121 of the Texas Agriculture Code. A student using such a product with a valid prescription for low-THC cannabis as authorized by Chapter 487 of the Health and Safety Code does not violate this provision, as long as the student complies with district policies and procedures related to use of prescription medication on campus;
- Matches or a lighter;
- A laser pointer for other than an approved use; or
- Any articles not generally considered to be weapons, including school supplies, when the principal or designee determines that a danger exists.

\*For weapons and firearms, see DAEP Placement and/or Expulsion. In many circumstances, possession of these items is punishable by mandatory expulsion under federal or state law.

## **Possession of Telecommunications or Other Electronic Devices**

Students shall not:

- Use a telecommunication device, including a cellular telephone, or other electronic device in violation of district and campus rules.

## **Illegal, Prescription, and Over-the-Counter Drugs**

Students shall not:

- Possess, use, give, or sell alcohol or an illegal drug. (Also see DAEP Placement and Expulsion for mandatory and permissive consequences under state law.)
- Possess or sell seeds or pieces of marijuana in less than a usable amount.
- Possess, use, give, or sell paraphernalia related to any prohibited substance. (See glossary for “paraphernalia.”)
- Possess, use, abuse, or sell look-alike drugs or attempt to pass items off as drugs or contraband.
- Abuse the student’s own prescription drug, give a prescription drug to another student, or possess or be under the influence of another person’s prescription drug on school property or at a school-related event. (See glossary for “abuse.”)
- Abuse over-the-counter drugs. (See glossary for “abuse.”)
- Be under the influence of prescription or over-the-counter drugs that cause impairment of the physical or mental faculties. (See glossary for “under the influence.”)
- Have or take prescription drugs or over-the-counter drugs at school other than as provided by district policy.

## **Misuse of Technology Resources and the Internet**

Students shall not:

- Violate policies, rules, or agreements signed by the student or the student's parent regarding the use of technology resources.
- Attempt to access or circumvent passwords or other security-related information of the district, students, or employees or upload or create computer viruses, including off school property if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment.
- Attempt to alter, destroy, or disable district technology resources including, but not limited to, computers and related equipment, district data, the data of others, or other networks connected to the district's system, including off school property if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment.
- Use the Internet or other electronic communications to threaten or harass district students, employees, board members, or volunteers, including off school property if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment or infringes on the rights of another student at school.
- Send, post, deliver, or possess electronic messages that are abusive, obscene, sexually oriented, threatening, harassing, damaging to another's reputation, or illegal, including cyberbullying and "sexting," either on or off school property, if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment or infringes on the rights of another student at school.
- Use the Internet or other electronic communication to engage in or encourage illegal behavior or threaten school safety, including off school property if the conduct causes a substantial disruption to the educational environment or infringes on the rights of another student at school.

## **Safety Transgressions**

Students shall not:

- Possess published or electronic material that is designed to promote or encourage illegal behavior or that could threaten school safety.
- Engage in verbal (oral or written) and/or physical actions and/or exchanges that threaten the safety of another student, a school employee, or school property.
- Make false accusations or perpetrate hoaxes regarding school safety.
- Engage in any conduct that school officials might reasonably believe will substantially disrupt, or is likely to cause a disruption to the school program or incite violence.
- Throw objects that can cause bodily injury or property damage.
- Discharge a fire extinguisher without valid cause.

## **Miscellaneous Offenses**

Students shall not:

- Violate dress and grooming standards as communicated in the Student Handbook.
- Engage in academic dishonesty, which includes cheating or copying the work of another student, plagiarism, and unauthorized communication between students during an examination.
- Gamble.
- Falsify records, passes, or other school-related documents.
- Engage in actions or demonstrations that substantially disrupt or materially interfere with school activities.
- Engage in public displays of affection that are inappropriate for the student's age and grade level.
- Repeatedly violate other communicated campus or classroom standards of conduct.

The district may impose campus, classroom, or club/organization rules in addition to those found in the Code. These rules may be listed in the student and campus handbooks; posted in classrooms; given to the student; or published in extracurricular handbooks, state or national organization by-laws and/or constitutes, and may or may not constitute violations of the Code.

## **DISCIPLINE MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES**

Discipline shall be designed to improve conduct and to encourage students to adhere to their responsibilities as members of the school community. Disciplinary action shall draw on the professional judgment of teachers and administrators and on a range of discipline management techniques, including positive behavior supports. Discipline shall be based on the seriousness of the offense, the student's age and grade level, the frequency of misbehavior, the student's attitude, the effect of the misconduct on the school environment, and statutory requirements.

Because of these factors, discipline for a particular offense, including misconduct in a district vehicle owned or operated by the district, unless otherwise specified by law, may bring into consideration varying techniques and responses.

## **Students with Disabilities**

The discipline of students with disabilities is subject to applicable state and federal law in addition to the Student Code of Conduct. To the extent any conflict exists, the district shall comply with federal law. For more information regarding discipline of students with disabilities, see policy FOF (LEGAL).

In accordance with the Texas Education Code, a student who receives special education services may not be disciplined for conduct meeting the definition of bullying, cyberbullying, harassment, or making hit lists (see glossary) until an ARD committee meeting has been held to review the

conduct.

In deciding whether to order suspension, DAEP placement, or expulsion, regardless of whether the action is mandatory or discretionary, the district shall take into consideration a disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct.

## **Techniques**

The following discipline management techniques may be used alone, in combination, or as part of progressive interventions for behavior prohibited by the Student Code of Conduct or by campus or classroom rules:

- Verbal correction, oral or written.
- Cooling-off time or a brief "time-out" period, in accordance with law.
- Seating changes within the classroom or vehicles owned or operated by the district.
- Temporary confiscation of items that disrupt the educational process.
- Rewards or demerits.
- Behavioral contracts.
- Counseling by teachers, school counselors, or administrative personnel.
- Parent-teacher conferences.
- Behavior coaching.
- Anger management classes.
- Mediation (victim-offender).
- Classroom circles.
- Family group conferencing.
- Grade reductions for cheating, plagiarism, and as otherwise permitted by policy.
- Detention, including outside regular school hours.
- Sending the student to the office or other assigned area, or to in-school suspension.
- Assignment of school duties, such as cleaning or picking up litter.
- Withdrawal of privileges, such as participation in extracurricular activities, eligibility for seeking and holding honorary offices, or membership in school-sponsored clubs and organizations.
- Penalties identified in individual student organizations' extracurricular standards of behavior.
- Restriction or revocation of district transportation privileges.

- Out-of-school suspension, as specified in the Out-of-School Suspension section of this Code.
- Placement in a DAEP, as specified in the DAEP section of this Code.
- Placement and/or expulsion in an alternative educational setting, as specified in the Placement and/or Expulsion for Certain Offenses section of this Code.
- Expulsion, as specified in the Expulsion section of this Code.
- Referral to an outside agency or legal authority for criminal prosecution in addition to disciplinary measures imposed by the district.
- Other strategies and consequences as determined by school officials.

## **Prohibited Aversive Techniques**

Aversive techniques are prohibited for use with students and are defined as techniques or interventions intended to reduce the reoccurrence of a behavior by intentionally inflicting significant physical or emotional discomfort or pain. Aversive techniques include:

- Using techniques designed or likely to cause physical pain. [See policy FO(LOCAL).]
- Using techniques designed or likely to cause physical pain by electric shock or any procedure involving pressure points or joint locks.
- Directed release of noxious, toxic, or unpleasant spray, mist, or substance near a student's face.
- Denying adequate sleep, air, food, water, shelter, bedding, physical comfort, supervision, or access to a restroom facility.
- Ridiculing or demeaning a student in a manner that adversely affects or endangers the learning or mental health of the student or constitutes verbal abuse.
- Employing a device, material, or object that immobilizes all four of a student's extremities, including prone or supine floor restraint.
- Impairing the student's breathing, including applying pressure to the student's torso or neck or placing something in, on, or over the student's mouth or nose or covering the student's face.
- Restricting the student's circulation.
- Securing the student to a stationary object while the student is standing or sitting.
- Inhibiting, reducing, or hindering the student's ability to communicate.
- Using chemical restraints.
- Using time-out in a manner that prevents the student from being able to be involved in and progress appropriately in the required curriculum or any applicable individualized education program (IEP) goals, including isolating the student by the use of physical barriers.

- Depriving the student of one or more of the student's senses, unless the technique does not cause the student discomfort or complies with the student's IEP or behavior intervention plan (BIP).

## **Notification**

The campus behavior coordinator shall promptly notify a student's parent by phone or in person of any violation that may result in in-school or out-of-school suspension, placement in a DAEP, placement in a JJAEP, or expulsion. The campus behavior coordinator shall also notify a student's parent if the student is taken into custody by a law enforcement officer under the disciplinary provisions of the Education Code. A good faith effort shall be made on the day the action was taken to provide to the student for delivery to the student's parent written notification of the disciplinary action. If the parent has not been reached by telephone or in person by 5:00 p.m. of the first business day after the day the disciplinary action was taken, the campus behavior coordinator shall send written notification by U.S. Mail. If the campus behavior coordinator is not able to provide notice to the parent, the principal or designee shall provide the notice.

Before the principal or appropriate administrator assigns a student under age 18 to detention outside regular school hours, notice shall be given to the student's parent to inform him or her of the reason for the detention and permit arrangements for necessary transportation.

## **Appeals**

Questions from parents regarding disciplinary measures should be addressed to the teacher, campus administration, or campus behavior coordinator, as appropriate. Appeals or complaints regarding the use of specific discipline management techniques should be addressed in accordance with policy FNG (LOCAL). A copy of the policy may be obtained from the principal's office, the campus behavior coordinator's office, the central administration office or online through the [Lake Travis ISD Board Policy Manual](#).

The district shall not delay a disciplinary consequence while a student or parent pursues a grievance. In the instance of a student who is accused of conduct that meets the definition of sexual harassment as defined by Title IX, the district will comply with applicable federal law, including the Title IX formal complaint process. See policies FFH (LEGAL) and (LOCAL).

## **REMOVAL FROM THE SCHOOL BUS OR DISTRICT TRANSPORTATION**

District rules and guidelines are applicable on all buses or vehicles owned, operated or controlled by the District. Bus safety and discipline issues are managed collaboratively with the Director of Transportation and the appropriate campus administrator and/or the campus behavior coordinator. The transportation department or campus administrator will employ discipline management techniques, as appropriate, which can include restricting or revoking a student's bus riding or other district transportation privileges, in accordance with law.

## **REMOVAL FROM THE REGULAR EDUCATION SETTING**

In addition to other discipline management techniques, misconduct may result in removal from the regular educational setting in the form of a routine referral or a formal removal.

### **Routine Referral**

A routine referral occurs when a teacher sends a student to the campus behavior coordinator's office as a discipline management technique. The campus behavior coordinator shall employ alternative discipline management techniques, including progressive interventions. A teacher or administrator may remove a student from class for a behavior that violates this Code to maintain effective discipline in the classroom.

### **Formal Removal**

A teacher **may** also initiate a formal removal from class if:

1. The student's behavior has been documented by the teacher as repeatedly interfering with the teacher's ability to teach his or her class or with the student's classmates' ability to learn; or
2. The behavior is so unruly, disruptive, or abusive that the teacher cannot teach, and the students in the classroom cannot learn.

Within three school days of the formal removal, the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator shall schedule a conference with the student's parent, the student, the teacher who removed the student from class, and any other appropriate administrator.

At the conference, the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator shall inform the student of the alleged misconduct and the proposed consequences. The student shall have an opportunity to respond to the allegations.

When a student is removed from the regular classroom by a teacher and a conference is pending, the campus behavior coordinator or other administrator may place the student in:

- Another appropriate classroom.
- In-school suspension.
- Out-of-school suspension.
- DAEP.

A teacher or administrator **must** remove a student from class if the student engages in behavior that under the Education Code requires or permits the student to be placed in a DAEP or expelled. When removing for those reasons, the procedures in the subsequent sections on DAEP or expulsion shall be followed.

## Returning Students to Class

When a student has been formally removed from class by a teacher for conduct against the teacher containing the elements of assault, aggravated assault, sexual assault, aggravated sexual assault, murder, capital murder, or criminal attempt to commit murder or capital murder, the student may not be returned to the teacher's class without the teacher's consent.

When a student has been formally removed by a teacher for any other conduct, the student may be returned to the teacher's class without the teacher's consent if the placement review committee determines that the teacher's class is the best or only alternative available.

## OUT-OF-SCHOOL SUSPENSION

### Misconduct

Students may be suspended for any behavior listed in the Code as a general conduct violation, DAEP offense, or expellable offense.

A student who is homeless shall not be placed in out-of-school suspension unless, while on school property or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property, the student engages in:

- Conduct that contains the elements of a weapons offense, as provided in Penal Code Section 46.02 or 46.05;
- Conduct that contains the elements of assault, sexual assault, aggravated assault, or aggravated sexual assault, as provided by the Penal Code; or
- Selling, giving, or delivering to another person or possessing, using, or being under the influence of any amount of marijuana, an alcoholic beverage, or a controlled substance or dangerous drug as defined by federal or state law.

### Process

State law allows a student to be suspended for **no more than three school days per behavior violation**, with no limit on the number of times a student may be suspended in a semester or school year.

Before being suspended a student shall have an informal conference with the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator, who shall advise the student of the alleged misconduct. The student shall have the opportunity respond to the allegation before the administrator makes a decision.

The campus behavior coordinator shall determine the number of days of a student's suspension, not to exceed three school days.

In deciding whether to order out-of-school suspension, the campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history,
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct,
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student status as homeless.

The appropriate administrator shall determine any restrictions on participation in school-sponsored or school-related extracurricular and co-curricular activities.

### **Coursework During Suspension**

The district shall ensure a student receives access to coursework for foundation curriculum courses while the student is placed in in-school or out-of-school suspension, including at least one method of receiving this coursework that doesn't require the use of the internet.

A student removed from the regular classroom to in-school suspension or another setting, other than a DAEP, will have an opportunity to complete before the beginning of the next school year each course the student was enrolled in at the time of removal from the regular classroom. The district may provide the opportunity by any method available, including a correspondence course, another distance learning option, or summer school. The district will not charge the student for any method of completion provided by the district.

### **DISCIPLINARY ALTERNATIVE EDUCATION PROGRAM (DAEP) PLACEMENT**

The DAEP shall be provided in a setting other than the student's regular classroom, unless the student meets certain exemption criteria as established in LTISD's District of Innovation Plan and accompanying regulations.

An elementary school student may not be placed in a DAEP with a student who is not an elementary school student. For purposes of DAEP, elementary classification shall be kindergarten–grade 5 and secondary classification shall be grades 6–12.

Summer school provided by the district may serve students assigned to a DAEP in conjunction with other students.

A student who is expelled for an offense that otherwise would have resulted in a DAEP placement does not have to be placed in a DAEP in addition to the expulsion.

In deciding whether to place a student in a DAEP, regardless of whether the action is mandatory or discretionary, the campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history,
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct,
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student's status as homeless.

### **Discretionary Placement: Misconduct That May Result in DAEP Placement**

A student **may** be placed in a DAEP for behaviors prohibited in the General Conduct Violations section of this Code.

#### **Misconduct Identified in State Law**

In accordance with state law, a student **MAY** be placed in a DAEP for any one of the following offenses:

- Engaging in bullying that encourages a student to commit or attempt to commit suicide.
- Inciting violence against a student through group bullying.
- Releasing or threatening to release intimate visual material of a minor or a student who is 18 years of age or older without the student's consent.
- Involvement in a public school fraternity, sorority, or secret society, including participating as a member or pledge, or soliciting another person to become a pledge or member of a public school fraternity, sorority, secret society, or gang. (See glossary.)
- Involvement in criminal street gang activity. (See glossary.)
- Criminal mischief, not punishable as a felony.
- Assault (no bodily injury) with threat of imminent bodily injury.
- Assault by offensive or provocative physical contact.

In accordance with state law, a student **may** be placed in a DAEP if the superintendent or the superintendent's designee has reasonable belief (see glossary) that the student has engaged in conduct punishable as a felony, other than aggravated robbery or those listed as offenses in Title 5 (see glossary) of the Penal Code, that occurs off school property and not at a school-sponsored or school-related event, if the student's presence in the regular classroom threatens the safety of other students or teachers or will be detrimental to the educational process.

The campus behavior coordinator **may**, but is not required to, place a student in a DAEP for off-campus conduct for which DAEP placement is required by state law if the administrator does not have knowledge of the conduct before the first anniversary of the date the conduct occurred.

## **Mandatory Placement: Misconduct That Requires DAEP Placement**

A student **must** be placed in a DAEP if the student:

- Engages in conduct relating to a false alarm or report (including a bomb threat) or a terroristic threat involving a public school. (See glossary.)
- Commits the following offenses on school property or within 300 feet of school property as measured from any point on the school’s real property boundary line, or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property:
  1. Engages in conduct punishable as a felony.
  2. Commits an assault (see glossary) under Penal Code 22.01(a)(1).
  3. Sells, gives, or delivers to another person, or possesses, uses, or is under the influence of marijuana, a controlled substance, or a dangerous drug in an amount not constituting a felony offense. A student with a valid prescription for low-THC cannabis as authorized by Chapter 487 of the Health and Safety Code does not violate this provision, as long as the student complies with district policies and procedures related to use of prescription medication on campus. (School-related felony drug offenses are addressed in the Expulsion section.) (See glossary for “under the influence.”)
  4. Sells, gives, or delivers to another person an alcoholic beverage; commits a serious act or offense while under the influence of alcohol; or possesses, uses, or is under the influence of alcohol, if the conduct is not punishable as a felony offense. (School-related felony alcohol offenses are addressed in the Expulsion section.)
  5. Behaves in a manner that contains the elements of an offense relating to abusable volatile chemicals. (Whether a student should be placed in DAEP or expelled will be determined on a case-by-case basis. See Expulsion section.)
  6. Behaves in a manner that contains the elements of the offense of public lewdness or indecent exposure.
  7. Engages in conduct that contains the elements of an offense of harassment against an employee under Penal Code 42.07(a)(1), (2), (3), or (7).
- Engages in expellable conduct and is between six and nine years of age.
- Commits a federal firearms violation and is younger than six years of age.
- Engages in conduct that contains the elements of the offense of retaliation against any school employee or volunteer on or off school property. (Committing retaliation in combination with another expellable offense is addressed in the Expulsion section of this Code.)
- Engages in conduct punishable as aggravated robbery or a felony listed under Title 5 (see glossary) of the Penal Code when the conduct occurs off school property and not at a school-sponsored or school-related event and:
  1. The student receives deferred prosecution (see glossary),

2. A court or jury finds that the student has engaged in delinquent conduct (see glossary), or
3. The superintendent or designee has a reasonable belief (see glossary) that the student engaged in the conduct.

## **Sexual Assault and Campus Assignments**

If a student has been convicted of continuous sexual abuse of a young child or disabled individual or convicted of or placed on deferred adjudication for sexual assault or aggravated sexual assault against another student on the same campus, and if the victim's parent or another person with the authority to act on behalf of the victim requests that the board transfer the offending student to another campus, the offending student shall be transferred to another campus in the district. If there is no other campus in the district serving the grade level of the offending student, the offending student shall be transferred to a DAEP.

## **Process**

Removals to a DAEP shall be made by the campus behavior coordinator.

## **Conference**

When a student is removed from class for a DAEP offense, the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator shall schedule a conference within three (3) school days with the student's parent, the student, and the teacher, in the case of a teacher removal. The student may not be returned to the regular classroom pending the conference.

At the conference, the campus behavior coordinator or appropriate administrator shall inform the student, orally or in writing, of the reasons for the removal and shall give the student an explanation of the basis for the removal and an opportunity to respond to the reasons for the removal.

Following valid attempts to require attendance, the district may hold the conference and make a placement decision regardless of whether the student or the student's parents attend the conference.

## **Consideration of Mitigating Factors**

In deciding whether to place a student in a DAEP, regardless of whether the action is mandatory or discretionary, the campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history,
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct,
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student's status as homeless.

### **Placement Order**

After the conference, if the student is placed in the DAEP, the campus behavior coordinator shall write a placement order. A copy of the DAEP placement order shall be sent to the student and the student's parent.

Not later than the second business day after the conference, the principal or designee shall deliver to the juvenile court a copy of the placement order and all information required by Section 52.04 of the Family Code.

If the student is placed in the DAEP and the length of placement is inconsistent with the guidelines included in this Code, the placement order shall give notice of the inconsistency.

### **Coursework Notice**

The parent or guardian of a student placed in DAEP shall be given written notice of the student's opportunity to complete a foundation curriculum course in which the student was enrolled at the time of removal and which is required for graduation, at no cost to the student. The notice shall include information regarding all methods available for completing the coursework.

### **Length of Placement**

The campus behavior coordinator shall determine the duration of a student's placement in a DAEP.

The duration of a student's placement shall be determined case-by-case basis based on the seriousness of the offense, the student's age and grade level, the frequency of misconduct, the student's attitude, and statutory requirements.

The maximum period of DAEP placement shall be one calendar year, except as provided below.

Unless otherwise specified in the placement order, days absent from a DAEP shall not count toward fulfilling the total number of days required in a student's DAEP placement order.

The district shall administer the required pre- and post-assessments for students assigned to DAEP for a period of 90 days or longer in accordance with established district administrative procedures for administering other diagnostic or benchmark assessments.

### **Exceeds One Year**

Placement in a DAEP may exceed one year when a review by the district determines that the student is a threat to the safety of other students or to district employees.

The statutory limitations on the length of a DAEP placement do not apply to a placement resulting from the board's decision to place a student who engaged in the sexual assault of another student so that the students are not assigned to the same campus.

### **Exceeds School Year**

Students who commit offenses requiring placement in a DAEP at the end of one school year may be required to continue that placement at the start of the next school year to complete the assigned term of placement.

For placement in a DAEP to extend beyond the end of the school year, the campus behavior coordinator or the board's designee must determine that:

- The student's presence in the regular classroom or campus presents a danger of physical harm to the student or others, or
- The student has engaged in serious or persistent misbehavior (see glossary) that violates the district's Code.

### **Exceeds 60 Days**

For placement in a DAEP to extend beyond 60 days or the end of the next grading period, whichever is sooner, a student's parent shall be given notice and the opportunity to participate in a proceeding before the board or the board's designee.

## **Appeals**

Questions from parents regarding disciplinary measures should be addressed to the campus administration.

Student or parent appeals regarding a student's placement in a DAEP should be addressed in accordance with policy FNG (LOCAL). A copy of this policy may be obtained from the principal's office, the campus behavior coordinator's office, or the central administration office or online through the [Lake Travis ISD Board Policy Manual](#).

Appeals should begin at Level One with the campus principal.

The district shall not delay disciplinary consequences pending the outcome of an appeal. The decision to place a student in a DAEP cannot be appealed beyond the board.

## **Restrictions During Placement**

The district does not permit a student who is placed in DAEP to participate in any school-sponsored or school-related extracurricular or co-curricular activity, including seeking or holding honorary positions and/or membership in school-sponsored clubs and organizations.

The district will provide transportation to students in a DAEP. However, a student may be removed from the bus due to misbehavior and may be responsible for his/her transportation to DAEP.

For seniors who are eligible to graduate and are assigned to a DAEP at the time of graduation, the last day of placement in the program will be the last instructional day, and the student may be allowed to participate in the graduation ceremony and related graduation activities unless

otherwise specified in the DAEP placement order.

## **Placement Review**

A student placed in a DAEP shall be provided a review of his or her status, including academic status, by the campus behavior coordinator or the board's designee at intervals not to exceed 120 days. In the case of a high school student, the student's progress toward graduation and the student's graduation plan shall also be reviewed. At the review, the student or the student's parent shall be given the opportunity to present arguments for the student's return to the regular classroom or campus. The student may not be returned to the classroom of a teacher who removed the student without that teacher's consent.

## **Additional Misconduct**

If during the term of placement in a DAEP the student engages in additional misconduct for which placement in a DAEP or expulsion is required or permitted, additional proceedings may be conducted, and the campus behavior coordinator may enter an additional disciplinary order as a result of those proceedings.

## **Notice of Criminal Proceedings**

When a student is placed in a DAEP for certain offenses, the office of the prosecuting attorney shall notify the district if:

1. Prosecution of a student's case was refused for lack of prosecutorial merit or insufficient evidence and no formal proceedings, deferred adjudication (see glossary), or deferred prosecution will be initiated; or
2. The court or jury found a student not guilty, or made a finding that the student did not engage in delinquent conduct or conduct indicating a need for supervision, and the case was dismissed with prejudice.

If a student was placed in a DAEP for such conduct, on receiving the notice from the prosecutor, the superintendent or designee shall review the student's placement and schedule a review with the student's parent not later than the third day after the superintendent or designee receives notice from the prosecutor. The student may not be returned to the regular classroom pending the review.

After reviewing the notice and receiving information from the student's parent, the superintendent or designee may continue the student's placement if there is reason to believe that the presence of the student in the regular classroom threatens the safety of other students or teachers.

The student or the student's parent may appeal the superintendent's decision to the board. The student may not be returned to the regular classroom pending the appeal. In the case of an appeal, the board shall, at the next scheduled meeting, review the notice from the prosecutor and receive information from the student, the student's parent, and the superintendent or designee, and confirm or reverse the decision of the superintendent or designee. The board shall make a record of the proceedings.

If the board confirms the decision of the superintendent or designee, the student and the student's parent may appeal to the Commissioner of Education. The student may not be returned to the regular classroom pending the appeal.

### **Withdrawal During Process**

When a student violates the district's Code in a way that requires or permits the student to be placed in a DAEP and the student withdraws from the district before a placement order is completed, the campus behavior coordinator may complete the proceedings and issue a placement order. If the student then re-enrolls in the district during the same or a subsequent school year, the district may enforce the order at that time, less any period of the placement that has been served by the student during enrollment in another district. If the campus behavior coordinator or the board fails to issue a placement order after the student withdraws, the next district in which the student enrolls may complete the proceedings and issue a placement order.

### **Newly Enrolled Students**

The district shall continue the DAEP placement of a student who enrolls in the district and was assigned to a DAEP in an open-enrollment charter school or another district.

A newly enrolled student with a DAEP placement from a district in another state will be placed as any other newly enrolled student if the behavior committed is a reason for DAEP placement in the receiving district.

If the student was placed in a DAEP by a school district in another state for a period that exceeds one year, this district, by state law, shall reduce the period of the placement so that the total placement does not exceed one year. After a review, however, the placement may be extended beyond a year if the district determines that the student is a threat to the safety of other students or employees or the extended placement is in the best interest of the student.

### **Emergency Placement Procedures**

When an emergency placement is necessary because the student's behavior is so unruly, disruptive, or abusive that it seriously interferes with classroom or school operations, the student shall be given oral notice of the reason for the action. Not later than the tenth day after the date of the placement, the student shall be given the appropriate conference required for assignment to a DAEP.

### **Transition Services**

In accordance with law and district procedures, campus staff shall provide transition services to a student returning to the regular classroom from an alternative education program, including a DAEP. See policy FOCA (LEGAL) for more information.

## **PLACEMENT AND EXPULSION FOR CERTAIN OFFENSES**

This section includes two categories of offenses for which the Education Code provides unique procedures and specific consequences.

## **Registered Sex Offenders**

Upon receiving notification in accordance with state law that a student is currently required to register as a sex offender, the district must remove the student from the regular classroom and determine appropriate placement unless the court orders JJAEP placement.

If the student is under any form of court supervision, including probation, community supervision, or parole, the placement shall be in either DAEP or JJAEP for at least one semester.

If the student is not under any form of court supervision, the placement may be in DAEP or JJAEP for one semester or the placement may be in a regular classroom. The placement may not be in the regular classroom if the board or its designee determines that the student's presence:

- Threatens the safety of other students or teachers,
- Will be detrimental to the educational process, or
- Is not in the best interests of the district's students.

### **Review Committee (for Registered Sex Offenders)**

At the end of the first semester of a student's placement in an alternative educational setting and before the beginning of each school year for which the student remains in an alternative placement, the district shall convene a committee, in accordance with state law, to review the student's placement. The committee shall recommend whether the student should return to the regular classroom or remain in the placement. Absent a special finding, the board or its designee must follow the committee's recommendation.

The placement review of a student with a disability who receives special education services must be made by the ARD committee.

### **Newly Enrolled Students**

If a student enrolls in the district during a mandatory placement as a registered sex offender, the district may count any time already spent by the student in a placement or may require an additional semester in an alternative placement without conducting a review of the placement.

### **Appeal of Placement for Registered Sex Offenders**

A student or the student's parent may appeal the placement by requesting a conference between the board or its designee, the student, and the student's parent. The conference is limited to the factual question of whether the student is required to register as a sex offender. Any decision of the board or its designee under this section is final and may not be appealed.

## **Certain Felonies**

Regardless of whether placement or expulsion is required or permitted by one of the reasons in the DAEP Placement or Expulsion sections, in accordance with Education Code 37.0081, a student **may** be expelled and placed in either DAEP or JJAEP if the board or campus behavior coordinator makes certain findings and the following circumstances exist in relation to aggravated robbery or a felony offense under Title 5 (see glossary) of the Penal Code.

The student must:

- Have received deferred prosecution for conduct defined as aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense;
- Have been found by a court or jury to have engaged in delinquent conduct for conduct defined as aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense;
- Have been charged with engaging in conduct defined as aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense;
- Have been referred to a juvenile court for allegedly engaging in delinquent conduct for conduct defined as aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense; or
- Have received probation or deferred adjudication or have been arrested for, charged with, or convicted of aggravated robbery or a Title 5 felony offense.

The district **may** expel the student and order placement under these circumstances regardless of:

- The date on which the student's conduct occurred,
- The location at which the conduct occurred,
- Whether the conduct occurred while the student was enrolled in the district, or
- Whether the student has successfully completed any court disposition requirements imposed in connection with the conduct.

### **Hearing and Required Findings**

The student must first have a hearing before the board or its designee, who must determine that in addition to the circumstances above that allow for the expulsion, the student's presence in the regular classroom:

- Threatens the safety of other students or teachers,
- Will be detrimental to the educational process, or
- Is not in the best interest of the district's students.

Any decision of the board or the board's designee under this section is final and may not be appealed.

### **Length of Placement**

The student is subject to the placement until:

- The student graduates from high school,
- The charges are dismissed or reduced to a misdemeanor offense, or
- The student completes the term of the placement or is assigned to another program.

### **Placement Review**

A student placed in a DAEP or JJAEP under these circumstances is entitled to a review of his or her status, including academic status, by the campus behavior coordinator or board's designee at

intervals not to exceed 120 days. In the case of a high school student, the student's progress toward graduation and the student's graduation plan shall also be reviewed. At the review, the student or the student's parent shall have the opportunity to present arguments for the student's return to the regular classroom or campus.

### **Newly Enrolled Students**

A student who enrolls in the district before completing a placement under this section from another school district must complete the term of the placement.

## **EXPULSION**

In deciding whether to order expulsion, regardless of whether the action is mandatory or discretionary, the campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history,
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct,
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student's status as homeless.

An expelled student may be enrolled in the Travis County Juvenile Justice Alternative Education Program (JJAEP).

### **Discretionary Expulsion: Misconduct That May Result in Expulsion**

Some of the following types of misconduct may result in mandatory placement in a DAEP, whether or not a student is expelled. (See DAEP Placement)

#### **Any Location**

A student **may** be expelled for:

- Engaging in bullying that encourages a student to commit or attempt to commit suicide.
- Inciting violence against a student through group bullying.
- Releasing or threatening to release intimate visual material of a minor or a student who is 18 years of age or older without the student's consent.
- Conduct that contains the elements of assault under Penal Code 22.01(a)(1) in retaliation against a school employee or volunteer.
- Criminal mischief, if punishable as a felony.
- Engaging in conduct that contains the elements of one of the following offenses against another student:

- Aggravated assault.
- Sexual assault.
- Aggravated sexual assault.
- Murder.
- Capital murder.
- Criminal attempt to commit murder or capital murder.
- Aggravated robbery.
- Breach of computer security. (See glossary)
- Engaging in conduct relating to a false alarm or report (including a bomb threat) or a terroristic threat involving a public school.

### **At School, Within 300 Feet, or at a School Event**

A student **may** be expelled for committing any of the following offenses on or within 300 feet of school property, as measured from any point on the school’s real property boundary line, or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property:

- Selling, giving, or delivering to another person, or possessing, using, or being under the influence of marijuana, a controlled substance, or a dangerous drug, if the conduct is not punishable as a felony. A student with a valid prescription for low-THC cannabis as authorized by Chapter 487 of the Health and Safety Code does not violate this provision, as long as the student complies with district policies and procedures related to use of prescription medication on campus. (See glossary for “under the influence.”)
- Selling, giving, or delivering to another person, or possessing, using, or being under the influence of alcohol; or committing a serious act or offense while under the influence of alcohol, if the conduct is not punishable as a felony.
- Engaging in conduct that contains the elements of an offense relating to abusable volatile chemicals.
- Engaging in conduct that contains the elements of assault under Section 22.01(a)(1) against an employee or a volunteer.
- Engaging in deadly conduct. (See glossary.)

### **Within 300 Feet of School**

A student **may** be expelled for engaging in the following conduct while within 300 feet of school property, as measured from any point on the school’s real property boundary line:

- Aggravated assault, sexual assault, or aggravated sexual assault.
- Arson. (See glossary.)
- Murder, capital murder, or criminal attempt to commit murder or capital murder.
- Indecency with a child, aggravated kidnapping, manslaughter, criminally negligent homicide, or aggravated robbery.

- Continuous sexual abuse of a young child or disabled individual.
- Felony drug- or alcohol-related offense.
- Unlawful carrying on or about the student’s person a handgun, or a location-restricted knife, as these terms are defined by state law. (See glossary.)
- Possessing, manufacturing, transporting, repairing, or selling a prohibited weapon, as defined by state law. (See glossary.)
- Possession of a firearm, as defined by federal law. (See glossary.)

### **Property of Another District**

A student **may** be expelled for committing any offense that is a state-mandated expellable offense if the offense is committed on the property of another district in Texas or while the student is attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity of a school in another district in Texas.

### **Misconduct While in DAEP**

A student **may** be expelled for engaging in documented serious misbehavior (see glossary) that violates the district’s Code, despite documented behavioral interventions while placed in a DAEP. For purposes of discretionary expulsion from a DAEP, serious misbehavior means:

- Deliberate violent behavior that poses a direct threat to the health or safety of others;
- Extortion, meaning the gaining of money or other property by force or threat;
- Conduct that constitutes coercion, as defined by Section 1.07, Penal Code; or
- Conduct that constitutes the offense of:
  1. Public lewdness under Penal Code 21.07;
  2. Indecent exposure under Penal Code 21.08;
  3. Criminal mischief under Penal Code 28.03;
  4. Personal hazing under Penal Code 37.152; or
  5. Harassment under Penal Code 42.07(a)(1), of a student or district employee.

### **Mandatory Expulsion: Misconduct That Requires Expulsion**

A student **must** be expelled under federal or state law for any of the following offenses that occur on school property or while attending a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property:

#### **Under Federal Law**

- Bringing to school or possessing at school, including any setting that is under the district’s control or supervision for the purpose of a school activity, a firearm, as defined by federal law. (See glossary.)

**Note:** Mandatory expulsion under the federal Gun Free Schools Act does not apply to a firearm that is lawfully stored inside a locked vehicle, or to firearms used in activities approved and

authorized by the district when the district has adopted appropriate safeguards to ensure student safety.

### **Under the Penal Code**

- Unlawful carrying on or about the student's person the following, in a matter prohibited by Penal Code 46.02:
  1. A handgun, defined by state law as any firearm designed, made, or adapted to be used with one hand. (See glossary.) Note: A student may not be expelled solely on the basis of the student's use, exhibition, or possession of a firearm that occurs at an approved target range facility that is not located on a school campus, while participating in or preparing for a school-sponsored, shooting sports competition or a shooting sports educational activity that is sponsored or supported by the Parks and Wildlife Department, or a shooting sports sanctioning organization working with the department. [See policy FNCG (LEGAL).]
  2. A location-restricted knife, as defined by state law. (See glossary.)
- Possessing, manufacturing, transporting, repairing, or selling a prohibited weapon, as defined in state law. (See glossary.)
- Behaving in a manner that contains elements of the following offenses under the Texas Penal Code:
  1. Aggravated assault, sexual assault, or aggravated sexual assault.
  2. Arson. (See glossary.)
  3. Murder, capital murder, or criminal attempt to commit murder or capital murder.
  4. Indecency with a child.
  5. Aggravated kidnapping.
  6. Aggravated robbery.
  7. Manslaughter.
  8. Criminally negligent homicide.
  9. Continuous sexual abuse of a young child or disabled individual.
  10. Behavior punishable as a felony that involves selling, giving, or delivering to another person, or possessing, using, or being under the influence of marijuana, a controlled substance, a dangerous drug, or alcohol; or committing a serious act or offense while under the influence of alcohol.
- Engaging in retaliation against a school employee or volunteer combined with one of the above-listed mandatory expulsion offenses.

### **Under Age Ten**

When a student under the age of ten engages in behavior that is expellable behavior, the student shall not be expelled, but shall be placed in a DAEP. A student under age six shall not be placed in a DAEP unless the student commits a federal firearm offense.

## **Process**

If a student is believed to have committed an expellable offense, the campus behavior coordinator or other appropriate administrator shall schedule a hearing within a reasonable time. The student's parent shall be invited in writing to attend the hearing.

Until a hearing can be held, the campus behavior coordinator or other administrator may place the student in:

- Another appropriate classroom.
- In-school suspension.
- Out-of-school suspension.
- DAEP.

## **Hearing**

A student facing expulsion shall be given a hearing with appropriate due process. The student is entitled to:

- Representation by the student's parent or another adult who can provide guidance to the student and who is not an employee of the district,
- An opportunity to testify and to present evidence and witnesses in the student's defense, and
- An opportunity to question the witnesses called by the district at the hearing.

After providing notice to the student and parent of the hearing, the district may hold the hearing regardless of whether the student or the student's parent attends.

The board of trustees delegates to the Superintendent or his/her designee the authority to conduct hearings and expel students.

## **Board Review of Expulsion**

After the due process hearing, the expelled student may request that the board review the expulsion decisions. The student or parent must submit a written request to the Superintendent within seven (7) days after receipt of the written decision. The Superintendent must provide the student or parent written notice of the date, time, and place of the meeting at which the board will review the decision.

The board shall review the record of the expulsion hearing in a closed meeting unless the parent requests in writing that the matter be held in an open meeting. The board may also hear a statement from the student or parent and from the board's designee.

The board shall hear statements made by the parties at the review and shall base its decision on evidence reflected in the record and any statements made by the parties at the review. The board shall make and communicate its decision orally at the conclusion of the presentation. Consequences shall not be deferred pending the outcome of the hearing.

## **Expulsion Order**

Before ordering the expulsion, the board or campus behavior coordinator shall take into consideration:

1. Self-defense (see glossary),
2. Intent or lack of intent at the time the student engaged in the conduct,
3. The student's disciplinary history, and
4. A disability that substantially impairs the student's capacity to appreciate the wrongfulness of the student's conduct.
5. A student's status in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services (foster care), or
6. A student's status as homeless.

If the student is expelled, the board or its designee shall deliver to the student and the student's parent a copy of the order expelling the student.

Not later than the second business day after the hearing, the principal or designee shall deliver to the juvenile court a copy of the expulsion order and the information required by Section 52.04 of the Family Code.

If the length of the expulsion is inconsistent with the guidelines included in the Student Code of Conduct, the expulsion order shall give notice of the inconsistency.

## **Length of Expulsion**

The length of an expulsion shall be based on the seriousness of the offense, the student's age and grade level, the frequency of misbehavior, the student's attitude, and statutory requirements.

The duration of a student's expulsion shall be determined on a case-by-case basis. The maximum period of expulsion is one calendar year, except as provided below.

An expulsion may not exceed one year unless, after review, the district determines that:

- The student is a threat to the safety of other students or to district employees, or
- Extended expulsion is in the best interest of the student.

State and federal law require a student to be expelled from the regular classroom for a period of at least one calendar year for bringing a firearm, as defined by federal law, to school. However, the Superintendent may modify the length of the expulsion on a case-by-case basis.

Students who commit offenses that require expulsion at the end of one school year may be expelled into the next school year to complete the term of expulsion.

## **Withdrawal During Process**

When a student has violated the district's Code in a way that requires or permits expulsion from the district and the student withdraws from the district before the expulsion hearing takes place, the district may conduct the hearing after sending written notice to the parent and student.

If the student then re-enrolls in the district during the same or subsequent school year, the district may enforce the expulsion order at that time, less any expulsion period that has been served by the student during enrollment in another district.

If the campus behavior coordinator or the board fails to issue an expulsion order after the student withdraws, the next district in which the student enrolls may complete the proceedings.

## **Additional Misconduct While Expelled**

If during the expulsion, the student engages in additional conduct for which placement in a DAEP or expulsion is required or permitted, additional proceedings may be conducted, and the campus behavior coordinator or the board may issue an additional disciplinary order as a result of those proceedings.

## **Restrictions During Expulsion**

Expelled students are prohibited from being on school grounds or attending school-sponsored or school-related activities during the period of expulsion.

No district academic credit shall be earned for work missed during the period of expulsion unless the student is enrolled in a JJAEP or another district-approved program.

## **Newly Enrolled Students**

The district shall continue the expulsion of any newly enrolled student expelled from another district or an open-enrollment charter school until the period of the expulsion is completed.

If a student expelled in another state enrolls in the district, the district may continue the expulsion under the terms of the expulsion order, may place the student in a DAEP for the period specified in the order, or may allow the student to attend regular classes if:

- The out-of-state district provides the district with a copy of the expulsion order, and
- The offense resulting in the expulsion is also an expellable offense in the district in which the student is enrolling.

If a student is expelled by a district in another state for a period that exceeds one year and the district continues the expulsion or places the student in a DAEP, the district shall reduce the period of the expulsion or DAEP placement so that the entire period does not exceed one year, unless after a review it is determined that:

- The student is a threat to the safety of other students or district employees, or
- Extended placement is in the best interest of the student.

## **Emergency Expulsion Procedures**

When an emergency expulsion is necessary to protect persons or property from imminent harm, the student shall be given verbal notice of the reason for the action. Within ten days after the date of the emergency expulsion, the student shall be given appropriate due process required for a student facing expulsion.

## **DAEP Placement of Expelled Students**

The district may provide educational services to any expelled student in a DAEP; however, educational services in the DAEP must be provided if the student is less than ten years of age.

## **Transition Services**

In accordance with law and district procedures, campus staff shall provide transition services to a student returning to the regular classroom from an alternative education program, including a DAEP. See policy FOCA (LEGAL) for more information.

## **GLOSSARY**

This glossary provides legal definitions and locally established definitions and is intended to assist in understanding terms related to the Student Code of Conduct.

**Abuse** is improper or excessive use.

**Aggravated robbery** is defined in part by Penal Code 29.03(a) as when a person commits robbery and:

1. Causes serious bodily injury to another;
2. Uses or exhibits a deadly weapon; or
3. Causes bodily injury to another person or threatens or places another person in fear of imminent bodily injury or death, if the other person is:
  - a. 65 years of age or older, or
  - b. A disabled person.

**Armor-piercing ammunition** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as handgun ammunition used in pistols and revolvers and designed primarily for the purpose of penetrating metal or body armor.

**Arson** is defined in part by Penal Code 28.02 as:

1. A crime that involves starting a fire or causing an explosion with intent to destroy or damage:
  - a. Any vegetation, fence, or structure on open-space land; or
  - b. Any building, habitation, or vehicle:
    - 1) Knowing that it is within the limits of an incorporated city or town,
    - 2) Knowing that it is insured against damage or destruction,
    - 3) Knowing that it is subject to a mortgage or other security interest,
    - 4) Knowing that it is located on property belonging to another,
    - 5) Knowing that it has located within it property belonging to another, or
    - 6) When the person starting the fire is reckless about whether the burning or explosion will endanger the life of some individual or the safety of the property of another.
2. A crime that involves recklessly starting a fire or causing an explosion while manufacturing or attempting to manufacture a controlled substance and the fire or explosion damages any building, habitation, or vehicle; or
3. A crime that involves intentionally starting a fire or causing an explosion and in so doing:
  - a. Recklessly damages or destroys a building belonging to another, or
  - b. Recklessly causes another person to suffer bodily injury or death.

**Assault** is defined in part by Penal Code §22.01(a)(1) as intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly causing bodily injury to another; §22.01(a)(2) as intentionally or knowingly threatening another

with imminent bodily injury; and §22.01(a)(3) as intentionally or knowingly causing physical contact with another that can reasonably be regarded as offensive or provocative.

**Breach of Computer Security** includes knowingly accessing a computer, computer network, or computer system without the effective consent of the owner as defined in Penal Code 33.02, if the conduct involves accessing a computer, computer network, or computer system owned by or operated on behalf of a school district; and the student knowingly alters, damages, or deletes school district property or information; or commits a breach of any other computer, computer network, or computer system.

**Bullying** is defined in Section 37.0832 of the Education Code as a single significant act or a pattern of acts by one or more students directed at another student that exploits an imbalance of power and involves engaging in written or verbal expression, expression through electronic means, or physical conduct that:

1. Has the effect or will have the effect of physically harming a student, damaging a student's property, or placing a student in reasonable fear of harm to the student's person or of damage to the student's property;
2. Is sufficiently severe, persistent, or pervasive enough that the action or threat creates an intimidating, threatening, or abusive educational environment for a student;
3. Materially and substantially disrupts the educational process or the orderly operation of a classroom or school; or
4. Infringes on the rights of the victim at school.

Bullying includes cyberbullying. (See below) This state law on bullying prevention applies to:

1. Bullying that occurs on or is delivered to school property or to the site of a school-sponsored or school-related activity on or off school property;
2. Bullying that occurs on a publicly or privately owned school bus or vehicle being used for transportation of students to or from school or a school-sponsored or school-related activity; and
3. Cyberbullying that occurs off school property or outside of a school-sponsored or school-related activity if the cyberbullying interferes with a student's educational opportunities or substantially disrupts the orderly operation of a classroom, school, or school-sponsored or school-related activity.

**Chemical dispensing device** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a device designed, made, or adapted for the purpose of dispensing a substance capable of causing an adverse psychological or physiological effect on a human being. A small chemical dispenser sold commercially for personal protection is not in this category.

**Club** is defined by Texas Penal Code 46.01 as an instrument specially designed, made, or adapted for the purpose of inflicting serious bodily injury or death. A blackjack, nightstick, mace, and tomahawk are in the same category.

**Controlled substance** means a substance, including a drug, an adulterant, and a dilutant, listed in Schedules I through V or Penalty Group 1, 1-A, 1-B, 2, 2-A, 3, or 4 of the Texas Controlled Substances Act. The term includes the aggregate weight of any mixture, solution, or other substance containing a controlled substance. The term does not include hemp, as defined by

Agriculture Code 121.001, or the tetrahydrocannabinols (THC) in hemp.

**Criminal street gang** is defined by Penal Code 71.01 as three or more persons having a common identifying sign or symbol or an identifiable leadership who continuously or regularly associate in the commission of criminal activities.

**Cyberbullying** is defined by Section 37.0832 of the Education Code as bullying that is done through the use of any electronic communication device, including through the use of a cellular or other type of telephone, a computer, a camera, electronic mail, instant messaging, text messaging, a social media application, an Internet website, or any other Internet-based communication tool.

**Dangerous drug** is defined by Health and Safety Code 483.001 as a device or a drug that is unsafe for self-medication and that is not included in Schedules I through V or Penalty Groups 1 through 4 of the Texas Controlled Substances Act. The term includes a device or drug that federal law prohibits dispensing without prescription or restricts to use by or on the order of a licensed veterinarian.

**Dating violence** occurs when a person in a current or past dating relationship uses physical, sexual, verbal, or emotional abuse to harm, threaten, intimidate, or control another person in the relationship. Dating violence also occurs when a person commits these acts against a person in a marriage or dating relationship with the individual who is or was once in a marriage or dating relationship with the person committing the offense, as defined by Section 71.0021 of the Family Code.

**Deadly conduct** under Penal Code 22.05 occurs when a person recklessly engages in conduct that places another in imminent danger of serious bodily injury, such as knowingly discharging a firearm in the direction of an individual, habitation, building, or vehicle.

**Deferred adjudication** is an alternative to seeking a conviction in court that may be offered to a juvenile for delinquent conduct or conduct indicating a need for supervision.

**Deferred prosecution** may be offered to a juvenile as an alternative to seeking a conviction in court for delinquent conduct or conduct indicating a need for supervision.

**Delinquent conduct** is conduct that violates either state or federal law and is punishable by imprisonment or confinement in jail. It includes conduct that violates certain juvenile court orders, including probation orders, but does not include violations of traffic laws.

**Discretionary** means that something is left to or regulated by a local decision maker.

**E-cigarette** means an electronic cigarette or any other device that simulates smoking by using a mechanical heating element, battery, or electronic circuit to deliver nicotine or other substances to the individual inhaling from the device or a consumable liquid solution or other material aerosolized or vaporized during the use of an electronic cigarette or other device described by this provision. The term includes any device that is manufactured, distributed, or sold as an e-cigarette, e-cigar, or e-pipe or under another product name or description and a component, part, or accessory for the device, regardless of whether the component, part, or accessory is sold separately from the device.

**Explosive weapon** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as any explosive or incendiary bomb, grenade, rocket, or mine and its delivery mechanism that is designed, made, or adapted for the purpose of

inflicting serious bodily injury, death, or substantial property damage, or for the principal purpose of causing such a loud report as to cause undue public alarm or terror.

**False alarm or report** under Penal Code 42.06 occurs when a person knowingly initiates, communicates, or circulates a report of a present, past, or future bombing, fire, offense, or other emergency that he or she knows is false or baseless and that would ordinarily:

1. Cause action by an official or volunteer agency organized to deal with emergencies;
2. Place a person in fear of imminent serious bodily injury; or
3. Prevent or interrupt the occupation of a building, room, or place of assembly.

**Firearm** is defined by federal law (18 U.S.C. § 921(a)) as:

1. Any weapon (including a starter gun) that will, is designed to, or may readily be converted to expel a projectile by the action of an explosive;
2. The frame or receiver of any such weapon;
3. Any firearm muffler or firearm weapon; or
4. Any destructive device, such as any explosive, incendiary or poison gas bomb, or grenade.

Such term does not include an antique firearm.

**Graffiti** includes markings with paint, an indelible pen or marker, or an etching or engraving device on tangible property without the effective consent of the owner. The markings may include inscriptions, slogans, drawings, or paintings.

**Handgun** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as any firearm that is designed, made, or adapted to be fired with one hand.

**Harassment** includes:

1. Conduct that meets the definition established in district policies DIA (LOCAL) and FFH (LOCAL);
2. Conduct that threatens to cause harm or bodily injury to another person, including a district student, employee, board member, or volunteer; is sexually intimidating; causes physical damage to the property of another student; subjects another student to physical confinement or restraint; or maliciously and substantially harms another student's physical or emotional health or safety, as defined in Section 37.001(b)(2) of the Education Code; or
3. Conduct that is punishable as a crime under Penal Code 42.07, including the following types of conduct if carried out with the intent to harass, annoy, alarm, abuse, torment, or embarrass another:
  1. Initiating communication and, in the course of the communication, making a comment, request, suggestion, or proposal that is obscene, as defined by law;
  2. Threatening, in a manner reasonably likely to alarm the person receiving the threat, to inflict bodily injury on the person or to commit a felony against the person, a member of the person's family or household, or the person's property;
  3. Conveying, in a manner reasonably likely to alarm the person receiving the report, a false report, which is known by the conveyor to be false, that another

person has suffered death or serious bodily injury;

4. Sending repeated electronic communications in a manner reasonably likely to harass, annoy, alarm, abuse, torment, embarrass, or offend another; and
5. Publishing on an internet website, including a social media platform, repeated electronic communications in a manner reasonably likely to cause emotional distress, abuse, or torment to another person, unless the communications are made in connection with a matter of public concern, as defined by law.

**Hazing** is defined by Section 37.151 of the Education Code as an intentional, knowing, or reckless act, on or off campus, by one person alone or acting with others directed against a student for the purpose of pledging, initiation into, affiliation with, holding office in, or maintaining membership in a student organization if the act meets the elements in the Education Code 37.151, including:

1. Any type of physical brutality;
2. An activity that subjects the student to an unreasonable risk of harm or that adversely affects the student's mental or physical harm, such as sleep deprivation, exposure to the elements, confinements to small spaces, calisthenics, or consumption of food, liquids, drugs, or other substances;
3. An activity that induces, causes, or requires the student to perform a duty or task that violates the Penal Code; and
4. Coercing a student to consume a drug or alcoholic beverage in an amount that would lead a reasonable person to believe the student is intoxicated.

**Hit list** is defined in Section 37.001(b)(3) of the Education Code as a list of people targeted to be harmed, using a firearm, a knife, or any other object to be used with intent to cause bodily harm.

**Improvised explosive device** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a completed and operational bomb designed to cause serious bodily injury, death, or substantial property damage that is fabricated in an improvised manner using nonmilitary components.

**Indecent exposure** is defined by Penal Code 21.08 as an offense that occurs when a person exposes the person's anus or any part of the person's genitals with intent to arouse or gratify the sexual desire of any person, and is reckless about whether another is present who will be offended or alarmed by the act.

**Intimate visual material** is defined by Civil Practices and Remedies Code 98B.001 and Texas Penal Code 21.16 as visual material that depicts a person with the person's intimate parts exposed or engaged in sexual conduct. "Visual material" means any film, photograph, video tape, negative, or slide of any photographic reproduction or any other physical medium that allows an image to be displayed on a computer or other video screen and any image transmitted to a computer or other video screen.

**Location-restricted knife** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a knife with a blade over five and one-half inches.

**Knuckles** means any instrument consisting of finger rings or guards made of a hard substance and designed or adapted for inflicting serious bodily injury or death by striking a person with a fist

enclosed in the knuckles.

**Machine gun** as defined by Penal Code 46.01 is any firearm that is capable of shooting more than two shots automatically, without manual reloading, by a single function of the trigger.

**Mandatory** means that something is obligatory or required because of an authority.

**Paraphernalia** are devices that can be used for inhaling, ingesting, injecting, or otherwise introducing a controlled substance into a human body.

**Possession** means to have an item on one's person or in one's personal property, including, but not limited to, clothing, purse, or backpack; a private vehicle used for transportation to or from school or school-related activities, including, but not limited, to an automobile, truck, motorcycle, or bicycle; telecommunications or electronic devices; or any school property used by the student, including, but not limited to, a locker or desk.

**Prohibited weapon** under Penal Code 46.05(a) means:

1. The following items unless registered with the U.S. Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms, and Explosives or otherwise not subject to that registration requirement or unless the item is classified as a curio or relic by the U.S. Department of Justice:
  - a. An explosive weapon;
  - b. A machine gun;
  - c. A short-barrel firearm;
2. Armor-piercing ammunition;
3. A chemical dispensing device;
4. A zip gun;
5. A tire deflation device; or
6. An improvised explosive device.

**Public Lewdness** is defined by Penal Code 21.07 as an offense that occurs when a person knowingly engages in an act of sexual intercourse, deviate sexual intercourse, or sexual contact in a public place or, if not in a public place, is reckless about whether another is present who will be offended or alarmed by the act.

**Public school fraternity, sorority, secret society, or gang** means an organization composed wholly or in part of students that seeks to perpetuate itself by taking additional members from the students enrolled in school based on a decision of its membership rather than on the free choice of a qualified student. Educational organizations listed in Section 37.121(d) of the Education Code are excepted from this definition.

**Reasonable belief** is that which an ordinary person of average intelligence and sound mind would believe. Chapter 37 requires certain disciplinary decisions when the superintendent or designee has a reasonable belief that a student engaged in conduct punishable as a felony offense. In forming such a reasonable belief, the superintendent or designee may use all available information, including the notice of a student's arrest under Article 15.27 of the Code of Criminal Procedure.

**Self-defense** is the use of force against another to the degree a person reasonably believes the force is immediately necessary to protect himself or herself.

**Serious misbehavior** means:

1. Deliberate violent behavior that poses a direct threat to the health or safety of others;
2. Extortion, meaning the gaining of money or other property by force or threat;
3. Conduct that constitutes coercion, as defined by Section 1.07, Texas Penal Code; or
4. Conduct that constitutes the offense of:
  - a. Public lewdness under Section 21.07, Texas Penal Code;
  - b. Indecent exposure under Section 21.08; Texas Penal Code;
  - c. Criminal mischief under Section 28.03, Texas Penal Code;
  - d. Personal hazing under Section 37.152, Education Code; or
  - e. Harassment under Section 42.07(a)(1), Texas Penal Code, of a student or district employee.

**Serious or persistent misbehavior** includes, but is not limited to:

1. Behavior that is grounds for permissible expulsion or mandatory DAEP placement.
2. Behavior identified by the district as grounds for discretionary DAEP placement.
3. Actions or demonstrations that substantially disrupt or materially interfere with school activities.
4. Refusal to attempt or complete schoolwork as assigned.
5. Insubordination.
6. Profanity, vulgar language, or obscene gestures.
7. Leaving school grounds without permission.
8. Falsification of records, passes, or other school-related documents.
9. Refusal to accept discipline assigned by the teacher or principal.

**Short-barrel firearm** defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a rifle with a barrel length of less than 16 inches or a shotgun with a barrel length of less than 18 inches, or any weapon made from a rifle or shotgun that, as altered, has an overall length of less than 26 inches.

**Terroristic threat** is defined by Penal Code 22.07 as a threat of violence to any person or property with intent to:

1. Cause a reaction of any type by an official or volunteer agency organized to deal with emergencies;
2. Place any person in fear of imminent serious bodily injury;
3. Prevent or interrupt the occupation or use of a building; room, place of assembly, or place to which the public has access; place of employment or occupation; aircraft, automobile, or other form of conveyance; or other public place;

4. Cause impairment or interruption of public communications; public transportation; public water, gas, or power supply; or other public service;
5. Place the public or a substantial group of the public in fear of serious bodily injury; or
6. Influence the conduct or activities of a branch or agency of the federal government, the state, or a political subdivision of the state (including the district).

**Tire deflation device** is defined in part by Penal Code 46.01 as a device, including a caltrop or spike strip, that, when driven over, impedes or stops the movement of a wheeled vehicle by puncturing one or more of the vehicle's tires.

**Title 5 offenses felonies** are those crimes listed in Title 5 of the Penal Code that typically involve injury to a person and may include:

1. Murder, manslaughter, or homicide under Sections 19.02, – .05, Texas Penal Code;
2. Kidnapping under Section 20.03, Texas Penal Code;
3. Trafficking of persons under Section 20A.02, Texas Penal Code;
4. Smuggling or continuous smuggling of persons under Sections 20.05 – .06, Texas Penal Code;
5. Assault under Section 22.01, Texas Penal Code;
6. Aggravated assault under Section 22.02, Texas Penal Code;
7. Sexual assault under Section 22.011, Texas Penal Code;
8. Aggravated sexual assault under Section 22.021, Texas Penal Code;
9. Unlawful restraint under Section 20.02, Texas Penal Code;
10. Continuous sexual abuse of a young child or disabled individual under Section 21.02, Texas Penal Code;
11. Bestiality under Section 21.09, Texas Penal Code;
12. Improper relationship between educator and student under Section 21.12, Texas Penal Code;
13. Voyeurism under Section 21.17, Texas Penal Code;
14. Indecency with a child under Section 21.11, Texas Penal Code;
15. Invasive visual recording under Section 21.15, Texas Penal Code;
16. Disclosure or promotion of intimate visual material under Section 21.16, Texas Penal Code;
17. Sexual coercion under Section 21.18, Texas Penal Code;
18. Injury to a child, an elderly person, or a disabled person of any age under Section 22.04, Texas Penal Code;
19. Abandoning or endangering a child under Section 22.041, Texas Penal Code;
20. Deadly conduct under Section 22.05, Texas Penal Code;
21. Terroristic threat under Section 22.07, Texas Penal Code;

22. Aiding a person to commit suicide under Section 22.08, Texas Penal Code; and
23. Tampering with a consumer product under Section 22.09, Texas Penal Code.

**Under the influence** means lacking the normal use of mental or physical faculties. Impairment of a person's physical or mental faculties may be evidenced by a pattern of abnormal or erratic behavior, the presence of physical symptoms of drug or alcohol use, or by admission. A student "under the influence" need not be legally intoxicated to trigger disciplinary action.

**Use** means voluntarily introducing into one's body, by any means, a prohibited substance.

**Zip gun** is defined by Penal Code 46.01 as a device or combination of devices, not originally a firearm, but adapted to expel a projectile through a smooth-bore or rifled-bore barrel by using the energy generated by an explosion or burning substance.



## AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET

### AGENDA ITEM

TASB Policy Update 117:

CH(LOCAL): PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION

CV(LOCAL): FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION

### RECOMMENDED ACTION

Approve TASB Policy Update 117 for local policies CH and CV

### RATIONALE

TASB regularly sends updates of legal and local policy reflective of legislative changes, court cases, Commissioner’s rulings, letters, etc. Update 117 includes two recommended (LOCAL) policy revisions. Both policies are being recommended to be revised to provide the district additional flexibility in emergency circumstances. The change would authorize the Superintendent to contract for the replacement, construction, or repair of equipment or facilities in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting the district if emergency replacement, construction, or repair is necessary for the health and safety of district students and staff. The superintendent would be required to report to the board any contracts made under the delegated authority at the next regular meeting. The recommended text also clarifies that the delegation does not permit the superintendent to act under Education Code 44.031(h) to make purchases without following normal competitive purchasing requirements; the board must take action to waive any Chapter 44 provisions in accordance with law.

Note, the policy update for DEC (LOCAL) has been removed and will be reviewed and approved as a separate board agenda item.

The (LEGAL) policy revisions are in response to revised federal and state rules.

### BUDGET PROVISIONS

None

### RESOURCE PERSONNEL

Amber King – General Counsel

### ATTACHMENTS

Update 117 Packet

Local Policy Comparison Packet

### MEETING DATE

August 11, 2021



# Localized Policy Manual Update 117

## 227913 Lake Travis ISD

Update 117 contains (LOCAL) policies that require board action and adoption notification before we can incorporate the revisions into your district's Policy On Line® manual.

### What should I do to prepare for board adoption?

1. In [Local Manual Updates](#)<sup>1</sup> (*myTASB login required*), download and save the numbered update resource material.
2. Present the (LOCAL) policies to your board for adoption.
3. Following board action, notify Policy Service of adoption so we can incorporate the adopted policies into your district's Policy On Line manual.
4. If there are additional changes, submit the annotated changes with your Adoption Notification Form.

### How do I notify Policy Service that the board has adopted the update?

1. Go to [Local Manual Updates](#) and click the "notify TASB" link.
2. Fill out and submit the electronic Adoption Notification Form for TASB-Initiated Updates.

### Questions?

- If you have questions regarding Policy On Line, contact [pol-support@tasb.org](mailto:pol-support@tasb.org).
- If you have questions regarding policy text, contact your [district's assigned policy consultant](#).<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Local Manual Updates: <https://www.tasb.org/apps/policyUpdates/GetUpdates.aspx>

<sup>2</sup> Contact a Policy Service Consultant: <https://www.tasb.org/services/policy-service/consultant-contact-information.aspx>



# Localized Policy Manual Update 117

Lake Travis ISD

You can download a PDF of this update packet, annotated copies of the (LOCAL) policies, editable (LOCAL) text, and more under [Local Manual Updates](#)<sup>3</sup> in the myTASB Policy Service Resource Library.

Other materials, including an overview video of the (LOCAL) policy changes, are available under [Policy Manual Update Resources](#).<sup>4</sup>

**Need help?** Please call your policy consultant at 800-580-7529 or email [Policy.Service@TASB.org](mailto:Policy.Service@TASB.org).

## Contents

Overview.....	1
Local Policy Overview for Update 117.....	2
Legal Services Update Memo.....	2
(LEGAL) vs. (LOCAL) Policies: Remember the Difference.....	2
How to Place Policy Changes on the Agenda for Board Action.....	3
How to Notify Policy Service of Board Action.....	3
How to Keep Minutes.....	4
How to Maintain Your Historical Record.....	4
How to Keep Your Administrative Regulations Current.....	4
Disclaimer and Copyright.....	5

## Overview

Update 117 includes policy revisions in response to revised state and federal rules. In addition, the update includes a reorganization of the legally referenced policies in the CH and CV series regarding purchasing and facilities construction. Local policy recommendations address revisions to the leaves and absences policy and an optional delegation to the superintendent for certain emergency contracts. Please carefully review these local policy recommendations to ensure the text aligns with the district's practices and contact your policy consultant if changes are needed.

Your Localized Update 117 packet also contains:

- **Explanatory Notes** describing the changes to each policy. Please note that, where appropriate, the Explanatory Notes ask you to verify that a particular policy reflects current district practice and to advise us of any changes needed so that our records and the district's policy manual accurately track the district's practice.

Explanatory notes may also provide important information about policies not included in the update packet.

- **Instructions** for incorporating this update into each of the district's Localized Policy Manuals after board adoption. Use the enclosed Instruction Sheet as a guide to which policies should be added, replaced, and removed from your manual.

## Local Policy Overview for Update 117

Beginning with Update 116, the newly redesigned publication *Local Policy Overview* replaced *Vantage Points*.

Like *Vantage Points*, the *Local Policy Overview* provides a general, high-level overview of the changes to the (LOCAL) policies included in TASB updates. Presented in both video and written document formats, the *Local Policy Overview* is available on myTASB in [Policy Manual Update Resources](#).<sup>5</sup> From there, you may forward it electronically or print the written document for distribution to staff and board members.

## Legal Services Update Memo

TASB Legal Services' [Legal Issues in Update 117 memo](#)<sup>6</sup> (available in the myTASB Policy Service Resource Library under Policy Manual Update Resources) describes common legal concerns specific to the local policies recommended in this update for your consideration prior to board adoption of any local policies. Local policies will not be sent for a separate review by Legal Services as part of the update process. If after reviewing the memo you have questions about any specific provisions in your local policies, please contact TASB Legal Services at 800-580-5345.

## (LEGAL) vs. (LOCAL) Policies: Remember the Difference

(LEGAL) policies:

- Reflect the ever-changing legal context for governance and management of the district
- Should inform local decision making
- Should NOT be adopted, but only reviewed

(LOCAL) policies:

- Require close attention by both the administration and the board

- Must reflect the practices of the district and the intentions of the board
- May only be changed by board action (adopt, revise, or repeal)

**If your board adopts changes to the (LOCAL) policies contained in this packet, please notify your policy consultant.**

## How to Place Policy Changes on the Agenda for Board Action

TASB recommends that the district address this update on the agenda as follows:

*“Policy Update 117:*

- *(LEGAL) policies*
- *(LOCAL) policies (see attached list of codes)”*

**(LEGAL) policies sub-item:** TASB recommends that the board review, but not adopt, the (LEGAL) policies issued in the update. If the board may discuss certain issues addressed by the updated (LEGAL) policies, particularly if those issues are of interest to the public, then, for purposes of discussion, the relevant policy codes, titles, and subtitles should be listed under the sub-item.

**(LOCAL) policies sub-item:** Board action on the (LOCAL) policies included in the update must occur within a properly posted, open meeting of the board.

- You may use the “(LOCAL) Policy Action List” provided online in Local Manual Updates and include the list under the sub-item, or you may compile a list of (LOCAL) policy codes, titles, and subtitles from the Instruction Sheet and Explanatory Notes included in the update packet.
- A suggested motion for board action on the (LOCAL) policies included in the update:

*“I move that the board add, revise, or delete (LOCAL) policies as recommended by TASB Policy Service and according to the Instruction Sheet for TASB Localized Policy Manual Update 117 [with the following changes:]”*

## How to Notify Policy Service of Board Action

Notify Policy Service of the board’s action on Update 117 so our records remain accurate. Go to [Local Manual Updates](#)<sup>7</sup> in myTASB and click the “notify TASB” link. Then fill out and submit the electronic Adoption Notification Form for TASB-Initiated Updates.

## How to Keep Minutes

The board's action on Localized Update 117 must be reflected in board minutes. Your minutes should include:

- The list of proposed (LOCAL) policy actions, such as the Instruction Sheet—annotated to reflect any changes made by the board
- The Explanatory Notes for the update (filed as an attachment to the minutes)
- Copies of new, replaced, or rescinded (LOCAL) policies

## How to Maintain Your Historical Record

To construct a separate historical record of the manual, you must track the history of individual (LOCAL) policies. You should maintain a permanent historical record of every (LOCAL) policy adopted, revised, or rescinded by the board.

At a minimum, this record should include the following key pieces of information:

- Policy code
- Date of board action
- Text of policy

For more guidance on maintaining this record, please refer to:

- [The Administrator's Guide to Policy Management](#)<sup>8</sup>
- [Tutorial videos](#)<sup>9</sup> on handling an update

These guides are available in the myTASB Policy Service Resource Library.

## How to Keep Your Administrative Regulations Current

[Regulations Resource Manual](#)<sup>10</sup> Update 63, which includes revisions to model regulations and forms corresponding with Update 117, is now available on myTASB.

Inspect your district's administrative procedures and documents—including (EXHIBIT)s, (REGULATION)s, handbooks, and guides—that may be affected by Update 117 policy changes.

If you must make changes to the (REGULATION)s or (EXHIBIT)s contained in your board policy manual, please notify your policy consultant.

# Disclaimer and Copyright

PLEASE NOTE: This information is provided for educational purposes only to facilitate a general understanding of the law or other regulatory matter. This information is neither an exhaustive treatment on the subject nor is this intended to substitute for the advice of an attorney or other professional adviser. Consult with your attorney or professional adviser to apply these principles to specific fact situations.

Entire localized update packet © 2021 Texas Association of School Boards, Inc. All rights reserved.

---

<sup>3</sup> Local Manual Updates: <https://www.tasb.org/apps/policyUpdates/GetUpdates.aspx>

<sup>4</sup> Policy Manual Update Resources: <https://www.tasb.org/services/policy-service/mytasb/policy-manual-update-resources.aspx>

<sup>5</sup> Policy Manual Update Resources: <https://www.tasb.org/services/policy-service/mytasb/policy-manual-update-resources.aspx>

<sup>6</sup> Legal Issues memo: [https://www.tasb.org/services/policy-service/mytasb/policy-manual-update-resources/documents/u117\\_legal\\_issues.pdf](https://www.tasb.org/services/policy-service/mytasb/policy-manual-update-resources/documents/u117_legal_issues.pdf)

<sup>7</sup> Local Manual Updates: <https://www.tasb.org/apps/policyUpdates/GetUpdates.aspx>

<sup>8</sup> Administrator's Guide to Policy Management: <https://www.tasb.org/services/policy-service/mytasb/guidance-for-policy-administrators.aspx>

<sup>9</sup> Tutorials: <https://www.tasb.org/services/policy-service/mytasb/tutorials.aspx>

<sup>10</sup> *TASB Regulations Resource Manual*: <https://www.tasb.org/services/policy-service/mytasb/regulations-resource-manual.aspx>



# Instruction Sheet

## TASB Localized Policy Manual Update 117

### Lake Travis ISD

<b>Code</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Action To Be Taken</b>	<b>Note</b>
AIC	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
BBC	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
BBD	(EXHIBIT)	Replace exhibit	Revised exhibit
BJCE	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
C	(LEGAL)	Replace table of contents	Revised table of contents
CBB	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CH	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CH	(LOCAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CHE	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CL	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CV	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CV	(LOCAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CVA	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CVB	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CVC	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CVD	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CVE	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
CVF	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
DEC	(LOCAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EHAA	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EHBA	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EHBAA	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EHBAB	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EHBAC	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EHBAD	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EHBC	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EIF	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EKB	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
EL	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy
FFAC	(LEGAL)	Replace policy	Revised policy



# Explanatory Notes

## TASB Localized Policy Manual Update 117

### Lake Travis ISD

#### **AIC(LEGAL)**

#### **ACCOUNTABILITY: INTERVENTIONS AND SANCTIONS**

Administrative Code provisions amended effective January 5, 2021, address program performance regarding certain special student populations. The rules address supervision and monitoring reviews and require the commissioner to assign districts an annual determination level based on performance of the special student populations.

#### **BBC(LEGAL)**

#### **BOARD MEMBERS: VACANCIES AND REMOVAL FROM OFFICE**

We have streamlined the reference to CH(LEGAL) regarding board member removal for purchasing violations.

#### **BBD(EXHIBIT)**

#### **BOARD MEMBERS: TRAINING AND ORIENTATION**

As approved by the State Board of Education in November 2020, the Framework for School Board Development has been extensively revised.

#### **BJCE(LEGAL)**

#### **SUPERINTENDENT: SUSPENSION/TERMINATION DURING CONTRACT**

Changes to this legally referenced policy on suspension of the superintendent without pay and termination during the contract term were prompted by Administrative Code revisions effective January 11, 2021.

#### **C(LEGAL)**

#### **BUSINESS AND SUPPORT SERVICES**

The C Section table of contents has been revised to rename CHE to Vendor Disclosures and Contracts.

#### **CBB(LEGAL)**

#### **STATE AND FEDERAL REVENUE SOURCES: FEDERAL**

The federal Department of Education issued correcting amendments to the Uniform Guidance for Grants and Agreements, effective February 22, 2021, resulting in a change to the provisions on cooperative purchasing in this legally referenced policy. Citations have also been updated.

#### **CH(LEGAL)**

#### **PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION**

Update 117 includes a reorganization of the purchasing and facilities construction legally referenced policies in the CH and CV series.

As part of the reorganization, we have:

- Added cross-references to other pertinent policy codes to eliminate duplicated material;
- Added existing provisions on site-based purchasing;
- Reordered and adjusted provisions for clarity and to better match statutory wording;
- Moved to CHE(LEGAL) provisions on required vendor disclosures and contract provisions and lobbying restrictions; and
- Moved detailed provisions on competitive bidding to CVA(LEGAL).

Provisions on purchasing recycled products were added from new Administrative Code rules, effective July 2, 2020.

#### **CH(LOCAL)**

#### **PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION**

The major winter storms earlier this year caused extensive damage to many district facilities. Based on district requests for additional flexibility in such emergency circumstances, we recommend a new provision delegating authority to the superintendent to contract for the replacement, construction, or repair of equipment or facilities in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting the district if

# Explanatory Notes

## TASB Localized Policy Manual Update 117

### Lake Travis ISD

emergency replacement, construction, or repair is necessary for the health and safety of district students and staff. The superintendent must report to the board any contracts made under the delegated authority at the next regular meeting.

The recommended text also clarifies that the delegation *does not* permit the superintendent to act under Education Code 44.031(h) to make purchases without following normal competitive purchasing requirements; the board must take action to waive any Chapter 44 provisions in accordance with law.

**The recommended delegation provision is optional. Please carefully review the new text to ensure it aligns with the district's practices and contact the district's policy consultant if your district does not wish to add this provision or has other revisions.**

TASB Legal Services' eSource article [Emergency Management for Texas Public Schools](#) provides additional information on purchasing in emergency situations.

The *Legal Issues in Update 117* memo describes common legal concerns and best practices specific to [this policy topic](#).

**Please note:** We have retained your locally developed text at Purchasing Authority. Please call your policy consultant with any questions.

### **CHE(LEGAL) PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION: VENDOR DISCLOSURES AND CONTRACTS**

This legally referenced policy has been reorganized to focus on required vendor disclosures and contract provisions. This material has been moved from CH(LEGAL).

In addition, we have:

- Included references to other pertinent codes and deleted material duplicated at other policy codes; and
- Reordered and adjusted provisions for clarity and to better match statutory wording.

### **CL(LEGAL) BUILDINGS, GROUNDS, AND EQUIPMENT MANAGEMENT**

New Administrative Code rules, effective July 2, 2020, prompted revisions to provisions on recycling programs.

Provisions on pool sanitation and safety standards have been streamlined to refer to the relevant legal guidance.

### **CV(LEGAL) FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION**

Update 117 includes a reorganization of the purchasing- and construction-related legally referenced policies in the CH and CV series.

As part of the reorganization, we have:

- Added cross-references to other pertinent policy codes to eliminate duplicated material; and
- Reordered and adjusted provisions for flow and to better match statutory wording.

### **CV(LOCAL) FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION**

For ease of reference and to align with recommended changes at CH(LOCAL) on delegation to the superintendent for emergency contracting, Policy Service recommends adding a Note referring to CH(LOCAL) for those provisions.

# Explanatory Notes

## TASB Localized Policy Manual Update 117

### Lake Travis ISD

The *Legal Issues in Update 117* memo describes common legal concerns and best practices specific to [this policy topic](#).

**Please note:** We have retained your locally developed text at Building Code Adoption, Construction Contracts, Change Orders, Extensions of Time, and Final Payment. Please call your policy consultant with any questions.

#### **CVA(LEGAL)**

#### **FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION: COMPETITIVE BIDDING**

Provisions on identical, competitive bids have been moved from CH(LEGAL). In addition, a provision on making bid evaluations public has been moved to this policy from CV(LEGAL). Other revisions are to delete material duplicated at other policy codes and adjust language for clarity and to better match statutory wording.

#### **CVB(LEGAL)**

#### **FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION: COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSALS**

A cross-reference has been added to procurement processes included at other policy codes, and duplicated material has been deleted. Other revisions are to adjust language for clarity and to better match statutory wording.

#### **CVC(LEGAL)**

#### **FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION: CONSTRUCTION MANAGER-AGENT**

Additional detail has been added regarding the construction manager-agent method. A cross-reference has been added to procurement processes included at other policy codes, and duplicated material has been deleted. Other revisions are to adjust language for clarity and to better match statutory wording.

#### **CVD(LEGAL)**

#### **FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION: CONSTRUCTION MANAGER-AT-RISK**

Additional detail has been added regarding the construction manager-at-risk method. A cross-reference has been added to procurement processes included at other policy codes, and duplicated material has been deleted. Other revisions are to adjust language for clarity and to better match statutory wording.

#### **CVE(LEGAL)**

#### **FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION: DESIGN-BUILD**

A cross-reference has been added to procurement processes included at other policy codes, duplicated material has been deleted, and provisions have been reordered for flow. Other revisions are to adjust language for clarity and to better match statutory wording.

#### **CVF(LEGAL)**

#### **FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION: JOB ORDER CONTRACTS**

A cross-reference has been added to procurement processes included at other policy codes, duplicated material has been deleted, and provisions have been reordered for flow. Other revisions are to adjust language for clarity and to better match statutory wording.

#### **DEC(LOCAL)**

#### **COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS: LEAVES AND ABSENCES**

The events of the past year have highlighted the need for additional flexibility regarding administration of leave. TASB Policy, Legal, and HR Services collaborated on the recommended revisions to this policy, which remove administrative details not required to be in board policy and that may be more appropriately addressed elsewhere, such as in the employee handbook.

To support the removal of these administrative details, a new paragraph directs the superintendent to develop administrative regulations to implement the policy. [Remember that BJA(LOCAL) permits the superintendent to delegate this responsibility as appropriate.] In addition, TASB HR Services has:

- Created a corresponding [Framework for Developing Leaves and Absences Procedures](#), with prompts and placeholders for administrative decisions; and

# Explanatory Notes

## TASB Localized Policy Manual Update 117

### Lake Travis ISD

- Revised the 2021–22 *Model Employee Handbook* to address administrative provisions removed from the policy.

Other changes include:

- Adding a definition of *school year* that aligns with terminology in the TASB sample contracts and that provides context for references to the term elsewhere in the policy.
- Relocating provisions on concurrent use of leave and compensatory time to the sections addressing each type of leave.
- Streamlining of family and medical leave provisions to eliminate information not necessary in board-adopted policy.
- Adding a clear statement reflecting that the district does not permit paid leave offset in conjunction with workers' compensation benefits.

New recommended provisions on state personal leave clarify that in approving or denying requests for the discretionary use of leave, the district will also consider how the duration of the requested absence affects the educational program and district operations.

The *Legal Issues in Update 117* memo describes common legal concerns and best practices specific to [this policy topic](#).

**Please note:** We have retained your locally developed language at Earning Local Leave, Local Leave Proration, Local Leave, Temporary Disability Leave, Workers' Compensation, and Court Appearances. Please call your policy consultant with any questions.

### EHAA(LLEGAL)

### BASIC INSTRUCTIONAL PROGRAM: REQUIRED INSTRUCTION (ALL LEVELS)

New Administrative Code rules address the requirement for districts to provide instruction in positive character traits, which can be met through a stand-alone course or by integrating the TEKS into other courses. The rules address the frequency of instruction by grade bands and are effective for the 2021–22 school year.

### EHBA(LLEGAL)

### SPECIAL PROGRAMS: SPECIAL EDUCATION

Revised Administrative Code rules, effective March 14, 2021, address various special education provisions and:

- Provide more detail on instructional arrangements;
- Include a definition of *regular school day* for the purpose of determining the instructional arrangement; and
- Update citations to funding statutes.

### EHBAA(LLEGAL)

### SPECIAL EDUCATION: IDENTIFICATION, EVALUATION, AND ELIGIBILITY

Provisions on a district's obligation to refer for evaluation and the definition of a *child with a disability* have been updated based on revised Administrative Code rules, effective March 14, 2021. Other changes are to better reflect statute.

# Explanatory Notes

## TASB Localized Policy Manual Update 117

### Lake Travis ISD

#### **EHBAB(LLEGAL) SPECIAL EDUCATION: ARD COMMITTEE AND INDIVIDUALIZED EDUCATION PROGRAM**

As a result of revised Administrative Code rules effective March 14, 2021, we have updated text regarding establishment of the admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee and added a provision addressing a district's overall responsibility for all of the functions of the IEP team and ARD committee. Citations have also been updated.

#### **EHBAC(LLEGAL) SPECIAL EDUCATION: STUDENTS IN NONDISTRICT PLACEMENT**

From revised Administrative Code rules effective March 14, 2021, we have added a provision requiring the district to notify TEA within 30 calendar days of an ARD committee's decision to place a student in a residential education program.

#### **EHBAD(LLEGAL) SPECIAL EDUCATION: TRANSITION SERVICES**

Revised Administrative Code rules, effective March 14, 2021, prompted a revision to the graduation provisions and updates to cites throughout this legally referenced policy.

#### **EHBC(LLEGAL) SPECIAL PROGRAMS: COMPENSATORY/ACCELERATED SERVICES**

Revisions regarding approval of an optional flexible school day program are from revised Administrative Code rules, effective December 6, 2020.

#### **EIF(LLEGAL) ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT: GRADUATION**

Details have been added on the graduation of students receiving special education services who entered grade nine after the 2014–15 school year. The changes come from revised Administrative Code rules effective March 14, 2021.

In addition, we have replaced detailed provisions on graduation of students receiving special education services who entered grade nine before the 2014–15 school year with a reference to the relevant Administrative Code provision. Citations have been updated throughout.

#### **EKB(LLEGAL) TESTING PROGRAMS: STATE ASSESSMENT**

In accordance with House Bill 3906 (86th Legislative Session) and effective September 1, 2021, the reference to the separate writing assessment in grades 4 and 7 has been removed.

#### **EL(LLEGAL) CAMPUS OR PROGRAM CHARTERS**

We have added provisions that a district is entitled to additional state aid if the district was under contract during the 2017–18 school year or is under renewal of such a contract to jointly operate a campus or campus program under Education Code 11.157 (Contracts for Educational Services). Details may be found in revised Administrative Code rules, effective March 30, 2021.

#### **FFAC(LLEGAL) WELLNESS AND HEALTH SERVICES: MEDICAL TREATMENT**

New Administrative Code rules, effective February 18, 2021, address maintenance and administration of unassigned asthma medication for districts that choose to implement such a program. Contact your policy consultant if your district has a program but lacks local policy provisions.

See FFAC in the [TASB Regulations Resource Manual](#).



<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>Interventions and Sanctions for School Districts.....</b>	<b>3</b>
	Grounds for Commissioner Action .....	3
	Conservator or Management Team.....	4
	Board of Managers .....	5
	Revocation of Accreditation .....	5
	Intervention to Improve High School Completion Rate.....	6
	<b>Campus Intervention Team and Targeted Improvement Plan ..</b>	<b>6</b>
	Actions Based on Campus Performance .....	6
	Texas Accountability Intervention System .....	7
	Campus Intervention Team .....	8
	Public Hearing .....	10
	Submission to Commissioner .....	10
	Executing Plan .....	10
	Needs Improvement Rating .....	11
	Campus Planning and Site-Based Decision-Making .....	12
	Submission of Campus Improvement Plan .....	12
	Compliance Through Federal Accountability .....	12
	<b>Campus Turnaround Plan.....</b>	<b>12</b>
	Updated Targeted Improvement Plan .....	12
	Public Notice .....	13
	Submission and Approval .....	13
	Implementation .....	13
	Required Contents.....	13
	ACE Turnaround Plan.....	14
	Implementing Entities .....	16
	Commissioner Approval or Rejection.....	16
	Implementation .....	17
	Assistance and Partnerships .....	17
	Change in Campus Performance Rating .....	17
	Continued Unacceptable Performance Rating .....	18
	Repurposing of Closed Campus .....	18
	Student Enrollment and Assignment.....	19
	Targeted Technical Assistance .....	19
	Commissioner Authority.....	19
	<b>Alternative Management.....</b>	<b>19</b>
	Solicitation of Proposals .....	20

ACCOUNTABILITY  
INTERVENTIONS AND SANCTIONS

AIC  
(LEGAL)

Qualifications of Managing Entity.....	20
Contract with Managing Entity .....	21
Return of Management to District .....	22
Applicability of Accountability Provisions.....	22
Funding .....	22
Open Meetings and Public Information .....	22
<b>Board of Managers.....</b>	<b>23</b>
General Powers and Duties .....	23
Board of Managers of District .....	23
Board of Managers of Campus .....	23
Composition of Board of Managers .....	24
Training of Board of Managers .....	24
Compensation .....	24
Replacement of Member of Board of Managers .....	24
Expiration of Appointment.....	24
Removal of Board of Managers .....	25
<b>Challenge of Intervention or Sanction.....</b>	<b>25</b>
Review of Sanctions by SOAH .....	25
<b>Annual Review .....</b>	<b>26</b>
Increasing Intensity.....	26
<b>Special Accreditation Investigations .....</b>	<b>26</b>
Commissioner Action.....	28
<b>Miscellaneous Provisions .....</b>	<b>28</b>
Acquisition of Professional Services .....	28
Costs Paid by District .....	28
Monitoring Reviews and On-Site Investigations.....	29
Immunity from Civil Liability .....	30
Campus Name Change .....	30
Transitional Interventions and Sanctions .....	30
Special Program Performance Determination.....	31
Intervention Pause.....	31
Failure to Submit Emergency Operations Plan .....	32
Student Board Member.....	32

**Interventions and  
Sanctions for School  
Districts**

Grounds for  
Commissioner  
Action

The commissioner of education shall take any of the actions authorized by Education Code, Chapter 39A, Subchapter A, to the extent the commissioner determines necessary if:

1. A district does not satisfy:
  - a. The accreditation criteria under Education Code 39.052 [see AIA];
  - b. The academic performance standards under Education Code 39.053 or 39.054 [see AIA]; or
  - c. Any financial accountability standard as determined by commissioner rule [see CFA]; or
2. The commissioner considers the action to be appropriate on the basis of a special accreditation investigation under Education Code 39.057.

*Education Code 39A.001*

*Authorized  
Commissioner  
Actions*

If a district is subject to commissioner action, the commissioner may:

1. Issue public notice of the deficiency to the board;
2. Order a hearing to be conducted by the board to notify the public of:
  - a. The insufficient performance;
  - b. The improvements in performance expected by the Texas Education Agency (TEA); and
  - c. The interventions and sanctions that may be imposed if the performance does not improve;
3. Order the preparation of a student achievement improvement plan that addresses each academic achievement indicator under Education Code 39.053(c) for which the district's performance is insufficient, the submission of the plan to the commissioner for approval, and the implementation of the plan;
4. Order a hearing to be held before the commissioner or the commissioner's designee at which the president of the board and the district's superintendent shall appear and explain the district's low performance, lack of improvement, and plans for improvement;
5. Arrange a monitoring review of the district;
6. Appoint a TEA monitor to participate in and report to TEA on the activities of the board or superintendent;

7. Appoint a conservator to oversee the operations of the district;
8. Appoint a management team to direct the operations of the district in areas of insufficient performance or require the district to obtain certain services under a contract with another person; or
9. Authorize the district to enter into a memorandum of understanding with an institution of higher education that provides for the assistance of the institution of higher education in improving the district's performance.

*Education Code 39A.002*

Regardless of whether the commissioner lowers a district's status or rating, the commissioner may take action under Education Code Chapters 39 and 39A or 19 Administrative Code 97.1057 if the commissioner determines that the action is necessary to improve any area of performance by the district or campus.

Subject to 19 Administrative Code 97.1057(h)–(k), once the commissioner takes action under 19 Administrative Code Subchapter EE (accreditation status, standards, and sanctions), the commissioner may impose on the district or campus any other sanction under Education Code Chapter 39 or 39A, or Subchapter EE, singly or in combination, to the extent the commissioner determines is reasonably required to achieve the purposes specified in 19 Administrative Code 97.1053.

*19 TAC 97.1057(c), (e)*

In making a determination to impose district and campus accreditation sanctions under 19 Administrative Code Chapter 97, Subchapter EE, the commissioner shall meet the requirements of 19 Administrative Code 97.1059. *19 TAC 97.1059*

Conservator or  
Management Team

The commissioner shall clearly define the powers and duties of a conservator or management team appointed to oversee the operations of a district.

At least every 90 days, the commissioner shall review the need for the conservator or management team and shall remove the conservator or management team unless the commissioner determines that continued appointment is necessary for effective governance of the district or delivery of instructional services.

A conservator or management team, if directed by the commissioner, shall prepare a plan for the implementation of the appointment of a board of managers or the revocation of accreditation.

The conservator or management team may:

1. Direct an action to be taken by the principal of a campus, the superintendent of the district, or the board; and
2. Approve or disapprove any action of the principal of a campus, the superintendent of the district, or the board.

The conservator or management team may not:

1. Take any action concerning a district election, including ordering or canceling an election or altering the date of or the polling places for an election;
2. Change the number of or method of selecting the board;
3. Set a tax rate for the district; and
4. Adopt a budget for the district that provides for spending a different amount, exclusive of required debt service, from that previously adopted by the board.

*Education Code 39A.003*

Regardless of whether a district has satisfied the accreditation criteria, if for two consecutive school years, including the current school year, a district has had a conservator or management team assigned, the commissioner may appoint a board of managers, a majority of whom must be residents of the district, to exercise the powers and duties of the board of trustees. For purposes of this subsection, a school year begins on the first day of instruction and includes any portion of the school year. *19 TAC 97.1057(d); Education Code 39A.006(b)*

Board of Managers

The commissioner may appoint a board of managers to exercise the powers and duties of a district's board if the district is subject to commissioner action and:

1. Has a current accreditation status of accredited-warned or accredited-probation;
2. Fails to satisfy any standard under Education Code 39.054(e); or
3. Fails to satisfy financial accountability standards as determined by commissioner rule.

*Education Code 39A.004*

Revocation of  
Accreditation

The commissioner may revoke the accreditation of a district if the district is subject to commissioner action, and for two consecutive school years, including the current school year, the district has:

1. Received an accreditation status of accredited-warned or accredited-probation;
2. Failed to satisfy any standard under Education Code 39.054(e); or
3. Failed to satisfy financial accountability standards as determined by commissioner rule.

In addition to revoking a district's accreditation, the commissioner may:

1. Order closure of the district and annex the district to one or more adjoining districts under Education Code 13.054; or
2. In the case of a home-rule school district, order closure of all programs operated under the district's charter.

*Education Code 39A.005*

Intervention to  
Improve High  
School Completion  
Rate

If a district is subject to commissioner action and the district has failed to satisfy any standard under Education Code 39.054(e) because of the district's dropout rates, the commissioner may impose sanctions against a district designed to improve high school completion rates, including:

1. Ordering the development of a dropout prevention plan for approval by the commissioner;
2. Restructuring the district or appropriate campuses to improve identification of and service to students who are at risk of dropping out of school, as defined by Education Code 29.081;
3. Ordering lower student-to-counselor ratios on campuses with high dropout rates; and
4. Ordering the use of any other intervention strategy effective in reducing dropout rates, including mentor programs and flexible class scheduling.

*Education Code 39A.007*

**Campus Intervention  
Team and Targeted  
Improvement Plan**

Actions Based on  
Campus  
Performance

If the performance of a campus is below any standard under Education Code 39.054(e), the commissioner shall:

1. Take actions, to the extent the commissioner determines necessary, as provided by Education Code, Chapter 39A; and
2. Assign a campus intervention team.

To the extent the commissioner determines necessary, the commissioner may:

1. Order a hearing to be held before the commissioner or the commissioner's designee at which the president of the board, the superintendent, and the campus principal shall appear and explain the campus's low performance, lack of improvement, and plans for improvement; or
2. Establish a school community partnership team composed of members of the campus-level planning and decision-making committee and additional community representatives as determined appropriate by the commissioner.

*Education Code 39A.051*

Texas  
Accountability  
Intervention System

If a campus's performance is below any standard under Education Code 39.054(e), the campus shall engage in interventions as described by TEA. The commissioner shall assign members to a campus intervention team as outlined in 19 Administrative Code 97.1063 and Education Code 39A.052. The campus shall establish a campus leadership team (CLT) that includes the campus principal and other campus leaders responsible for the development, implementation, and monitoring of the targeted improvement plan.

If a campus is assigned an unacceptable rating under Education Code 39.054(e):

1. For a second consecutive year, the campus must engage in the processes outlined in this provision, and the campus must develop a campus turnaround plan to be approved by the commissioner.
2. For a third or fourth consecutive year, the campus must engage in the processes outlined in this provision, and the campus must implement the commissioner-approved campus turnaround plan as described in 19 Administrative Code 97.1064.
3. For a fifth consecutive year, the commissioner shall order the appointment of a board of managers to govern the district or the closure of the campus.

Based on a campus's progress toward improvement, the commissioner may order a hearing if a campus's performance is below any standard under Education Code 39.054(e).

Interventions and sanctions listed under this provision begin upon release of preliminary ratings and may be adjusted based on final accountability ratings.

*19 TAC 97.1061(a)–(c), (e)–(i)*

Campus  
Intervention Team

The campus intervention team shall follow the requirements of 19 Administrative Code 97.1061 and Education Code 39.106.

A campus intervention team assigned by the commissioner may include teachers, principals, other educational professionals, and superintendents recognized for excellence in their roles and appointed by the commissioner to serve as members of a team.

*Education Code 39A.052*

A campus intervention team must include a district coordinator of school improvement (DCSI) and the campus principal's direct supervisor, if the DCSI is not the campus principal's direct supervisor. The DCSI must submit qualifications to TEA for approval.

An education professional, approved through an application either by TEA or TEA's technical assistance provider, who is not an employee of the campus or district, shall assist with the needs assessment.

*19 TAC 97.1063(b)–(c)*

*On-Site Needs  
Assessment*

A campus intervention team shall:

1. Conduct, with the involvement and advice of the school community partnership team, if applicable:
  - a. If the commissioner determines necessary, a comprehensive on-site needs assessment; or
  - b. A targeted on-site needs assessment relevant to an area of insufficient performance of the campus; and
2. Recommend appropriate actions as provided by Education Code 39A.054.

An on-site needs assessment must determine the factors resulting in the campus's low performance and lack of progress, including the contributing education-related factors.

In conducting a comprehensive on-site needs assessment, the campus intervention team shall use each of the guidelines and procedures at Education Code 39A.053(c) and 19 Administrative Code 97.1061(d).

In conducting a targeted on-site needs assessment, the campus intervention team shall use the appropriate guidelines and procedures described above relevant to each area of insufficient performance.

*Education Code 39A.053*

ACCOUNTABILITY  
INTERVENTIONS AND SANCTIONS

AIC  
(LEGAL)

Recommendations

On completing the on-site needs assessment, the campus intervention team shall, with the involvement and advice of the school community partnership team, if applicable, recommend actions relating to any area of insufficient performance, including:

1. Reallocation of resources;
2. Technical assistance;
3. Changes in school procedures or operations;
4. Staff development for instructional and administrative staff;
5. Intervention for individual administrators or teachers;
6. Waivers from state statutes or rules;
7. Teacher recruitment or retention strategies and incentives provided by the district to attract and retain appropriately certified and experienced teachers; or
8. Other actions the campus intervention team considers appropriate.

*Education Code 39A.054*

*Targeted  
Improvement  
Plan*

In addition to the duties relating to the on-site needs assessment, the campus intervention team shall:

1. Assist the campus in developing a targeted improvement plan;
2. Conduct a public meeting at the campus with the campus principal, the members of the campus-level planning and decision-making committee, parents of students attending the campus, and community members residing in the district to review the campus performance rating and solicit input for the development of the targeted improvement plan [see Notice of Public Meeting, below];
3. Assist the campus in submitting the targeted improvement plan to the board for approval and presenting the plan in a public hearing [see Public Hearing, below]; and
4. Assist the commissioner in monitoring the progress of the campus in executing the targeted improvement plan.

*Education Code 39A.055; 19 TAC 97.1061(d)(3)–(4)*

Notice of Public Meeting

The campus intervention team must provide written notice of the public meeting to the parents of students attending the campus and post notice of the meeting on the campus's internet website.

The notice must include the date, time, and place of the meeting.  
*Education Code 39A.056*

The public must be notified of the meeting 15 days prior to the meeting by way of the district and campus website, local newspapers or other media that reach the general public, and the parent liaison, if present on the campus. *19 TAC 97.1061(d)(3)(A)(ii)*

Public Hearing

After a targeted improvement plan or an updated targeted improvement plan is submitted to the board, the board shall conduct a hearing to:

1. Notify the public of:
  - a. The insufficient performance of the campus;
  - b. The improvements in performance expected by TEA; and
  - c. The intervention measures or sanctions that may be imposed under Education Code, Chapter 39A if the performance does not improve within a designated period; and
2. Solicit public comment on the targeted improvement plan or updated targeted improvement plan.

The board must post the targeted improvement plan on the district's internet website before the hearing.

The board may conduct one hearing relating to one or more campuses subject to a targeted improvement plan or an updated targeted improvement plan.

*Education Code 39A.057*

Submission to  
Commissioner

The board shall submit the targeted improvement plan or updated targeted improvement plan to the commissioner for approval. The campus intervention team shall assist the campus in submitting the targeted improvement plan to the commissioner. *Education Code 39A.058*

Executing Plan

In executing the targeted improvement plan, the campus intervention team shall, if appropriate:

1. Assist the campus in implementing research-based practices for curriculum development and classroom instruction, including bilingual education and special education programs, and financial management;

2. Provide research-based technical assistance, including data analysis, academic deficiency identification, intervention implementation, and budget analysis, to strengthen and improve the instructional programs at the campus; and
3. Require the district to develop a teacher recruitment and retention plan to address the qualifications and retention of the teachers at the campus.

*Education Code 39A.059*

*Continuing Duties  
of the Campus  
Intervention  
Team*

For each year a campus is assigned an unacceptable performance rating, the campus intervention team shall:

1. Assist in updating the targeted improvement plan to identify and analyze areas of growth and areas that require improvement; and
2. Submit each updated targeted improvement plan to the board.

*Education Code 39A.060*

Needs Improvement  
Rating

If a district or campus is assigned an overall or domain performance rating of D:

1. The commissioner shall order the district or campus to develop and implement a targeted improvement plan approved by the board; and
2. The interventions and sanctions provided by Education Code, Chapter 39A based on failure to satisfy performance standards under Education Code 39.054(e) apply to the district or campus only as provided below.

The interventions and sanctions based on failure to satisfy performance standards under Education Code 39.054(e) apply to a district or campus ordered to develop and implement a targeted improvement plan if the district or campus is assigned:

1. An overall or domain performance rating of F; or
2. An overall performance rating of D as provided below.

If a district or campus is assigned an overall performance rating of D for a school year after the district or campus is ordered to develop and implement a targeted improvement plan, the commissioner shall implement interventions and sanctions that apply to an unacceptable campus and those interventions and sanctions shall

continue for each consecutive school year thereafter in which the campus is assigned an overall performance rating of D.

*Education Code 39A.0545*

Campus Planning  
and Site-Based  
Decision-Making

The commissioner may authorize a school community partnership team established under Education Code 39A.051 to supersede the authority of and satisfy the requirements of establishing and maintaining a campus-level planning and decision-making committee.

The commissioner may authorize a targeted improvement plan or an updated targeted improvement plan to supersede the provisions of and satisfy the requirements of developing, reviewing, and revising a campus improvement plan.

*Education Code 39A.061*

Submission of  
Campus  
Improvement Plan

If the performance of a campus satisfies performance standards under Education Code 39.054(e) for the current school year but would not satisfy the performance standards if the standards to be used for the following school year were applied to the current school year, on the request of the commissioner, the campus-level planning and decision-making committee shall revise and submit to the commissioner the portions of the campus improvement plan that are relevant to those areas for which the campus would not satisfy performance standards. The revised portions of the improvement plan must be submitted in an electronic format. *Education Code 39A.062*

Compliance  
Through Federal  
Accountability

Notwithstanding the provisions of Education Code Chapter 39A, if the commissioner determines that a campus subject to interventions or sanctions has implemented substantially similar intervention measures under federal accountability requirements, the commissioner may accept the substantially similar intervention measures as measures in compliance with Education Code Chapter 39A. *Education Code 39A.063*

**Campus Turnaround  
Plan**

If a campus has been identified as unacceptable for two consecutive school years, the commissioner shall order the campus to prepare and submit a campus turnaround plan.

Updated Targeted  
Improvement Plan

A campus intervention team shall assist the campus in:

1. Developing an updated targeted improvement plan, including a campus turnaround plan to be implemented by the campus;
2. Submitting the updated targeted improvement plan to the board for approval and presenting the plan in a public hearing as provided by Education Code 39A.057;

3. Obtaining approval of the updated plan from the commissioner; and
4. Executing the updated plan on approval by the commissioner.

The updated targeted improvement plan submitted to the board must include all plans and details that are required to execute the campus turnaround plan without any additional action or approval by the board.

*Education Code 39A.101*

Public Notice

Within 60 days of receiving a campus's preliminary accountability rating, the district must notify parents, community members, and stakeholders that the campus received an unacceptable rating for two consecutive years and request assistance in developing the campus turnaround plan in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 97.1064. *19 TAC 97.1064(d)*

Submission and  
Approval

Upon approval of the board, the district must submit the campus turnaround plan electronically to TEA by March 1 unless otherwise specified. Not later than June 15 of each year, the commissioner must either approve or reject any campus turnaround plan prepared and submitted by a district. *19 TAC 97.1064(g)–(h); Education Code 39A.103–.104*

Implementation

A campus may implement, modify, or withdraw its campus turnaround plan with board approval if the campus receives an academically acceptable rating for the school year following the development of the campus turnaround plan.

A campus that has received an unacceptable rating for the school year following the development of the campus turnaround plan must implement its commissioner-approved campus turnaround plan with fidelity until the campus operates for two consecutive school years without an unacceptable rating.

The commissioner may appoint a monitor, conservator, management team, or board of managers for a school district that has a campus that has been ordered to implement an updated targeted improvement plan. The commissioner may order any of the interventions as necessary to ensure district-level support for the low-performing campus and the implementation of the updated targeted improvement plan. The commissioner may make the appointment at any time during which the campus is required to implement the updated targeted improvement plan.

*19 TAC 97.1064(j)–(k)*

Required Contents

A campus turnaround plan must include:

1. Details on the method for restructuring, reforming, or reconstituting the campus;
2. A detailed description of the academic programs to be offered at the campus, including:
  - a. Instructional methods;
  - b. Length of school day and school year;
  - c. Academic credit and promotion criteria; and
  - d. Programs to serve special student populations;
3. If a district charter is to be granted for the campus under Education Code 12.0522:
  - a. The term of the charter; and
  - b. Information on the implementation of the charter;
4. Written comments from:
  - a. The campus-level committee established under Education Code 11.251, if applicable;
  - b. Parents; and
  - c. Teachers at the campus;
5. A detailed description of the budget, staffing, and financial resources required to implement the plan, including any supplemental resources to be provided by the district or other identified sources; and
6. A detailed description for developing and supporting the oversight of academic achievement and student performance by the board of trustees under Education Code 11.1515.

*Education Code 39A.105(a) [Acts of the 85th Legislative Session, Senate Bill 1566, amended former Education Code 39.107(b-1) to include the information provided at Subsection (6)]*

ACE Turnaround  
Plan

A campus may submit an accelerated campus excellence (ACE) turnaround plan. The plan must provide:

1. The assignment of a principal to the campus who has demonstrated a history of improvement in student academic growth at campuses in which the principal has previously worked;
2. That the principal has final authority over personnel decisions at the campus;

3. That at least 60 percent of the classroom teachers assigned to the campus be teachers who demonstrated instructional effectiveness during the previous school year, with instructional effectiveness determined by:
  - a. For a teacher who taught in the district during the previous school year:
    - (1) The teacher's impact on student growth as determined using a locally developed value-added model that measures student performance on at least one assessment selected by the district; and
    - (2) An evaluation of the teacher based on classroom observation; and
  - b. For a teacher who did not teach in the district during the previous school year, data and other evidence indicating that if the teacher had taught in the district during the previous school year, the teacher would have performed in the top half of teachers in the district;
4. A detailed description of the employment and compensation structures for the principal and classroom teachers, which must include significant incentives for a high-performing principal or teacher to remain at the campus and a three-year commitment by the district to continue incentives for the principal and teachers;
5. Policies and procedures for the implementation of best practices at the campus, including:
  - a. Data-driven instructional practices;
  - b. A system of observation of and feedback for classroom teachers;
  - c. Positive student culture on the campus;
  - d. Family and community engagement, including partnerships with parent and community groups;
  - e. Extended learning opportunities for students, which may include service or workforce learning opportunities; and
  - f. Providing student services before or after the instructional day that improve student performance, which may include tutoring, extracurricular activities, counseling services, and offering breakfast, lunch, and dinner to all students at the campus; and

6. Assistance by a third-party provider that is approved by the commissioner in the development and implementation of the district's plan.

*Education Code 39A.105(b)*

Implementing  
Entities

A campus ordered to prepare a campus turnaround plan shall implement the updated targeted improvement plan as approved by the commissioner.

The commissioner may appoint a monitor, conservator, management team, or board of managers to the district to ensure and oversee district-level support to low-performing campuses and the implementation of the updated targeted improvement plan.

In making appointments, the commissioner shall consider individuals who have demonstrated success in managing campuses with student populations similar to the campus at which the individual appointed will serve.

*Education Code 39A.102, .108*

*Effective Date*

A campus turnaround plan must take effect not later than the school year following the third consecutive school year that the campus has received an unacceptable performance rating. *Education Code 39A.106*

Commissioner  
Approval or  
Rejection

Not later than June 15 of each year, the commissioner shall, in writing, either approve or reject any campus turnaround plan prepared and submitted to the commissioner by a district. If the commissioner rejects a campus turnaround plan, the commissioner must also send the district an outline of the specific concerns regarding the turnaround plan that resulted in the rejection. *Education Code 39A.107(a-1)*

If the commissioner rejects a campus turnaround plan, the district must create a modified plan with assistance from TEA staff and submit the modified plan to the commissioner for approval not later than the 60th day after the date the commissioner rejects the campus turnaround plan. The commissioner shall notify the district in writing of the commissioner's decision regarding the modified plan not later than the 15th day after the date the commissioner receives the modified plan. *Education Code 39A.107(a-2)*

The commissioner may approve a campus turnaround plan only if the commissioner determines that the campus will satisfy all student performance standards required under Education Code 39.054(e) not later than the second year the campus receives a performance rating following the implementation of the campus turnaround plan.

Education Code 12.0522(b) does not apply to a district charter approved by the commissioner. An approved district charter may be renewed or continue in effect after the campus is no longer subject to the commissioner's order under Education Code 39A.101.

If the commissioner does not approve a campus turnaround plan, the commissioner shall order:

1. Appointment of a board of managers to govern the district;
2. Alternative management of the campus; or
3. Closure of the campus.

*Education Code 39A.107; 19 TAC 97.1065*

Implementation

Following approval of a campus turnaround plan by the commissioner, the district, in consultation with the campus intervention team, may take any actions needed to prepare for the implementation of the plan. *Education Code 39A.108*

Assistance and Partnerships

A district may:

1. Request that a regional education service center provide assistance in the development and implementation of a campus turnaround plan; or
2. Partner with an institution of higher education to develop and implement a campus turnaround plan.

*Education Code 39A.109*

Change in Campus Performance Rating

If a campus for which a campus turnaround plan has been ordered receives an acceptable performance rating for the school year following the order, the board may:

1. Implement the campus turnaround plan;
2. Implement a modified version of the campus turnaround plan; or
3. Withdraw the campus turnaround plan.

A district required to implement a campus turnaround plan may modify the plan if the campus receives an acceptable performance rating for two consecutive school years following implementation of the plan.

*Education Code 39A.110*

ACCOUNTABILITY  
INTERVENTIONS AND SANCTIONS

AIC  
(LEGAL)

Continued  
Unacceptable  
Performance Rating

If a campus is considered to have an unacceptable performance rating for three consecutive school years after the campus is ordered to submit a campus turnaround plan, the commissioner shall order:

1. Appointment of a board of managers to govern the district; or
2. Closure of the campus.

*Education Code 39A.111; 19 TAC 97.1065(a)(2)*

*Parent Petition  
for Action*

"Parent" means the parent who is indicated on the student registration form at that campus and the signature of only one parent of a student is required.

If the commissioner is presented, in the time and manner specified by commissioner rule, with a written petition signed by the parents of a majority of the students enrolled at a campus with an unacceptable performance rating for three consecutive school years, specifying an authorized action that the parents request the commissioner to order, the commissioner shall order the specific action requested.

If the board presents to the commissioner, in the time and manner specified by commissioner rule, a written request that the commissioner order specific authorized action other than the specific action requested in the parents' petition and a written explanation of the basis for the board's request, the commissioner may order the action requested by the board.

*Education Code 12.051, 39A.112; 19 TAC 97.1065(d)*

Repurposing of  
Closed Campus

If the commissioner orders the closure of a campus, that campus may be repurposed to serve students at that campus location only if the commissioner finds that the repurposed campus offers a distinctly different academic program and approves a new campus identification number for the repurposed campus. A campus may be repurposed if the campus:

1. Serves a majority of grade levels not served at the original campus; or
2. Is operated under a contract, approved by the school board, with a nonprofit organization exempt from federal taxation under Section 501(c)(3), Internal Revenue Code of 1986 that:
  - a. Has a governing board that is independent of the district;
  - b. Has a successful history of operating school district campuses or open-enrollment charter schools:

- (1) That cumulatively serve 10,000 or more students; and
  - (2) A majority of which have been assigned an overall performance rating of B or higher under Education Code 39.054 for the preceding school year; and
- c. Has been assigned an overall performance rating of B or higher under Education Code 39.054 for the preceding school year.

Student Enrollment  
and Assignment

Any student assigned to a campus that has been closed must be allowed to transfer to any other campus in the district that serves that student's grade level and on request must be provided transportation to the other campus.

The commissioner may grant an exemption allowing students assigned to a closed campus to attend the repurposed campus if there is no other campus in the district at which the students may enroll.

*Noncontracted  
Repurposed  
Campus*

The majority of students assigned to a campus that has been closed and repurposed may not have attended that campus in the previous school year if the campus was repurposed to serve a majority of grade levels not served at the original campus.

*Enrollment  
Provision in  
Contract*

A contract approved by the school board with a nonprofit organization must provide that a student residing in the attendance zone of the campus immediately before the campus was repurposed shall be admitted for enrollment at the repurposed campus.

*Education Code 39A.113*

Targeted Technical  
Assistance

If the commissioner determines that the basis for the unacceptable performance of a campus for more than two consecutive school years is limited to a specific condition that may be remedied with targeted technical assistance, the commissioner may require the district to contract for the appropriate technical assistance. *Education Code 39A.114*

Commissioner  
Authority

A decision by the commissioner under the campus turnaround plan subchapter of the Education Code is final and may not be appealed. *Education Code 39A.116*

**Alternative  
Management**

The commissioner shall appoint a monitor, conservator, management team, or board of managers whenever such action is required, as determined by 19 Administrative Code 1073. Action under any other section of 19 Administrative Code Chapter 97, Subchapter EE is not a prerequisite to acting under this section. *19 TAC 97.1073*

Solicitation of  
Proposals

If the commissioner orders alternative management of a campus, the commissioner shall solicit proposals from qualified nonprofit entities to assume management of the campus or appoint a school district as provided below. The commissioner may solicit proposals from qualified for-profit entities if a nonprofit entity has not responded to the commissioner's request for proposals.

The commissioner may appoint a school district to assume management of the campus if the district:

1. Is not the district in which the campus is located; and
2. Is located within the boundaries of the same regional education service center as the campus.

If a school district is appointed, the district shall assume management of the campus in the same manner as a qualified entity or in accordance with commissioner rule.

The commissioner may annually solicit proposals for the alternative management of a campus. The commissioner shall notify a qualified entity that has been approved as a provider under this section.

*Education Code 39A.151*

Qualifications of  
Managing Entity

To qualify for consideration as a managing entity, the entity must submit a proposal that provides information relating to the entity's management and leadership team that will participate in management of the campus under consideration, including information relating to individuals who have:

1. Documented success in whole school interventions that increased the educational and performance levels of students in campuses considered to have an unacceptable performance rating;
2. A proven record of effectiveness with programs assisting low-performing students;
3. A proven ability to apply research-based school intervention strategies;
4. A proven record of financial ability to perform under the management contract; and
5. Any other experience or qualifications the commissioner determines necessary.

In selecting a managing entity, the commissioner shall give preference to a qualified entity that:

1. Meets any of the commissioner's qualifications; and

2. Has documented success in educating students from similar demographic groups and with similar educational needs as the students who attend the campus to be operated by the managing entity.

*Education Code 39A.152*

Contract with  
Managing Entity

If the commissioner has ordered alternative management of a campus, the district shall execute a contract with an approved provider to serve as a managing entity for the campus. The term of the contract may not exceed five years with an option to renew the contract. The district must execute the contract and relinquish control of the campus before January 1 of the school year.

The management contract must include:

1. A provision describing the district's responsibilities in supporting the operation of the campus; and
2. Provisions approved by the commissioner requiring the managing entity to demonstrate improvement in campus performance, including negotiated performance measures.

Performance measures must be consistent with the priorities of Education Code Chapters 39 and 39A.

The management contract must be approved by the commissioner before the contract is executed. As appropriate, the commissioner may require the district, as a term of the contract, to support the campus in the same manner as the district was required to support the campus before the execution of the contract.

*Education Code 39A.153; 19 TAC 97.1067*

*Extension of  
Management  
Contract*

The commissioner may require a district to extend the term of a management contract with a managing entity if the commissioner determines that extending the contract on expiration of the initial term is in the best interest of the students attending the campus. The terms of the contract must be approved by the commissioner.  
*Education Code 39A.154*

*Evaluation of  
Managing Entity*

The commissioner shall evaluate a managing entity's performance on the first and second anniversaries of the date of the management contract.

If the evaluation fails to demonstrate improvement as negotiated under the management contract by the first anniversary of the date of the contract, the district may:

1. Terminate the contract, with the commissioner's consent, for nonperformance or breach of contract; and

2. Select another provider from an approved list provided by the commissioner.

If the evaluation fails to demonstrate significant improvement, as determined by the commissioner, by the second anniversary of the date of the management contract, the district shall:

1. Terminate the contract; and
2. Select another provider from an approved list provided by the commissioner or resume operation of the campus if approved by the commissioner.

If the commissioner approves the district's resumed operation of the campus, the commissioner shall assign a technical assistance team to assist the campus.

*Education Code 39A.155*

*Cancellation of  
Management  
Contract*

If a campus receives an unacceptable performance rating for two consecutive school years after a managing entity assumes management of the campus, the commissioner shall cancel the contract with the managing entity. *Education Code 39A.156*

Return of  
Management to  
District

Unless a campus has an unacceptable performance rating for three consecutive school years [see Continued Unacceptable Performance Rating, above], at the end of a management contract term or on the cancellation of a management contract, the board shall resume management of the campus. *Education Code 39A.157*

Applicability of  
Accountability  
Provisions

Each campus operated by a managing entity is subject to Education Code Chapters 39 and 39A in the same manner as any other campus in the district. *Education Code 39A.158*

Funding

The funding for a campus operated by a managing entity may not be less than the funding of the other campuses in the district on a per student basis so that the managing entity receives at least the same funding the campus would otherwise have received. *Education Code 39A.159*

Open Meetings and  
Public Information

With respect to the management of a campus by a managing entity:

1. A managing entity is considered to be a governmental body for purposes of the Texas Open Meetings Act and Public Information Act; and

2. Any requirement in the Texas Open Meetings Act or Public Information Act that applies to a school district or the board of trustees of a district applies to a managing entity.

*Education Code 39A.160*

**Board of Managers**

General Powers  
and Duties

A board of managers may exercise all of the powers and duties assigned to a board of trustees of a school district by law, rule, or regulation.

A board of managers appointed by the commissioner is required to take appropriate actions to resolve the conditions that caused a campus to be subject to the commissioner's order, including amending the district's budget, reassigning staff, or relocating academic programs. The commissioner may adopt rules necessary to implement this subsection.

*Education Code 39A.201*

Board of Managers  
of District

If the commissioner appoints a board of managers to govern a district:

1. The powers of the board are suspended for the period of the appointment; and
2. The commissioner shall appoint a district superintendent.

A board of managers appointed to govern a school district may amend the budget of the district.

Education Code Chapter 39A applies to a school district governed by a board of managers in the same manner it applies to any other district.

*Education Code 39A.202*

Board of Managers  
of Campus

If the commissioner appoints a board of managers to govern a campus:

1. The powers of the board of trustees of the school district in relation to the campus are suspended for the period of the appointment; and
2. The commissioner shall appoint a campus principal.

A board of managers appointed to govern a campus may submit to the commissioner for approval amendments to the budget of the school district for the benefit of the campus. If the commissioner approves the amendments, the board of trustees of the school district shall adopt the amendments.

*Education Code 39A.203*

ACCOUNTABILITY  
INTERVENTIONS AND SANCTIONS

AIC  
(LEGAL)

Composition of Board of Managers	<p>A board of managers appointed by the commissioner must, if possible, include community leaders, business representatives who have expertise in leadership, and individuals who have knowledge or expertise in the field of education. <i>Education Code 39A.204</i></p>
Training of Board of Managers	<p>The commissioner must provide each individual appointed to a board of managers with training in effective leadership strategies. <i>Education Code 39A.205</i></p> <p>The training in effective leadership strategies shall be provided by TEA-approved authorized providers of board training to each individual appointed by the commissioner to a board of managers, and, following the expiration of the appointment of the board of managers, to the board of trustees of the school district. <i>19 TAC 97.1073(h)</i></p>
Compensation	<p>The commissioner may authorize payment of a board of managers from TEA funds.</p> <p>A conservator or a member of a management team appointed to serve on a board of managers may continue to be compensated as determined by the commissioner.</p> <p><i>Education Code 39A.206</i></p>
Replacement of Member of Board of Managers	<p>The commissioner may at any time replace a member of a board of managers. The commissioner may adopt rules necessary to implement this section. <i>Education Code 39A.207</i></p>
Expiration of Appointment	<p>A board of managers shall, during the period of the appointment, order the election of members of the board of trustees of the school district in accordance with the law. The members of the board of trustees do not assume any powers or duties after the election until the appointment of the board of managers expires.</p> <p>Not later than the second anniversary of the date the board of managers of a school district was appointed, the commissioner shall notify the board of managers and the board of trustees of the date on which the appointment of the board of managers will expire. Following each of the last three years of the period of the appointment, one-third of the members of the board of managers shall be replaced by the number of members of the board of trustees who were elected at an election that constitutes, as closely as possible, one-third of the membership of the board of trustees.</p> <p>If, before the second anniversary of the date the board of managers of a school district was appointed, the commissioner determines, after receiving local feedback, that insufficient progress has</p>

been made toward improving the academic or financial performance of the district, the commissioner may extend the authority of the board of managers for a period of up to two additional years.

On the expiration of the appointment of the board of managers, the board of trustees assumes all of the powers and duties assigned to a board of trustees by law, rule, or regulation.

Following the expiration of the period of appointment of a board of managers for a school district, the commissioner shall provide training in effective leadership strategies to the board of trustees.

*Education Code 39A.208; 19 TAC 97.1073*

Removal of Board  
of Managers

The commissioner may remove a board of managers appointed to govern a school district only if the campus that was the basis for the appointment of the board of managers receives an acceptable performance rating for two consecutive school years.

If a campus that was the basis for the appointment of a board of managers receives an unacceptable performance rating for two additional consecutive years following the appointment of the board of managers, the commissioner may remove the board of managers and, in consultation with the local community, may appoint a new board of managers to govern the district.

Following the removal of a board of managers, or at the request of a managing entity to oversee the implementation of alternative management, the commissioner may appoint a conservator or monitor for the district to ensure district-level support for low-performing campuses and to oversee the implementation of the updated targeted improvement plan.

*Education Code 39A.209; 19 TAC 97.1073*

**Challenge of  
Intervention or  
Sanction**

A district that challenges the commissioner's decision to close the district or a campus or to pursue alternative management of a campus must appeal the decision as provided below.

Review of  
Sanctions by SOAH

A challenge is under the substantial evidence rule [see Government Code, Chapter 2001, Subchapter G]. The commissioner shall adopt procedural rules for a challenge under this section.

Notwithstanding other law:

1. The State Office of Administrative Hearings (SOAH) shall conduct an expedited review of a challenge;
2. The administrative law judge shall issue a final order not later than the 30th day after the date on which the hearing is finally closed;

3. The decision of the administrative law judge is final and may not be appealed; and
4. The decision of the administrative law judge may set an effective date for an action under this section.

*Education Code 39A.301*

**Annual Review**

The commissioner shall annually review the performance of a district or campus subject to intervention and sanction to determine the appropriate actions to be implemented.

The commissioner must review at least annually the performance of a district for which the accreditation status or performance rating has been lowered due to insufficient student performance and may not raise the accreditation status or performance rating until the district has demonstrated improved student performance.

If the review reveals a lack of improvement, the commissioner shall increase the level of state intervention and sanction unless the commissioner finds good cause for maintaining the current status.

*Education Code 39A.901*

Increasing Intensity

If a district or campus does not exhibit improvement in student performance, the commissioner may increase the intensity of intervention and sanction that would otherwise be required by statute or rule, including ordering campus closure, district annexation, or appointment of a board of managers.

For purposes of this section, improvement means an increase in the scaled score for the overall academic performance rating under Education Code Chapter 39.

*19 TAC 97.1070(a)–(b)*

**Special  
Accreditation  
Investigations**

The commissioner may authorize a special accreditation investigation:

1. When excessive numbers of absences of students eligible to be tested on state assessment instruments are determined;
2. When excessive numbers of allowable exemptions from the required state assessment are determined;
3. In response to complaints to TEA of alleged violations of civil rights or other requirements imposed on the state by federal law or court order;
4. In response to established compliance reviews of the district's financial accounting practices and state and federal reporting requirements;

5. When extraordinary numbers of student placements in disciplinary alternative education programs, other than placements under Education Code 37.006 and 37.007, are determined;
6. In response to an allegation involving a conflict between members of the board or between the board and the district administration if it appears that the conflict involves a violation of a role or duty of the board members or the administration clearly defined by the Education Code. If TEA's findings indicate the board has observed a lawfully adopted policy, TEA may not substitute its judgment for that of the board;
7. When excessive numbers of students in special education programs are assessed through modified assessment instruments;
8. In response to an allegation regarding, or an analysis using a statistical method result indicating, a possible violation of an assessment instrument security procedure;
9. When a significant pattern of decreased academic performance has developed as a result of the promotion in the preceding two school years of students who did not perform satisfactorily on the state assessments;
10. When excessive numbers of students eligible to enroll fail to complete an Algebra II course or any other advanced course as determined by the commissioner;
11. When resource allocation practices indicate a potential for significant improvement in resource allocation;
12. When a disproportionate number of students of a particular demographic group is graduating with a particular endorsement;
13. When an excessive number of students is graduating with a particular endorsement;
14. When a school district for any reason fails to produce, at the request of TEA, evidence or an investigation report relating to an educator who is under investigation by the State Board for Educator Certification;
15. In response to a complaint with respect to alleged inaccurate data that is reported through PEIMS or through other reports required by state or federal law or rule or court order and that is used by TEA to make a determination relating to public school accountability, including accreditation, under Education Code Chapter 39;

16. In response to repeated complaints concerning imposition of excessive paperwork requirements on classroom teachers; or
17. As the commissioner otherwise determines necessary.

*Education Code 39.057(a)–(c)*

TEA shall adopt written procedures for conducting special accreditation investigations, including procedures that allow TEA to obtain information from district employees in a manner that prevents a district or campus from screening the information. *Education Code 39.058(a); 19 TAC 102.1401*

Commissioner  
Action

Based on the results of a special accreditation investigation, the commissioner may:

1. Take appropriate action under Education Code Chapter 39A, [see Interventions and Sanctions for School Districts, above];
2. Lower the district's accreditation status or a district's or campus's performance rating; or
3. Take action under both items 1 and 2 above.

Regardless of whether the commissioner lowers the accreditation status or a district's or campus's performance rating, the commissioner may impose one of the district- or campus-level interventions or sanctions under Education Code 39A.002 [see Interventions and Sanctions for School Districts, above].

*Education Code 39.057(d), (e)*

**Miscellaneous  
Provisions**

Acquisition of  
Professional  
Services

In addition to other authorized interventions and sanctions, the commissioner may order a district or campus to acquire professional services at the expense of the district or campus to address the applicable financial, assessment, data quality, program, performance, or governance deficiency. The commissioner's order may require the district or campus to:

1. Select or be assigned an external auditor, data quality expert, professional authorized to monitor district assessment instrument administration, or curriculum or program expert; or
2. Provide for or participate in the appropriate training of district staff or board members in the case of a district, or campus staff, in the case of a campus.

*Education Code 39A.902*

Costs Paid by  
District

The costs of providing a monitor, conservator, management team, campus intervention team, technical assistance team, managing entity, or service provider shall be paid by the district. If the district

fails or refuses to pay the costs in a timely manner, the commissioner may:

1. Pay the costs using amounts withheld from any funds to which the district is otherwise entitled; or
2. Recover the amount of the costs in the manner provided for recovery of an over allocation of state funds under Education Code 48.272.

*Education Code 39A.903*

Monitoring Reviews  
and On-Site  
Investigations

Except as provided by Education Code 7.028(a), the commissioner may direct TEA to conduct monitoring reviews and random on-site visits of a district at any time, as authorized by Education Code 7.028, only as necessary to ensure:

1. Compliance with federal law and regulations;
2. Financial accountability, including compliance with grant requirements; and
3. Data integrity for purposes of:
  - a. The Public Education Information Management System (PEIMS);
  - b. Accountability under Education Code Chapter 39 and 39A; and
4. Qualification for funding under Chapter 48.

The board of trustees has primary responsibility for ensuring that the district complies with all applicable requirements of state educational programs.

*Education Code 7.028*

*Compliance  
Monitoring  
Activities*

Districts are subject to general supervision and monitoring activities for compliance with state law and federal regulation and review of program implementation and effectiveness within certain special populations of students.

Activities may include:

1. Random, targeted, or cyclical reviews authorized under Education Code 39.056 (monitoring reviews), conducted remotely or on-site to identify problems implementing state and federal requirements and to provide support for development of reasonable and appropriate strategies to address identified problems; and/or

2. Intensive or special investigative remote or on-site reviews authorized under Education Code 39.057 (special accreditation investigations).

Activities described in item 1, above, are applicable for compliance with requirements for reading diagnosis in Education Code 28.006 [see EKC] and dyslexia and related disorders in Education Code 38.003 and 19 Administrative Code 74.28 [see EHB].

*19 TAC 97.1071(a)–(b)*

<i>Notice</i>	TEA shall give written notice to the superintendent and the board of trustees of any impending monitoring review. <i>Education Code 39.056(d)</i>
<i>Conducting the Review</i>	A monitoring review may include desk reviews and on-site visits, including random on-site visits. In conducting a monitoring review, TEA may obtain information from administrators, other district employees, parents of students enrolled in the district, and other persons as necessary. <i>Education Code 39.056(c), (g)</i>
<i>Accreditation Investigation</i>	The commissioner may at any time convert a monitoring review to a special accreditation investigation under Education Code 39.057, provided the commissioner promptly notifies the district of the conversion. <i>Education Code 39.056(h)</i>
<i>Improvements</i>	TEA shall report in writing to the superintendent and president of the board and shall make recommendations concerning any necessary improvements or sources of aid such as regional education service centers. A district that takes action with regard to the recommendations provided by TEA shall make a reasonable effort to seek assistance from a third party in developing an action plan to improve district performance using improvement techniques that are goal-oriented and research-based. <i>Education Code 39.056(e)–(f)</i>
<i>Immunity from Civil Liability</i>	An employee, volunteer, or contractor acting on behalf of the commissioner, or a member of a board of managers appointed by the commissioner, is immune from civil liability to the same extent as a professional employee of a district under Education Code 22.051. <i>Education Code 39A.904</i>
<i>Campus Name Change</i>	In reconstituting, repurposing, or imposing any other intervention or sanction on a campus, the commissioner may not require that the name of the campus be changed. <i>Education Code 39A.905</i>
<i>Transitional Interventions and Sanctions</i>	For a campus that received an unacceptable performance rating for the 2013–14, 2014–15, and 2015–16 school years, the commissioner may apply the interventions and sanctions authorized by

Chapter 39 as that chapter existed on January 1, 2015, to the campus.

If a campus receives an unacceptable performance rating for the 2016–17 and 2017–18 school years, the commissioner shall apply the interventions and sanctions authorized when a campus has an unacceptable performance rating for three consecutive school years under current law.

For a campus that received an acceptable performance rating for the 2013–14 school year and an unacceptable performance rating for the 2014–15 and 2015–16 school years, the commissioner shall apply interventions and sanctions in current law to the campus. If the campus receives an unacceptable performance rating for the 2016–17, 2017–18, and 2018–19 school years, the commissioner shall apply the interventions and sanctions authorized when a campus has an unacceptable performance rating for three consecutive school years under current law.

These transition provisions expire September 1, 2020.

*Education Code 39A.906*

Special Program  
Performance  
Determination

The commissioner shall assign districts an annual determination level based on performance levels of certain special populations student groups under 19 Administrative Code 97.1005 (Results Driven Accountability) [see AIB] according to the criteria and requirements in 19 Administrative Code 97.1071.

The commissioner shall notify in writing each district identified for review under this section as a result of assigned determination level or cyclical selection prior to requiring a district to implement or participate in any activities included in 19 Administrative Code 97.1071(f)(1)–(6).

Actions taken under this section are intended to assist the district in raising its performance and/or achieving compliance under 19 Administrative Code 97.1005 and 74.28 and Education Code sections 28.006 and 38.003 and do not preclude or substitute for a sanction under another provision of Chapter 97, Subchapter EE.

*19 TAC 97.1071(c), (g), (h)*

Intervention Pause

Except as otherwise provided by 19 Administrative Code 97.1062 and unless extended by the commissioner, TEA will cease to enforce the interventions under Education Code 39A.101-39A.111 until conclusion of the second consecutive school year of operation under:

1. A partnership as defined by 19 Administrative Code 97.1077(a)(2), (b), or (c) of this title [see ELA]; or
2. Designation as a mathematics innovation zone under Education Code 28.020 and applicable rules.

Any intervention or sanction not covered by the provision above shall continue.

If a campus ceases to qualify for the intervention pause at any point during a school year, TEA will resume previously ordered interventions and sanctions, order interventions and sanctions based on the rating from that school year, and count that rating for purposes of consecutive years of performance.

*19 TAC 97.1062*

Failure to Submit  
Emergency  
Operations Plan

If TEA receives notice from the Texas School Safety Center of a district's failure to submit a multihazard emergency operations plan [see CKC], the commissioner may appoint a conservator for the district under Education Code Chapter 39A. The conservator may order the district to adopt, implement, and submit a multihazard emergency operations plan. If a district fails to comply with a conservator's order to adopt, implement, and submit a multihazard emergency operations plan within the time frame imposed by the commissioner, the commissioner may appoint a board of managers under Education Code Chapter 39A to oversee the operations of the district. *Education Code 37.1082(a)–(b)*

---

**Note:** The following provisions apply to a district with a central administrative office that is located in a county with a population of more than two million and that has a student enrollment that is more than 125,000 and less than 200,000, and that is operating under a turnaround plan.

---

Student Board  
Member

Notwithstanding Education Code 11.051(b) (number of trustees on a school board), the board may adopt a resolution establishing as a nonvoting member a student trustee position. If a board adopts such a resolution, the board shall adopt a policy addressing the topics specified in statute. *Education Code 11.0511*

---

**Note:** If the district is subject to a court order or other binding legal determination, the district shall conduct its elections in accordance with that court order or determination, applicable law, and this policy. To the extent of any conflict, the court order or other legal determination shall prevail. [See BBB(LOCAL)]

---

**Resignation**

To be effective, a board member's resignation must be in writing and signed by the board member and delivered to the presiding officer of the board. A board may not refuse to accept a resignation. *Election Code 201.001*

Effective Date

If a board member submits a resignation, whether to be effective immediately or at a future date, a vacancy occurs on the date the resignation is accepted by the board or on the eighth day after the date of its receipt by the board, whichever is earlier. *Election Code 201.023*

Holdover Doctrine

All public officers shall continue to perform the duties of their offices until their successors shall be duly qualified (i.e., sworn in). Until the vacancy created by a board member's resignation is filled by a successor, the board member continues to serve and have the duties and powers of office and continues to be subject to the nepotism provisions. A holdover board member may not vote on the appointment of his or her successor. *Tex. Const., Art. XVI, Sec. 17; Atty. Gen. Ops. JM-636 (1987), O-6259 (1945)* [See DBE for more information on nepotism]

**Residency**

A person elected or appointed to serve as a board member must remain a resident of the district throughout the term of office. A board member who ceases to reside in the district vacates the office. *Tex. Const., Art. XVI, Sec. 14; Prince v. Inman, 280 S.W.2d 779 (Tex. Civ. App.—Beaumont 1955, no writ); Whitmarsh v. Buckley, 324 S.W.2d 298 (Tex. Civ. App.—Houston 1959, no writ)* [See BBA]

Single-Member  
District

A trustee vacates the office if the trustee ceases to reside in the district the trustee represents. *Education Code 11.052(g)*

**Filling a Vacancy**

If a vacancy occurs on the board, the remaining board members may fill the vacancy by appointment until the next trustee election, or may order a special election to fill the vacancy. If more than one year remains in the term of the position vacated, the vacancy shall be filled not later than the 180th day after the date the vacancy occurs. *Education Code 11.060*

BOARD MEMBERS  
VACANCIES AND REMOVAL FROM OFFICE

BBC  
(LEGAL)

Appointment	To be eligible to be appointed to a board, a person must have the qualifications set forth at Election Code 141.001(a). <i>Election Code 141.001(a)</i> [See BBA]
Special Election	<p>A special election to fill a vacancy shall be conducted in the same manner as the district's general election. <i>Education Code 11.060(c)</i></p> <p>An election to fill a vacancy shall be to fill the unexpired term only. <i>Tex. Const. Art. XVI, Sec. 27</i></p>
<i>Date of Election</i>	A special election to fill a vacancy shall be held on an authorized uniform election date occurring within the required period after the vacancy occurs. If no uniform election date affords enough time to hold the election in the manner required by law, the election shall be held on the first authorized uniform election date occurring after the expiration of the period. <i>Election Code 41.001(a), .004(a); Atty. Gen. Op. KP-102 (2016)</i> [See BBB]
<i>Ordering Election</i>	<p>If a vacancy is to be filled by special election, the election shall be ordered as soon as practicable after the vacancy occurs. <i>Election Code 201.051(a)</i></p> <p>Except as otherwise provided by the Election Code, a special election to fill a vacancy shall be held on the first authorized uniform election date occurring on or after the 46th day after the date the election is ordered. <i>Election Code 201.052(a)</i></p> <p>If the special election is to be held on the date of the general election for state and county officers, the election shall be ordered not later than the 78th day before election day. The general election for state and county officers is the first Tuesday after the first Monday in November in even-numbered years. <i>Election Code 41.002, 201.051</i></p>
Officer's Statement and Oath	For requirements regarding the officer's statement and oath of office, see BBBB(LEGAL).
<b>Former Board Member Employment</b>	A trustee may not accept employment with the district until the first anniversary of the date the trustee's membership on a board ends. <i>Education Code 11.063</i>
<b>Involuntary Removal from Office</b>	On his or her own motion or at the request of an individual, the attorney general or the county or district attorney may petition the district court for leave to file an information in the nature of quo warranto. An action in the nature of quo warranto is available if:
Quo Warranto	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. A person usurps, intrudes into, or unlawfully holds or executes an office; or</li><li>2. A public officer does an act or allows an act that by law causes forfeiture of office.</li></ol>

If the person against whom the information is filed is found guilty as charged, the court:

1. Shall enter judgment removing the person from the office and for the costs of prosecution; and
2. May fine the person for usurping, intruding into, or unlawfully holding and executing the office.

*Civ. Prac. & Rem. Code 66.001–.003*

Removal by Petition  
and Trial

A proceeding for the removal of a board member is begun by filing a written petition for removal in district court of the county in which the board member resides. A resident of the state who has lived for at least six months in the county in which the petition is to be filed and who is not currently under indictment in the county may file a petition. *Local Gov't Code 87.015*

*Reasons for  
Removal*

A board member may be removed from office for:

1. "Incompetency," which means:
  - a. Gross ignorance of official duties;
  - b. Gross carelessness in the discharge of those duties; or
  - c. Unfitness or inability to promptly and properly discharge official duties because of a serious physical or mental defect that did not exist at the time of election.
2. "Official misconduct," which means intentional, unlawful behavior relating to official duties by a board member entrusted with the administration of justice or the execution of the law. The term includes an intentional or corrupt failure, refusal, or neglect of a board member to perform a duty imposed on the board member by law.
3. Intoxication on or off duty caused by drinking an alcoholic beverage, but not if it was caused by drinking an alcoholic beverage on the direction and prescription of a licensed physician.
4. Conviction of a board member by a jury for any felony or for misdemeanor official misconduct. The conviction of a public officer by a petit jury for any felony or for a misdemeanor involving official misconduct operates as an immediate removal from office of that officer.

*Tex. Const., Art. V, Sec. 24; Local Gov't Code 87.011, .012(14), .013, .031*

BOARD MEMBERS  
VACANCIES AND REMOVAL FROM OFFICE

BBC  
(LEGAL)

*Removal for  
Purchasing  
Violations*

See CH for information regarding removal for purchasing violations.

**Temporary  
Replacement of  
Board Member on  
Military Active Duty**

A board member who enters active duty in the armed forces of the United States as a result of being called to duty, drafted, or activated does not vacate the office held, but the board may appoint a replacement to serve as a temporary board member if the elected or appointed board member will be on active duty for longer than 30 days.

The board member who is temporarily replaced may recommend to the board the name of a person to temporarily fill the office. The board shall appoint the temporary board member to begin service on the date specified in writing by the board member being temporarily replaced as the date the board member will enter active military service.

A temporary board member has all the powers, privileges, and duties of the office as the board member who is temporarily replaced. A temporary board member shall perform the duties of office for the shorter period of:

1. The term of the active military service of the board member who is temporarily replaced; or
2. The term of office of the board member who is temporarily replaced.

“Armed forces of the United States” means the United States Army, the United States Navy, the United States Air Force, the United States Marine Corps, the United States Coast Guard, any reserve or auxiliary component of any of those services, or the National Guard.

*Tex. Const., Art. XVI, Sec. 72*

## Framework for School Board Development

Preamble: The mission of the public education system of this state is to ensure that all Texas children have access to a quality education that enables them to achieve their potential and fully participate now and in the future in the social, economic, and educational opportunities of our state and nation (Education Code 4.001).

The board of trustees is the governing body for Texas public schools. To effectively meet the challenges of public education, school boards and superintendents must function together as a governance leadership team. Each leadership team will annually assess its development needs both as a corporate body and as individuals. As a team, they will focus on the improvement of locally developed student outcomes and provide support for opportunities and experiences through vision and goals, systems and processes, progress and accountability, advocacy and engagement, and synergy and teamwork. Teams ensure that their districts provide equitable and effective educational programs and services for all students. The Framework for School Board Development has been approved by the State Board of Education to provide the critical areas of development for all public school boards.

1. Vision and Goals — The board ensures creation of a shared vision and locally developed, measurable goals that improve student outcomes and provide support for opportunities and experiences. The board:
  - Keeps the district focus on the well-being of all children.
  - Adopts a shared vision that incorporates input from the community to reflect local aspirations as well as present and future needs for all children.
  - Ensures that the vision aligns with the state's mission, objectives, and goals for education established by law and/or rule.
  - Adopts a reasonable number of specific, quantifiable, research-based, and time-bound goals that align with state law, are developed with community input, and support the vision to improve student outcomes.
  - Embraces, supports, and fulfills the vision that all students receive what they need to learn, thrive, and grow, including resources, opportunities, and experiences.
  - Uses the vision and goals to drive all deliberations, decisions, and actions.
2. Systems and Processes — The board ensures systems and processes are in place to accomplish the vision and goals. The board:
  - Regularly develops, reviews, and adopts board policies for effective support of the district's vision and goals.
  - Approves a budget that aligns with and maximizes resources to fulfill the district's vision and goals.
  - Monitors multiple, measurable elements of student progress and achievement throughout the year.

- Incorporates equity when making decisions and evaluating systems and processes.
  - Focuses its actions on following board operating procedures while providing oversight of the superintendent, policymaking, planning and goal setting, progress monitoring, and evaluation, while avoiding involvement in daily operations and management.
  - Approves goals, policies, and programs that ensure a safe and secure learning environment.
  - Ensures the equitable distribution of resources, opportunities, and experiences based on the diverse needs of students and schools.
  - Adopts a planning calendar and engages in a decision-making process consistent with state law and rule to help achieve the district's vision.
  - Ensures that the district's planning and decision-making process enables all segments of the community, families, and staff to meaningfully contribute to achieving the district's vision.
  - Welcomes and values all people and cultures as important stakeholders in the process for student success.
  - Ensures the district has a system that monitors for sound business and fiscal practices.
  - Adopts policies regarding hiring, assigning, appraising, terminating, and compensating school district personnel in compliance with state laws and rules.
  - Ensures the district adopts a protocol regarding the recruitment, determination of professional development needs, building of leadership capacity, and retention rates for the district's teachers.
  - Fulfills the statutory duties of the local board of trustees and upholds all laws, rules, ethical procedures, and court orders pertaining to schools and school employees.
3. Progress and Accountability — The board sets clear goals, provides resources and support, evaluates goal attainment, and engages in ongoing objective feedback on progress and commitments. The board:
- Holds itself accountable to its adopted vision, goals, commitments, and operating procedures.
  - Ensures progress toward achievement of district goals through systematic, timely, and comprehensive review of relevant reports and student data that illustrate progress toward locally developed student outcome goals.
  - Ensures equity throughout the system by regularly identifying inequities, updating policies, and appropriately distributing resources.

- Differentiates among resources, intermediate measures, and outcomes, especially when focusing on student outcomes.
  - Monitors and evaluates the allocation of resources in support of the district's vision and goals and sustainability.
  - Reviews the efficiency and effectiveness of district operations and use of resources in supporting the district's vision and goals.
  - Employs and annually evaluates the superintendent on the achievement of district goals, including locally developed academic goals, demonstration of educational leadership, and management of daily operations.
4. Advocacy and Engagement — The board promotes the vision and engages the community in developing and fulfilling the vision. The board advocates on behalf of Texas public schoolchildren. The board:
- Demonstrates its commitment to, and advocates on behalf of, the shared vision and goals by clearly communicating them to the superintendent, staff, and community.
  - Regularly reports district progress to families and the community, which could include an online dashboard for the community.
  - Ensures multiple forms of two-way communication will be used to engage, empower, and connect students, families, staff, media, and community with the district.
  - Builds collaborative relationships and partnerships with families and community, business, nonprofit, higher-education, education support organizations, and governmental leaders to influence and expand educational opportunities and meet the needs of students.
  - Recognizes the respective roles of and provides input and feedback to the legislature, State Board of Education, and the Texas Education Agency to ensure maximum effectiveness and benefit to Texas schoolchildren.
  - Promotes school board service by educating the community about the role of a school board and encouraging leadership opportunities within the community.
5. Synergy and Teamwork — The board's duties are distinct, and the board works effectively as a collaborative unit and as a team with the superintendent to lead the district in fulfilling the vision and goals. The board:
- Recognizes its distinct role in establishing the vision and the goals, adopting policies that guide the district, setting priorities, establishing governance protocols to oversee management of the district, adopting and overseeing the annual budget, and hiring and evaluating the superintendent.
  - Recognizes each individual trustee's duty as a trustee and fiduciary for the entire district.

- Remains focused on its goals and priorities, as opposed to individual agendas separate and apart from the shared vision.
- Annually evaluates its performance as a team, with attention given to the district's vision and goals; fulfilling the board's duties, responsibilities, and commitments; and the board's working relationship with the superintendent.
- Makes decisions as a whole only at properly called meetings and recognizes that individual members have no authority to take individual action in policy or district and campus administrative matters.
- Respects the right of individual members to express their viewpoints and vote their convictions and honors the decisions of the majority.
- Develops teamwork, problem-solving, and decision-making skills as a team with its superintendent.
- Understands and adheres to laws and local policies and respects the superintendent's responsibility to manage the school district and to direct employees in district and campus matters.
- Adopts and adheres to established policies and procedures for welcoming and addressing ideas and concerns from students, families, staff, and the community.
- Establishes and follows local policies, procedures, and ethical standards governing the conduct and operations of the board.
- Understands the leadership role of the board president and adheres to local policies and procedures about the duties and responsibilities of the board officers.

*Adopted by the State Board of Education, January 1996, as authorized by 19 TAC 61.1(a); revised November 20, 2020.*

SUPERINTENDENT  
SUSPENSION/TERMINATION DURING CONTRACT

BJCE  
(LEGAL)

<b>Suspension Without Pay</b>	For good cause, as determined by the board, the board may suspend a superintendent without pay for a period not to extend beyond the end of the school year pending discharge or in lieu of termination. <i>Education Code 21.201(1), .211(b)</i>
Back Pay	A superintendent who is not discharged after being suspended without pay pending discharge is entitled to back pay for the period of suspension. <i>Education Code 21.211(c)</i>
<b>Contract Termination</b>	The board may terminate a term contract and discharge the superintendent at any time for good cause as determined by the board. <i>Education Code 21.211(a), .212(d)</i>
Due Process	Before dismissal for good cause, a superintendent shall be given notice of the charges against him or her, an explanation of the district's evidence, and an opportunity to respond. <u><i>Cleveland Bd. of Educ. v. Loudermill</i></u> , 470 U.S. 532, 546 (1985)
<b>Hearing on Proposed Suspension or Termination</b>	<p>Education Code Chapter 21, Subchapter F (Hearings before Hearing Examiners) applies if a superintendent requests a hearing after receiving notice of the proposed decision to terminate the superintendent's term contract before the end of the contract period or suspend the superintendent without pay. <i>Education Code 21.251(a)(2)–(3)</i></p> <p>The superintendent must file a written request for a hearing under Subchapter F with the commissioner not later than the 15th day after the date the superintendent receives written notice of the proposed action. The superintendent must provide the district with a copy of the request and must provide the commissioner with a copy of the notice. The parties may agree in writing to extend by not more than ten days the deadline for requesting a hearing. <i>Education Code 21.253</i> [See DFD]</p>
<b>Severance Payments</b> Definition	“Severance payment” means any amount paid by a board to or in behalf of a superintendent on early termination of the superintendent's contract that exceeds the amount earned by the superintendent under the contract as of the date of termination, including any amount that exceeds the amount of earned standard salary and benefits that is paid as a condition of early termination of the contract. Payments to a former superintendent who remains employed by a district in another capacity or contracts with a district to provide the district services may be severance payments in whole or in part if the payments are compensation for the early termination of a prior employment agreement. Severance payments include any payment for actual or threatened litigation involving or related to the employment contract. <i>Education Code 11.201(c); 19 TAC 105.1021(a)(1)</i>

SUPERINTENDENT  
SUSPENSION/TERMINATION DURING CONTRACT

BJCE  
(LEGAL)

Duty to Report

The board that makes a severance payment to a superintendent shall report the terms of the severance payment to the commissioner. *Education Code 11.201(c)*

A district that makes a payment of any kind to a departing superintendent must file with the Texas Education Agency (TEA) a Superintendent Payment Disclosure Form. No form is required to be filed for a payment already earned and payable under the terms of a terminated employment contract, such as a payment for accrued vacation.

The form must be filed by the 60th day after the district executes the agreement to make the payment or the 60th day after any payment under such an agreement, whichever is sooner. The interim superintendent, new superintendent, or board president is responsible for timely filing the Superintendent Payment Disclosure Form. Filing of the disclosure form is required regardless of whether a district considers a payment to be a severance payment as that term is defined above.

Compliance with the reporting requirements of these provisions is considered part of the district's compliance with required financial accounting practices under Education Code 39.057(a)(4). Failure to comply may result in sanctions as authorized by Education Code 39.057(d) and (e).

Required  
Documentation

A district must enclose with the submitted Superintendent Payment Disclosure Form a copy of the superintendent employment contract and a copy of the termination or severance agreement. A district must provide the commissioner with any information or documentation that the commissioner requests to determine whether a payment to a departing superintendent is a severance payment and whether a district is subject to reductions in Foundation School Program (FSP) funding under 19 Administrative Code 105.1021.

*19 TAC 105.1021(b), (d)*

Reduction of State  
Funds

The commissioner shall reduce a district's FSP funds by any amount that the severance payment exceeds one year's salary and benefits under the superintendent's terminated contract. The commissioner will reduce the district's FSP funding for the school year following the school year in which the first payment requiring an FSP reduction is made to the former superintendent. The commissioner also will reduce the district's FSP funding in the school year following each school year that any additional payment requiring an FSP reduction is made to the former superintendent. If a district's liability to the state exceeds the total of the district's estimated payments of FSP funding for the remainder of the school

year, the district is subject to reductions in its FSP funding for subsequent school years until the liability has been fully liquidated.

A reduction in FSP funding under these provisions does not affect a district's obligation to comply with all provisions of Education Code Chapter 48, including its obligation under that chapter to provide educational services to special populations.

*19 TAC 105.1021(c); Education Code 11.201(c)*



**Please Note:** This manual does not have policies in all codes. The coding structure is common to all TASB manuals and is designed to accommodate expansion of both (LEGAL) and (LOCAL) policy topics and administrative regulations.

## **SECTION C: BUSINESS AND SUPPORT SERVICES**

CA	FISCAL MANAGEMENT GOALS AND OBJECTIVES
CAA	Financial Ethics
CB	STATE AND FEDERAL REVENUE SOURCES
CBA	State
CBB	Federal
CC	LOCAL REVENUE SOURCES
CCA	Bond Issues
CCB	Time Warrants
CCC	Certificates of Indebtedness
CCD	Recreational Facilities Bonds
CCE	Athletic Stadium Authority
CCF	Loans and Notes
CCG	Ad Valorem Taxes
CCGA	Exemptions and Payments
CCGB	Economic Development
CCH	Appraisal District
CD	OTHER REVENUES
CDA	Investments
CDB	Sale, Lease, or Exchange of School-Owned Property
CDBA	Revenue Bonds from Proceeds
CDC	Gifts and Solicitations
CDD	Rentals and Service Charges
CDE	Shop Sales
CDF	Royalties
CDG	Gate Receipts, Concessions
CDH	Public and Private Facilities
CE	ANNUAL OPERATING BUDGET
CEA	Financial Exigency
CF	ACCOUNTING
CFA	Financial Reports and Statements
CFB	Inventories
CFC	Audits
CFD	Activity Funds Management
CFE	Payroll Procedures
CFEA	Salary Deductions and Reductions
CFF	Checking Accounts
CFG	Cash in School Buildings
CG	BONDED EMPLOYEES AND OFFICERS

**Please Note:** This manual does not have policies in all codes. The coding structure is common to all TASB manuals and is designed to accommodate expansion of both (LEGAL) and (LOCAL) policy topics and administrative regulations.

## SECTION C: BUSINESS AND SUPPORT SERVICES

CH	PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION
CHB	Petty Cash Account
CHD	Purchasing Procedures
CHE	Vendor Disclosures and Contracts
CHF	Payment Procedures
CHG	Real Property and Improvements
CHH	Financing Personal Property Purchases
CI	SCHOOL PROPERTIES DISPOSAL
CJ	CONTRACTED SERVICES
CJA	Criminal History
CK	SAFETY PROGRAM/RISK MANAGEMENT
CKA	Inspections
CKB	Accident Prevention and Reports
CKC	Emergency Plans
CKD	Emergency Medical Equipment and Procedures
CKE	Security Personnel
CKEA	Commissioned Peace Officers
CKEB	School Marshals
CKEC	School Resource Officers
CL	BUILDINGS, GROUNDS, AND EQUIPMENT MANAGEMENT
CLA	Security
CLB	Maintenance
CLC	Traffic and Parking Controls
CLD	Records and Reports
CLE	Flag Displays
CM	EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES MANAGEMENT
CMA	Receiving and Warehousing
CMB	Authorized Uses of Equipment and Supplies
CMD	Instructional Materials Care and Accounting
CN	TRANSPORTATION MANAGEMENT
CNA	Student Transportation
CNB	District Vehicles
CNBA	Bus Maintenance
CNC	Transportation Safety
CO	FOOD AND NUTRITION MANAGEMENT
COA	Procurement
COB	Free and Reduced-Price Meals

**Please Note:** This manual does not have policies in all codes. The coding structure is common to all TASB manuals and is designed to accommodate expansion of both (LEGAL) and (LOCAL) policy topics and administrative regulations.

## SECTION C: BUSINESS AND SUPPORT SERVICES

COC	Vending Machines
CP	OFFICE MANAGEMENT
CPA	Office Communications
CPAA	Printing and Duplicating
CPAB	Mail and Delivery
CPAC	Telephone
CPC	Records Management
CQ	TECHNOLOGY RESOURCES
CQA	District, Campus, and Classroom Websites
CQB	Cybersecurity
CQC	Equipment
CR	INSURANCE AND ANNUITIES MANAGEMENT
CRA	Property Insurance
CRB	Liability Insurance
CRD	Health and Life Insurance
CRE	Workers' Compensation
CRF	Unemployment Insurance
CRG	Deferred Compensation and Annuities
CS	FACILITY STANDARDS
CT	FACILITIES PLANNING
CV	FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION
CVA	Competitive Bidding
CVB	Competitive Sealed Proposals
CVC	Construction Manager-Agent
CVD	Construction Manager-at-Risk
CVE	Design-Build
CVF	Job Order Contracts
CW	NAMING FACILITIES
CX	CONTRACTS FOR FACILITIES
CY	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY



The Texas Education Agency (TEA) may enter into an agreement with a federal agency concerning a project related to education, including provision of school lunches and construction of school buildings. TEA, or another state agency designated by the governor, shall coordinate the actions of a district participating in a federal financial assistance program. *Education Code 7.021(b), (c); Gov't Code 742.003*

**Retirement and  
Insurance  
Contributions**

Under the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Benefits Act, Insurance Code Chapter 1575, a district that applies for money provided by the United States or a privately sponsored source shall, if any of the money will pay part or all of an active employee's salary, also apply for any legally available money to pay state contributions required by Insurance Code Chapter 1575, Subchapter E. *Insurance Code 1575.252*

Such district must comply with the requirements of Insurance Code Chapter 1575, Subchapter F. *Insurance Code 1575.252(2)–.257*

Under the Teacher Retirement System, Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C, if a district applies for money provided by the United States, an agency of the United States, or a privately sponsored source, and if any of the money will pay part or all of an employee's salary, the district shall apply for any legally available money to pay state contributions required by Government Code 825.404 or 830.201. *Gov't Code 825.406(a)*

Such district must comply with the requirements of Government Code 825.406.

**Block Grant Funds**

If a district receives more than \$5,000 in block grant funds to be used as the district determines is appropriate, it shall provide evidence to TEA that a public meeting or hearing was held in a timely manner solely to seek public comment on the needs or uses of block grant funds received by the district. The board may hold this meeting or hearing in conjunction with another board meeting or hearing if the meeting or hearing to consider block grant funds is clearly noted in an announcement of the other meeting or hearing. *Gov't Code 2105.058*

**Education  
Department General  
Administrative  
Regulations  
(EDGAR)**

---

**Note:** For information regarding procurement under state law, see the CH policy series regarding Purchasing and Acquisition and the CV series regarding Facilities Construction.

For additional legal requirements applicable to school nutrition procurement, see COA.

---

EDGAR means the Education Department General Administrative Regulations (34 C.F.R. 75, 76, 77, 79, 81, 82, 84, 86, 97, 98, and 99). *34 C.F.R. 77.1(c)*

Uniform Guidance  
(2 C.F.R. 200)

The Department of Education (ED) adopts the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Guidance in 2 C.F.R. Part 200 Uniform Guidance, except for 2 C.F.R. 200.102(a) and 2 C.F.R. 200.207(a). Thus, 2 C.F.R. Chapter XXXIV, Part 3474 gives regulatory effect to the OMB guidance and supplements the guidance as needed for the ED. *2 C.F.R. 3474.1*

The Uniform Guidance establishes uniform administrative requirements, cost principles, and audit requirements for federal awards to non-federal entities, including school districts, as described in 2 C.F.R. 200.101 (Applicability). *2 C.F.R. 200.1 (Definitions), .100*

---

**Note:** The Uniform Guidance applies to all new grant awards and non-competing continuations (NCCs) made on or after December 26, 2014 (see 2 C.F.R. 200.110).

For more information on EDGAR, the Uniform Guidance, and the federal regulations that apply to federal education grant awards, visit TEA's [EDGAR Materials and Resources](#)<sup>1</sup> and the ED's [EDGAR website](#)<sup>2</sup> and [Uniform Guidance website](#).<sup>3</sup>

---

*General  
Compliance*

A district is responsible for complying with all requirements of the federal award. *2 C.F.R. 200.300(b)*

Throughout 2 C.F.R. Part 200 when the word "must" is used it indicates a requirement. Whereas, use of the word "should" or "may" indicates a best practice or recommended approach rather than a requirement and permits discretion. *2 C.F.R. 200.101(b)(1)*

*Disclosures  
Conflicts*

A district must disclose in writing any potential conflict of interest to the federal awarding agency (e.g., ED) or pass-through entity (e.g., TEA) in accordance with applicable federal awarding agency policy. *2 C.F.R. 200.112*

*Crimes*

A district must disclose, in a timely manner, in writing to the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity all violations of federal criminal law involving fraud, bribery, or gratuity violations potentially affecting the federal award. Failure to make required disclosures can result in any of the remedies described in 2 C.F.R. 200.339 (Remedies for Noncompliance), including suspension or debarment. *2 C.F.R. 200.113*

STATE AND FEDERAL REVENUE SOURCES  
FEDERAL

CBB  
(LEGAL)

<i>Procurement Standards</i>	The district must have and use documented procurement procedures, consistent with state, local, and tribal laws and regulations and the standards of 2 C.F.R. 200.318, for the acquisition of property or services required under a federal award or subaward. The district's documented procurement procedures [see Competition, below] must conform to the procurement standards identified in 2 C.F.R. 200.317 through 200.327.
District Procedures	
Oversight	The district must maintain oversight to ensure that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.
Conflicts of Interest	The district must maintain written standards of conduct covering conflicts of interest and governing the actions of its employees engaged in the selection, award, and administration of contracts. No employee, officer, or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by a federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest. A conflict of interest would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization that employs or is about to employ any of these parties, has a financial or other interest in or a tangible personal benefit from a firm considered for a contract. The officers, employees, and agents of the district may neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors or parties to subcontracts. However, districts may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct must provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the district. [See BBFA, CAA(LOCAL), CB(LOCAL), DBD]
Records	The district must maintain records sufficient to detail the history of procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price. [See Pre-procurement Review and Contract Cost and Price, below]  <i>2 C.F.R. 200.318(a), (b), (c)(1), (i)</i>  [See 2 C.F.R. 200.334 for record retention requirements.]
<i>Financial Management</i>	The district's financial management systems, including records documenting compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the federal award, must be sufficient to permit the preparation of reports required by general and program-specific terms and conditions; and the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have been

used according to the federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the federal award. [See also 2 C.F.R. 200.450 (Lobbying)]

The district's financial management system must comply with 2 C.F.R. 200.302(b). [See also 2 C.F.R. 200.334 (Retention requirements for records), .335 (Requests for transfer of records), .336 (Methods for collection, transmission and storage of information), and .337 (Access to records)]

*2 C.F.R. 200.302*

Internal Controls

The district must:

1. Establish and maintain effective internal control over the federal award that provides reasonable assurance that the district is managing the award in compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the award. These internal controls should be in compliance with guidance in "Standards for Internal Control in the Federal Government" issued by the Comptroller General of the United States or the "Internal Control Integrated Framework" issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).
2. Comply with the U.S. Constitution, federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the award.
3. Evaluate and monitor the district's compliance with statutes, regulations and the terms and conditions of federal awards.
4. Take prompt action when instances of noncompliance are identified including noncompliance identified in audit findings.
5. Take reasonable measures to safeguard protected personally identifiable information and other information the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity designates as sensitive or the district considers sensitive consistent with applicable federal, state, local, and tribal laws regarding privacy and responsibility over confidentiality.

*2 C.F.R. 200.303*

"Internal controls" for districts means processes designed and implemented by districts to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories:

1. Effectiveness and efficiency of operations;
2. Reliability of reporting for internal and external use; and

3. Compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

*2 C.F.R. 200.1*

*Competition*

All procurement transactions for the acquisition of property or services required under a federal award must be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of 2 C.F.R. 200.319 and 200.320 (Methods of procurement to be followed).

In order to ensure objective contractor performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, contractors that develop or draft specifications, requirements, statements of work, or invitations for bids or requests for proposals must be excluded from competing for such procurements.

The district must conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed state, local, or tribal geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this provision preempts state licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering services, geographic location may be a selection criterion provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

The district must have written procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures must ensure that all solicitations meet the requirements of 2 C.F.R. 200.319(d). [See Procurement Standards, above]

The district must ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, the district must not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

Noncompetitive procurements can only be awarded in accordance with 2 C.F.R. 200.320(c).

*2 C.F.R. 200.319*

*Procurement  
Methods*

The district must have and use documented procurement procedures, consistent with the standards of 2 C.F.R. 200.320 and 200.317 (Procurements by states), 200.318 (General procurement standards), and 200.319 (Competition) for any of the following methods of procurement used for the acquisition of property or services required under a federal award or sub-award. *2 C.F. R. 200.320*

STATE AND FEDERAL REVENUE SOURCES  
FEDERAL

CBB  
(LEGAL)

Informal Procurement Methods	When the value of the procurement for property or services under a federal award does not exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, as defined in 2 C.F.R. 200.1, or a lower threshold established by a district, formal procurement methods are not required. The district may use informal procurement methods to expedite the completion of its transactions and minimize the associated administrative burden and cost. The informal methods used for procurement of property or services at or below the simplified acquisition threshold include:
<i>Micro-Purchases—Definitions</i>	<p>“Micro-purchase” means a purchase of supplies or services, the aggregate amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold. Micro-purchases comprise a subset of a district's small purchases as defined in 2 C.F.R. 200.320.</p> <p>“Micro-purchase threshold” means the dollar amount at or below which a district may purchase property or services using micro-purchase procedures. Generally, the micro-purchase threshold for procurement activities administered under federal awards is not to exceed the amount set by the Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) at 48 C.F.R. Part 2, Subpart 2.1 [see below], unless a higher threshold is requested by the district and approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs.</p> <p><i>2 C.F.R. 200.1</i></p> <p>Micro-purchase threshold means \$10,000, except as provided by 48 C.F.R. 2.101. <i>48 C.F.R. 2.101</i></p>
<i>Micro-Purchase Distribution</i>	The acquisition of supplies or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold. [See the definition of “micro-purchase” above.] To the maximum extent practicable, the district should distribute micro-purchases equitably among qualified suppliers. <i>2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)(1)(i)</i>
<i>Micro-Purchase Awards</i>	Micro-purchases may be awarded without soliciting competitive price or rate quotations if the district considers the price to be reasonable based on research, experience, purchase history or other information and documents it files accordingly. Purchase cards can be used for micro-purchases if procedures are documented and approved by the district. <i>2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)(1)(ii)</i>
<i>Micro-Purchase Thresholds</i>	The district is responsible for determining and documenting an appropriate micro-purchase threshold based on internal controls, an evaluation of risk, and its documented procurement procedures. The micro-purchase threshold used by the district must be authorized or not prohibited under state, local, or tribal laws or regulations. Districts may establish a threshold higher than the federal

threshold established in the FAR in accordance with 2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)(1)(iv) and (v). *2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)(1)(iii)*

Districts may establish a threshold higher than the micro-purchase threshold identified in the FAR in accordance with the requirements of 2 C.F.R. 200.320. The district may self-certify a threshold up to \$50,000 on an annual basis and must maintain documentation to be made available to the federal awarding agency and auditors in accordance with 2 C.F.R. 200.334. The self-certification must include a justification, clear identification of the threshold, and supporting documentation of any of the following:

1. A qualification as a low-risk auditee, in accordance with the criteria in 2 C.F.R. 200.520 for the most recent audit.
2. An annual internal institutional risk assessment to identify, mitigate, and manage financial risks; or,
3. For public institutions, a higher threshold consistent with state law.

*2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)(1)(iv)*

Micro-purchase thresholds higher than \$50,000 must be approved by the cognizant agency for indirect costs. The district must submit a request with the requirements included in 2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)(1)(iv). The increased threshold is valid until there is a change in status in which the justification was approved. *2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)(1)(v)*

*Small  
Purchases—  
Procedures*

The acquisition of property or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which is higher than the micro-purchase threshold but does not exceed the simplified acquisition threshold. If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations must be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources as determined appropriate by the district. *2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)(2)(i)*

*Small  
Purchases—  
Simplified  
Acquisition  
Thresholds*

“Simplified acquisition threshold” means the dollar amount below which a district may purchase property or services using small purchase methods. Districts adopt small purchase procedures in order to expedite the purchase of items at or below the simplified acquisition threshold. The simplified acquisition threshold for procurement activities administered under federal awards is set by the FAR at 48 C.F.R. Part 2, Subpart 2.1 [see below]. The district is responsible for determining an appropriate simplified acquisition threshold based on internal controls, an evaluation of risk, and its documented procurement procedures. However, in no circumstances can this threshold exceed the dollar value established in the FAR

(48 C.F.R. Part 2, Subpart 2.1) for the simplified acquisition threshold. Recipients should determine if local government laws on purchasing apply. 2 C.F.R. 200.1, .320(a)(2)(ii)

Simplified acquisition threshold means \$250,000, except as provided by 48 C.F.R. 2.101. 48 C.F.R. 2.101

Formal  
Procurement  
Methods

When the value of the procurement for property or services under a federal financial assistance award exceeds the simplified acquisition threshold, or a lower threshold established by a district, formal procurement methods are required. Formal procurement methods require following documented procedures. Formal procurement methods also require public advertising unless a non-competitive procurement can be used in accordance with 2 C.F.R. 200.319 or 200.320(c). The following formal methods of procurement are used for procurement of property or services above the simplified acquisition threshold or a value below the simplified acquisition threshold the district determines to be appropriate:

*Sealed Bids*

A procurement method in which bids are publicly solicited and a firm fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bids method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions [*sic*].

In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

1. A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available.
2. Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively for the business; and
3. The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

1. Bids must be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources, providing them sufficient response time prior to the date set for opening the bids, for local governments, the invitation for bids must be publicly advertised;
2. The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, must define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

3. All bids will be opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids, and for local governments, the bids must be opened publicly.
4. A firm fixed price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs must be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and
5. Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

*2 C.F.R. 200.320(b)(1)*

*Proposals*

A procurement method in which either a fixed price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. Proposals are generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. They are awarded in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Requests for proposals must be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Proposals must be solicited from an adequate number of qualified offerors. Any response to publicized requests for proposals must be considered to the maximum extent practical;
2. The district must have a written method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and making selections;
3. Contracts must be awarded to the responsible offeror whose proposal is most advantageous to the district, with price and other factors considered; and
4. The district may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby offeror's qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified offeror is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

*2 C.F.R. 200.320(b)(2)*

Noncompetitive  
Procurement

There are specific circumstances in which noncompetitive procurement can be used. Noncompetitive procurement can only be awarded if one or more of the following circumstances apply:

1. The acquisition of property or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold;
2. The item is available only from a single source;
3. The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from publicizing a competitive solicitation;
4. The federal awarding agency or pass-through entity expressly authorizes a noncompetitive procurement in response to a written request from the district; or
5. After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

*2 C.F.R. 200.320(c)*

Cooperative  
Purchasing

To foster greater economy and efficiency, and in accordance with efforts to promote cost-effective use of shared services across the federal government, the district is encouraged to enter into state and local intergovernmental agreements or inter-entity agreements where appropriate for procurement or use of common or shared goods and services. Competition requirements will be met with documented procurement actions using strategic sourcing, shared services, and other similar procurement arrangements. *2 C.F.R. 200.318(e)*

*Minority, Small,  
and Women's  
Businesses*

The district must take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible. Affirmative steps must include:

1. Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;
2. Assuring that small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;
3. Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;

4. Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;
5. Using the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and
6. Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in items 1 through 5 above.

*2 C.F.R. 200.321*

*Domestic  
Preference*

As appropriate and to the extent consistent with law, the district should, to the greatest extent practicable under a federal award, provide a preference for the purchase, acquisition, or use of goods, products, or materials produced in the United States (including but not limited to iron, aluminum, steel, cement, and other manufactured products). The requirements of 2 C.F.R. 200.322 must be included in all subawards including all contracts and purchase orders for work or products under this award.

For purposes of this provision:

1. "Produced in the United States" means, for iron and steel products, that all manufacturing processes, from the initial melting stage through the application of coatings, occurred in the United States.
2. "Manufactured products" means items and construction materials composed in whole or in part of non-ferrous metals such as aluminum; plastics and polymer-based products such as polyvinyl chloride pipe; aggregates such as concrete; glass, including optical fiber; and lumber.

*2 C.F.R. 200.322*

*Pre-procurement  
Review*

The district must make available upon request, for the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity pre-procurement review, procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, or independent cost estimates, when:

1. The district's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in 2 C.F.R. Part 200;
2. The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation;

3. The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a “brand name” product;
4. The proposed contract is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or
5. A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

*2 C.F.R. 200.325(b)*

*Contract Cost  
and Price*

The district must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action in excess of the simplified acquisition threshold including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, the district must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals.

The district must negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration must be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under the federal award are allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices would be allowable for the district under 2 C.F.R. Part 200, Subpart E. The district may reference its own cost principles that comply with the federal cost principles.

The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting must not be used.

*2 C.F.R. 200.324*

*Contract  
Provisions*

The district's contracts must contain the applicable provisions described in appendix II to 2 C.F.R. Part 200. *2 C.F.R. 200.327*

*Suspension and  
Debarment*

Districts are subject to the non-procurement debarment and suspension regulations at 2 C.F.R. Part 180. These regulations restrict awards, subawards, and contracts with certain parties that are debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in federal assistance programs or activities. *2 C.F.R. 200.214*

*Remedies for  
Noncompliance*

If a district fails to comply with the U.S. Constitution, federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of a federal award, the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may impose additional conditions, as described in 2 C.F.R. 200.208 (Specific Conditions). If the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that noncompliance cannot be remedied by imposing additional conditions, the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

1. Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the district or more severe enforcement action by the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.
2. Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and any applicable matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance.
3. Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the federal award.
4. Initiate suspension or debarment proceedings as authorized under 2 C.F.R. Part 180 and federal awarding agency regulations (or in the case of a pass-through entity, recommend such a proceeding be initiated by a federal awarding agency).
5. Withhold further federal awards for the project or program.
6. Take other remedies that may be legally available.

*2 C.F.R. 200.339*

*Travel Costs*

Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the district. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the district's non-federally funded activities and in accordance with the district's written travel reimbursement policies.

In the absence of an acceptable, written district policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under 5 U.S.C. 5701-11 (Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances), or by the administrator of general services, or by the president (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter

must apply to travel under federal awards [48 C.F.R. 31.205–46(a)].

*2 C.F.R. 200.475(a), (d)*

*Property  
Standards*

Federally  
Owned Property

Title to federally owned property remains vested in the federal government. The district must submit annually an inventory listing of federally owned property in its custody to the federal awarding agency. Upon completion of the federal award or when the property is no longer needed, the district must report the property to the federal awarding agency for further federal agency utilization.

Exempt property means property acquired under a federal award where the federal awarding agency has chosen to vest title to the property to the district without further responsibility to the federal government, based upon the explicit terms and conditions of the federal award. The federal awarding agency may exercise this option when statutory authority exists. Absent statutory authority and specific terms and conditions of the federal award, title to exempt property acquired under the federal award remains with the federal government.

*2 C.F.R. 200.312(a), (c)*

Property Trust  
Relationship

Real property, equipment, and intangible property that are acquired or improved with a federal award must be held in trust by the district as trustee for the beneficiaries of the project or program under which the property was acquired or improved. The federal awarding agency may require the district to record liens or other appropriate notices of record to indicate that personal or real property has been acquired or improved with a federal award and that use and disposition conditions apply to the property. *2 C.F.R. 200.316*

Real Property

Subject to the requirements and conditions set forth in 2 C.F.R. 200.311, title to real property acquired or improved under a federal award will vest upon acquisition in the district.

Except as otherwise provided by federal statutes or by the federal awarding agency, real property will be used for the originally authorized purpose as long as needed for that purpose, during which time the district must not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the district must obtain disposition instructions from the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity. The instructions must provide for one of the following alternatives:

1. Retain title after compensating the federal awarding agency an amount determined under 2 C.F.R. 200.311(c)(1).

2. Sell the property and compensate the federal awarding agency an amount determined under 2 C.F.R. 200.311(c)(2).
3. Transfer title to the federal awarding agency or to a third party designated/approved by the federal awarding agency. The district is entitled to be paid an amount calculated by applying the district's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property (and cost of any improvements) to the current fair market value of the property.

*2 C.F.R. 200.311*

Equipment

*Title and Use*

Subject to the requirements and conditions set forth in 2 C.F.R. 200.313, title to equipment acquired under a federal award will vest upon acquisition in the district. Unless a statute specifically authorizes the federal agency to vest title in the district without further responsibility to the federal government, and the federal agency elects to do so, the title must be a conditional title. Title must vest in the district subject to the following conditions:

1. Use the equipment for the authorized purposes of the project during the period of performance, or until the property is no longer needed for the purposes of the project.
2. Not encumber the property without approval of the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.
3. Use and dispose of the property in accordance with the provisions below.

Equipment must be used by the district in the program or project for which it was acquired in accordance with 2 C.F.R. 200.313(c).

Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part under a federal award, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the requirements of 2 C.F.R. 200.313(d).

*Disposition*

If the district is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

When original or replacement equipment acquired under a federal award is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a federal awarding agency, except as otherwise provided in federal statutes, regulations, or federal awarding agency disposition instructions, the district must request disposition instructions from the federal awarding agency if required by the terms and conditions of the fed-

eral award. Disposition of the equipment will be made as prescribed in 2 C.F.R. 200.313(e), in accordance with federal awarding agency disposition instructions.

*2 C.F.R. 200.313*

Supplies

Title to supplies will vest in the district upon acquisition. If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding \$5,000 in total aggregate value upon termination or completion of the project or program and the supplies are not needed for any other federal award, the district must retain the supplies for use on other activities or sell them, but must, in either case, compensate the federal government for its share. The amount of compensation must be computed in the same manner as for equipment under 2 C.F.R. 200.313(e)(2).

*2 C.F.R. 200.314(a)*

Intangible  
Property

Title to intangible property acquired under a federal award vests upon acquisition in the district. The district must use that property for the originally-authorized purpose, and must not encumber the property without approval of the federal awarding agency. When no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, disposition of the intangible property must occur in accordance with the provisions in 2 C.F.R. 200.313(e). *2 C.F.R. 200.315(a)*

Direct Grant  
Programs

The regulations in 34 C.F.R. Part 75 apply to each direct grant program of the ED. *34 C.F.R. 75.1*

State-Administered  
Programs

The regulations in 34 C.F.R. Part 76 apply to each state-administered program of the ED. *34 C.F.R. 76.1*

General Education  
Provision Act

The regulations in 34 C.F.R. Part 81 govern the enforcement of legal requirements under applicable programs administered by the ED and implement Part E of the General Education Provisions Act (GEPA). *34 C.F.R. 81.1*

---

<sup>1</sup> TEA EDGAR Materials and Resources:

[https://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Grants/EDGAR\\_Materials\\_and\\_Resources/](https://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Grants/EDGAR_Materials_and_Resources/)

<sup>2</sup> ED EDGAR website:

<https://www2.ed.gov/policy/fund/reg/edgarReg/edgar.html>

<sup>3</sup> ED Uniform Guidance website:

<https://www2.ed.gov/policy/fund/guid/uniform-guidance/index.html>

<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>Board Authority.....</b>	<b>2</b>
	Delegation of Authority .....	2
	<b>Purchases Valued at or Above \$50,000 .....</b>	<b>2</b>
	Methods .....	2
	Site-Based Purchasing .....	6
	<b>Contract Selection Factors.....</b>	<b>6</b>
	Preferences .....	7
	<b>Notice Publication.....</b>	<b>9</b>
	<b>Electronic Bids or Proposals .....</b>	<b>9</b>
	<b>Right to Work .....</b>	<b>9</b>
	<b>Contract with Person Indebted to District.....</b>	<b>9</b>
	<b>Out-of-State Bidders .....</b>	<b>10</b>
	<b>Professional Services.....</b>	<b>10</b>
	Professional Services Procurement Act.....	11
	Contingent Fee Contract for Legal Services .....	11
	<b>Specific Purchases .....</b>	<b>12</b>
	Computers.....	12
	Automated Information System.....	12
	Automated External Defibrillators .....	12
	Insurance .....	12
	<b>Other Purchasing Methods .....</b>	<b>13</b>
	State Purchasing Program.....	13
	Multiple Award Contract Schedule .....	14
	Cooperative Purchasing Program.....	14
	<b>Commitment of Current Revenue .....</b>	<b>15</b>
	<b>Change Orders .....</b>	<b>15</b>
	<b>Criminal Offenses .....</b>	<b>15</b>
	Removal from Office.....	16
	<b>Injunction.....</b>	<b>16</b>

---

**Note:** For legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

For required vendor disclosures and contract provisions, including prohibitions, see CHE.

For provisions pertaining to criminal history record information on contractors, see CJA.

For legal requirements related to energy savings performance contracts, see CL.

For information on procuring school buses, see CNB.

For legal requirements applicable to school nutrition procurement, including produce, with federal funds, see COA.

For information regarding construction of school facilities, see CV series.

---

**Board Authority**

The board may adopt rules and procedures for the acquisition of goods and services. *Education Code 44.031(d)*

Delegation of Authority

The board may, as appropriate, delegate its authority regarding an action authorized or required by Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, to be taken by a district to a designated person, representative, or committee.

The board may not delegate the authority to act regarding an action authorized or required to be taken by the board by Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B.

*Disaster Delegation*

Notwithstanding any other provision of the Education Code, in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting a district, the board may delegate to the superintendent or designated person the authority to contract for the replacement, construction, or repair of school equipment or facilities under Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B if emergency replacement, construction, or repair is necessary for the health and safety of district students and staff.

*Education Code 44.0312*

**Purchases Valued at or Above \$50,000**

Methods

Except as provided by Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, all district contracts for the purchase of goods and services, except contracts for the purchase of produce or vehicle fuel, valued at \$50,000 or more in the aggregate for each 12-month period, shall be made by the method, of the following methods, that provides the best value for a district:

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION

CH  
(LEGAL)

1. Competitive bidding for services other than construction services.
2. Competitive sealed proposals for services other than construction services.
3. A request for proposals for services other than construction services.
4. An interlocal contract.
5. A method provided by Government Code Chapter 2269 for construction services [see CV series];
6. The reverse auction procedure as defined by Government Code 2155.062(d).
7. The formation of a political subdivision corporation under Local Government Code 304.001 (purchase of electricity).

*Education Code 44.031(a)*

*Exceptions*

Emergency  
Damage or  
Destruction

If school equipment, a school facility, or a part of a school facility or personal property is destroyed or severely damaged or, as a result of an unforeseen catastrophe or emergency, undergoes major operational or structural failure, and the board determines that the delay posed by the methods provided for in Education Code 44.031 would prevent or substantially impair the conduct of classes or other essential school activities, then contracts for the replacement or repair of the equipment, school facility, or the part of the school facility may be made by methods other than those required by Education Code 44.031. *Education Code 44.031(h)*

Sole Source

Without complying with Education Code 44.031(a) above, a district may purchase an item that is available from only one source, including:

1. An item for which competition is precluded because of the existence of a patent, copyright, secret process, or monopoly.
2. A film, manuscript, or book.
3. A utility service, including electricity, gas, or water.
4. A captive replacement part or component for equipment.

The exceptions above do not apply to mainframe data-processing equipment and peripheral attachments with a single-item purchase price in excess of \$15,000.

*Education Code 44.031(j)–(k)*

*Competitive Bidding*

Except to the extent prohibited by other law and to the extent consistent with Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, a district may use competitive bidding to select a vendor as authorized by Education Code 44.031(a)(1).

A district shall award a competitively bid contract at the bid amount to the bidder offering the best value for the district. In determining the best value for the district, the district is not restricted to considering price alone but may consider any other factors stated in the selection criteria. The selection criteria may include the factors listed in Education Code 44.031(b) [see Contract Selection Factors, below].

Except as provided below, Local Government Code Chapter 271, Subchapter B (Competitive Bidding on Certain Public Works Contracts) does not apply to a competitive bidding process under this policy.

Local Government Code Sections 271.026 (Opening of Bids), 271.027(a) (Award of Contract), and 271.0275 (Safety Record of Bidder Considered) apply to a competitive bidding process under Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B. [See CVA for these requirements.]

*Education Code 44.0351*

*Competitive Sealed Proposals*

In selecting a vendor through competitive sealed proposals as authorized by Education Code 44.031(a)(2), a district shall follow the procedures prescribed below.

Request for Proposals

The district shall prepare a request for competitive sealed proposals that includes information that vendors may require to respond to the request. The district shall state in the request for proposals the selection criteria that will be used in selecting the successful offeror.

Opening Proposals

The district shall receive, publicly open, and read aloud the names of the offerors and, if any are required to be stated, all prices stated in each proposal. Not later than the 45th day after the date on which the proposals are opened, the district shall evaluate and rank each proposal submitted in relation to the published selection criteria.

Selection

The district shall select the offeror that offers the best value for the district based on the published selection criteria and on its ranking evaluation. The district shall first attempt to negotiate a contract with the selected offeror. The district may discuss with the selected offeror options for a scope or time modification and any price change associated with the modification. If the district is unable to

negotiate a satisfactory contract with the selected offeror, the district shall, formally and in writing, end negotiations with that offeror and proceed to the next offeror in the order of the selection ranking until a contract is reached or all proposals are rejected.

In determining the best value for the district, the district is not restricted to considering price alone but may consider any other factors stated in the selection criteria.

*Education Code 44.0352*

*Interlocal  
Contracts*

“Interlocal contract” means a contract or agreement made under Government Code Chapter 791 (Interlocal Cooperation Act). A district may contract or agree with another local government or a federally recognized Indian tribe, as listed by the U.S. secretary of the interior under 25 U.S.C. 479a-1, whose reservation is located within the boundaries of this state to perform governmental functions and services in accordance with Government Code Chapter 791. A district may agree with another local government and with the state or a state agency, including the comptroller, to purchase goods and services. *Gov’t Code 791.003(2), .011(a), .025(a)*

An interlocal contract must:

1. Be authorized by the governing body of each party to the contract;
2. State the purpose, terms, rights, and duties of the contracting parties; and
3. Specify that each party paying for the performance of governmental functions or services must make those payments from current revenues available to the paying party.

An interlocal contractual payment must be in an amount that fairly compensates the performing party for the services or functions performed under the contract. An interlocal contract may be renewed. Notwithstanding item 2 above, an interlocal contract may have a specified term of years.

*Gov’t Code 791.011(d)–(f), (i)*

A district may agree with another local government, including a nonprofit corporation that is created and operated to provide one or more governmental functions and services, or with the state or a state agency, including the comptroller, to purchase goods and any services reasonably required for the installation, operation, or maintenance of the goods. This provision does not apply to services provided by firefighters, police officers, or emergency medical personnel. *Gov’t Code 791.025(b)*

A district that purchases goods and services under Government Code 791.025 satisfies the requirement to seek competitive bids for the purchase of the goods and services. *Gov't Code 791.025(c); Atty. Gen. Op. JC-37 (1999)*

*Reverse Auction*

A district that uses the reverse auction procedure must include in the procedure a notice provision and other provisions necessary to produce a method of purchasing that is advantageous to the district and fair to vendors. *Local Gov't Code 271.906(b)*

“Reverse auction procedure” means:

1. A real-time bidding process usually lasting less than one hour and taking place at a previously scheduled time and internet location, in which multiple suppliers, anonymous to each other, submit bids to provide the designated goods or services; or
2. A bidding process usually lasting less than two weeks and taking place during a previously scheduled period and at a previously scheduled internet location, in which multiple suppliers, anonymous to each other, submit bids to provide the designated goods or services.

*Gov't Code 2155.062(d)*

Site-Based  
Purchasing

If a purchase is made at the campus level in a district with a student enrollment of 180,000 or more that has formally adopted a site-based decision-making plan under Education Code Subchapter F, Chapter 11 [see BQ series], that delegates purchasing decisions to the campus level, Education Code 44.031 applies only to the campus and does not require the district to aggregate and jointly award purchasing contracts. A district that adopts site-based purchasing under this provision shall adopt a policy to ensure that campus purchases achieve the best value to the district and are not intended or used to avoid the requirement that a district aggregate purchases under Education Code 44.031(a). *Education Code 44.031(m)*

**Contract Selection  
Factors**

Except as provided by Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, in determining to whom to award a contract, the district shall consider:

1. The purchase price.
2. The reputation of the vendor and of the vendor's goods or services.
3. The quality of the vendor's goods or services.

4. The extent to which the goods or services meet the district's needs.
5. The vendor's past relationship with the district.
6. The impact on the ability of the district to comply with laws and rules relating to historically underutilized businesses.
7. The total long-term cost to the district to acquire the vendor's goods or services.
8. For a contract for goods and services, other than goods and services related to telecommunications and information services, building construction and maintenance, or instructional materials, whether the vendor or the vendor's ultimate parent company or majority owner has its principal place of business in this state or employs at least 500 persons in this state.
9. Any other relevant factor specifically listed in the request for bids or proposals.

*Education Code 44.031(b)*

In awarding a contract by competitive sealed bid under Education Code 44.031, a district that has its central administrative office located in a municipality with a population of less than 250,000 may consider a bidder's principal place of business in the manner provided by Local Government Code 271.9051. This provision does not apply to the purchase of telecommunications services or information services, as those terms are defined by 47 U.S.C. Section 153. *Education Code 44.031(b-1)*

The factors listed above are the only criteria that may be considered by a district in its decision to award a contract. *R.G.V. Vending v. Weslaco Indep. Sch. Dist.*, 995 S.W.2d 897 (Tex. App.—Corpus Christi 1999, no pet.)

Preferences  
*Agricultural  
Products*

A district that purchases agricultural products shall give preference to those produced, processed, or grown in Texas if the cost to the district is equal and the quality is equal. If agricultural products produced, processed, or grown in Texas are not equal in cost and quality to other products, the district shall give preference to agricultural products produced, processed, or grown in other states of the United States, if the cost and quality of the U.S. and foreign products are equal.

"Agricultural products" includes textiles and other similar products.

"Processed" means canning, freezing, drying, juicing, preserving, or any other act that changes the form of a good from its natural state to another form.

A district may not adopt product purchasing specifications that unnecessarily exclude agricultural products produced, processed, or grown in Texas.

Vegetation for  
Landscaping

A district that purchases vegetation for landscaping purposes, including plants, shall give preference to Texas vegetation if the cost to the district is equal and the quality is equal.

*Education Code 44.042*

[For legal requirements applicable to school nutrition procurement, including produce and agricultural products, with federal funds, see COA.]

*Recycled  
Products*

A district shall give preference in purchasing to products made of recycled materials if the products meet applicable specifications as to quantity and quality and the average price of the product is not more than ten percent greater than the price of comparable nonrecycled products. Preferences will be applied in accordance with state procurement statutes and rules. *30 TAC 328.203*

Subchapter K of 30 Administrative Code (Governmental Entity Recycling and Purchasing of Recycled Materials) does not apply to a district with a student enrollment of less than 10,000 students. *30 TAC 328.204(a)*

A district regularly shall review and revise its procurement procedures and specifications for the purchase of goods, supplies, equipment, and materials in order to:

1. Eliminate procedures and specifications that explicitly discriminate against products made of recycled materials;
2. Encourage the use of products made of recycled materials; and
3. Ensure to the maximum extent economically feasible that the district purchases products that may be recycled when they have served their intended use.

In developing new procedures and specifications, the district shall encourage the use of recycled products and products that may be recycled or reused.

*Health and Safety Code 361.426(b)–(c)*

*Bidder's Place of  
Business*

In awarding a contract by competitive sealed bid under Education Code 44.031, a district that has its central administrative office located in a municipality with a population of less than 250,000 may consider a bidder's principal place of business in the manner provided by Local Government Code Section 271.9051. This provision

does not apply to the purchase of telecommunications services or information services, as those terms are defined by 47 U.S.C. 153. *Education Code 44.031(b-1)*

**Notice Publication**

Notice of the time by when and place where the bids or proposals, or the responses to a request for qualifications, will be received and opened shall be published in the county in which the district's central administrative office is located, once a week for at least two weeks before the deadline for receiving bids, proposals, or responses to a request for qualifications. If there is not a newspaper in that county, the advertising shall be published in a newspaper in the county nearest the county seat of the county in which a district's central administrative office is located. In a two-step procurement process, the time and place where the second-step bids, proposals, or responses will be received are not required to be published separately. *Education Code 44.031(g)*

**Electronic Bids or Proposals**

A district may receive bids or proposals under Education Code Chapter 44 through electronic transmission if the board adopts rules to ensure the identification, security, and confidentiality of electronic bids or proposals and to ensure that the electronic bids or proposals remain effectively unopened until the proper time.

Notwithstanding any other provision of Education Code Chapter 44, an electronic bid or proposal is not required to be sealed. A provision of Education Code Chapter 44 that applies to a sealed bid or proposal applies to a bid or proposal received through electronic transmission in accordance with the rules adopted by the board.

*Education Code 44.0313*

**Right to Work**

While a district is engaged in procuring goods and services or awarding a contract, or overseeing procurement or construction for a public work or public improvement, a district:

1. May not consider whether a vendor is a member of or has another relationship with any organization; and
2. Shall ensure that its bid specifications and any subsequent contract or other agreement do not deny or diminish the right of a person to work because of the person's membership or other relationship status with respect to any organization.

*Education Code 44.043*

**Contract with Person Indebted to District**

The board by resolution may establish regulations permitting the district to refuse to enter into a contract or other transaction with a person indebted to the district. It is not a violation of Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B (Purchases; Contracts) for a district, under regulations adopted under this provision, to refuse to

award a contract to or enter into a transaction with an apparent low bidder or successful proposer that is indebted to the district.

“Person” includes an individual, sole proprietorship, corporation, nonprofit corporation, partnership, joint venture, limited liability company, and any other entity that proposes or otherwise seeks to enter into a contract or other transaction with the district requiring approval by the board.

*Education Code 44.044*

**Out-of-State Bidders**

A district may not award a governmental contract to a nonresident bidder unless the nonresident underbids the lowest bid submitted by a responsible resident bidder by an amount that is not less than the greater of the amount by which a resident bidder would be required to underbid the nonresident bidder to obtain a comparable contract in the state in which the nonresident’s principal place of business is located, or the state in which a majority of the manufacturing relating to the contract will be performed. *Gov’t Code 2252.002*

This requirement does not apply to a contract involving federal funds. A district shall use the information published by the comptroller under Government Code 2252.003 (Publication of Other State’s Laws on Contracts) to evaluate the bid of a nonresident bidder. A district may rely on information published under Government Code 2252.003 to meet the requirements of Government Code 2252.002. *Gov’t Code 2252.003-.004*

“Governmental contract” means a contract awarded by a governmental entity, including a public school district, for general construction, an improvement, a service, or a public works project or for a purchase of supplies, materials, or equipment.

“Resident bidder” refers to a person whose principal place of business is in this state, including a contractor whose ultimate parent company or majority owner has its principal place of business in this state.

*Gov’t Code 2252.001*

**Professional Services**

Education Code 44.031 does not apply to a contract for professional services rendered, including the services of an architect, attorney, certified public accountant, engineer, or fiscal agent. A district may, at its option, contract for professional services rendered by a financial consultant or a technology consultant in the manner provided by Government Code 2254.003 (Professional Services Procurement Act) (see below), in lieu of the methods provided by Education Code 44.031. *Education Code 44.031(f)*

Professional  
Services  
Procurement Act

*Selection*

A district may not select a provider of professional services or a group or association of providers or award a contract for the services on the basis of competitive bids submitted for the contract or for the services, but shall make the selection and award on the basis of demonstrated competence and qualifications to perform the services and for a fair and reasonable price. *Gov't Code 2254.003(a)*

*Definition*

"Professional services" means services:

1. Within the scope of the practice, as defined by state law, of accounting, architecture, landscape architecture, land surveying, medicine, optometry, professional engineering, real estate appraising, or professional nursing;
2. Provided in connection with the professional employment or practice of a person who is licensed or registered as a certified public accountant, architect, landscape architect, land surveyor, physician, optometrist, professional engineer, state-certified or state-licensed real estate appraiser, or registered nurse; or
3. Provided by a person lawfully engaged in interior design, regardless of whether the person is registered as an interior designer under Occupations Code Chapter 1053.

*Gov't Code 2254.002*

[For specific information on procuring architectural or engineering services, see CV.]

Contingent Fee  
Contract for Legal  
Services

Government Code Chapter 2254, Subchapter C provides the manner in which and the situations under which a district may compensate a public contractor under a contingent fee for legal services. That subchapter does not apply to a contract for legal services:

1. Provided to a district under Government Code Chapter 403, Subchapter M; or
2. Entered into under Tax Code 6.30 (delinquent tax collection) [see CCGA(LEGAL)] or Government Code 1201.027 (issuance of public securities) [see CCA(LEGAL)], except that Government Code sections 2254.1032, 2254.1034, 2254.1036, and 2254.1037 do apply to the contract.

*Gov't Code 2254.102*

A district may select an attorney or law firm to award a contingent fee contract only in accordance with Government Code 2254.003(a) (Professional Services Procurement Act) [see Selection, above] and Government Code 2254.1032.

In procuring legal services under a contingent fee contract, a district shall:

1. Select a well-qualified attorney or law firm on the basis of demonstrated competence, qualifications, and experience in the requested services; and
2. Attempt to negotiate a contract with that attorney or law firm for a fair and reasonable price.

*Gov't Code 2254.1032*

**Specific Purchases**

Computers

A district may acquire computers and computer-related equipment, including computer software, through the Department of Information Resources (DIR) under contracts entered into in accordance with Government Code Chapter 2054 or 2157. *Education Code 44.031(i)*

Automated Information System

A district may purchase an automated information system using the purchasing method described by Government Code 2157.068 for commodity items or a purchasing method designated by the comptroller to obtain the best value for the state, including a request for offers method. A district that purchases an item using a method described above satisfies any state law requiring the district to seek competitive bids for the purchase of the item. *Gov't Code 2157.006; 34 TAC 20.391*

Automated External Defibrillators

A district that purchases or leases an automated external defibrillator (AED), as defined by Health and Safety Code 779.001, shall ensure that the AED meets standards established by the federal Food and Drug Administration. *Education Code 44.047(a)*

Insurance

A contract for the purchase of insurance is not a contract for professional services. A district must award such a contract using one of the methods in Education Code 44.031. *Atty. Gen. Op. DM-418 (1996)*

*Multiyear Contracts*

A district may execute an insurance contract for a period longer than 12 months, if the contract complies with Local Government Code 271.903(a) [see Commitment of Current Revenue, below]. If a district executes a multiyear insurance contract, it need not advertise for insurance vendors until the 12-month period during which the district will be executing a new insurance contract. *Atty. Gen. Op. DM-418 (1996)*

**Other Purchasing  
Methods**

The comptroller shall establish a program by which the comptroller performs purchasing services for local governments. The services must include:

State Purchasing  
Program

1. The extension of state contract prices to participating local governments when the comptroller considers it feasible.
2. Solicitation of bids on items desired by local governments if the solicitation is considered feasible by the comptroller and is desired by the local government.
3. Provision of information and technical assistance to local governments about the purchasing program.

The comptroller may charge a participating local government an amount not to exceed the actual costs incurred by the comptroller in providing purchasing services to the local government under the program.

*Local Gov't Code 271.082*

*District  
Participation*

A district may participate in the purchasing program, including participation in purchases that use the reverse auction procedure, by filing with the comptroller a resolution adopted by the board requesting that the district be allowed to participate on a voluntary basis, and to the extent the comptroller deems feasible, and stating that the district will:

1. Designate an official to act for the district in all matters relating to the program, including the purchase of items from the vendor under any contract, and that the board will direct the decisions of the representative;
2. Be responsible for:
  - a. Submitting requisitions to the comptroller under any contract; or
  - b. Electronically sending purchase orders directly to vendors, or complying with procedures governing a reverse auction purchase, and electronically sending to the comptroller reports on actual purchases made under this provision that provide the information and are sent at the times required by the comptroller;
3. Be responsible for making payment directly to the vendor;
4. Be responsible for the vendor's compliance with all conditions of delivery and quality of the purchased item.

A district that purchases an item under a state contract or under a reverse auction procedure, sponsored by the comptroller satisfies

any state law requiring the district to seek competitive bids for the purchase of the item.

*Local Gov't Code 271.083*

Multiple Award  
Contract Schedule

The comptroller shall develop a schedule of multiple award contracts that have been previously awarded using a competitive process by the federal government or any other governmental entity in any state. *Gov't Code 2155.502(a)*

A district may purchase goods or services directly from a vendor under a contract listed on a schedule developed under Government Code Chapter 2155, Subchapter I. A district contracting for the purchase of an automated information system under a contract listed on a schedule shall comply with Government Code 2157.068(e-1) (Purchase of Information Technology Commodity Items) [see Automated Information System, above]. A purchase authorized by this provision satisfies any requirement of state law relating to competitive bids or proposals.

The price listed for a good or service under a multiple award contract is a maximum price. A district may negotiate a lower price for goods or services under a contract listed on a schedule developed under Government Code Chapter 2155, Subchapter I.

*Gov't Code 2155.504*

Cooperative  
Purchasing  
Program

A district may participate in a cooperative purchasing program with another local government of this state or another state or with a local cooperative organization of this state or another state. A district that is participating in a cooperative purchasing program may sign an agreement with another participating local government or a local cooperative organization stating that the district will:

1. Designate a person to act under the direction of, or on behalf of, the district in all matters relating to the program;
2. Make payments to another participating local government or local cooperative organization or directly to a vendor under a contract made under these provisions, as provided in the agreement between the participating local governments or between a local government and a local cooperative organization; and
3. Be responsible for the vendor's compliance relating to the quality of items and terms of delivery, to the extent provided in the agreement between the participating local governments or between a local government and a local cooperative organization.

A district that purchases goods or services under these provisions satisfies any state law requiring the district to seek competitive bids for the purchase of the goods or services.

*Local Gov't Code 271.102; Atty. Gen. Op. JC-37 (1999)*

*Cooperative  
Purchasing  
Contract Fees*

A district that enters into a purchasing contract valued at \$25,000 or more under Education Code 44.031(a)(5) (interlocal contract), under Local Government Code Chapter 271, Subchapter F (cooperative purchasing program), or under any other cooperative purchasing program authorized for school districts by law shall document any contract-related fee, including any management fee, and the purpose of each fee under the contract.

The amount, purpose, and disposition of any fee described above must be presented in a written report and submitted annually in an open meeting of the board. The written report must appear as an agenda item. The commissioner of education may audit the written report.

*Education Code 44.0331*

**Commitment of  
Current Revenue**

If a contract for the acquisition, including lease, of real or personal property retains to the board the continuing right to terminate at the expiration of each budget period during the term of the contract, is conditioned on a best efforts attempt by the board to obtain and appropriate funds for payment of the contract, or contains both the continuing right to terminate and the best efforts conditions, the contract is a commitment of a district's current revenue only. *Local Gov't Code 271.903*

**Change Orders**

For provisions regarding change orders, see CV.

**Criminal Offenses**

An officer, employee, or agent of a district commits an offense if the person with criminal negligence makes or authorizes separate, sequential, or component purchases to avoid the requirements of Education Code 44.031(a) or (b). An offense under this provision is a Class B misdemeanor and is an offense involving moral turpitude.

"Component purchases" means purchases of the component parts of an item that in normal purchasing practices would be made in one purchase. "Separate purchases" means purchases, made separately, of items that in normal purchasing practices would be made in one purchase. "Sequential purchases" means purchases, made over a period, of items that in normal purchasing practices would be made in one purchase.

*Education Code 44.032(a)-(b)*

An officer, employee, or agent of a district commits an offense if the person with criminal negligence violates Education Code 44.031(a) or (b) other than by conduct described by Education Code 44.032(b). An offense under this provision is a Class B misdemeanor and is an offense involving moral turpitude. *Education Code 44.032(c)*

An officer or employee of a district commits an offense if the officer or employee knowingly violates Education Code 44.031, other than by conduct described by Education Code 44.032(b) or (c). An offense under this provision is a Class C misdemeanor. *Education Code 44.032(d)*

Removal from  
Office

The final conviction of a person other than a trustee of a district for an offense under Education Code 44.032(b) or (c) above results in the immediate removal from office or employment of that person. A trustee who is convicted of an offense under Education Code 44.032 is considered to have committed official misconduct for purposes of Local Government Code Chapter 87, and is subject to removal as provided by that chapter and Texas Constitution Article V, Section 24. For four years after the date of the final conviction, the removed person is ineligible to be a candidate for or to be appointed or elected to a public office in Texas, is ineligible to be employed by or act as an agent for the state or a political subdivision of the state, and is ineligible to receive any compensation through a contract with the state or a political subdivision of the state. *Education Code 44.032(e)*

**Injunction**

A court may enjoin performance of a contract made in violation of Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B. A county attorney, district attorney, criminal district attorney, citizen of the county in which the district is located, or any interested party may bring an action for an injunction. A party who prevails in an action brought under this provision is entitled to reasonable attorney's fees as approved by the court. *Education Code 44.032(f)*

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION

CH  
(LOCAL)

**Purchasing  
Authority**

The Board delegates to the Superintendent the authority to make budgeted purchases for goods or services. However, any single, budgeted purchase of goods or services that costs \$100,000 or more, regardless of whether the goods or services are competitively purchased, shall require Board approval before a transaction may take place, except as otherwise provided in this policy.

[See CV regarding construction expenditures]

The Superintendent shall not be required to obtain Board approval for the following types of budgeted purchases that cost \$100,000 or more, but shall subsequently report them to the Board:

1. A purchase made pursuant to a Board-approved interlocal contract, in accordance with law.
2. A purchase made through a cooperative purchasing program, in accordance with law.
3. A purchase made through a state purchasing program that satisfies the District's obligation for competitive purchasing. [See CH(LEGAL) or CBB(LEGAL), as appropriate]
4. A purchase for produce or fuel.

**Exception for  
Emergency  
Contracts**

In the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting the District, the Board delegates to the Superintendent the authority to contract for the replacement, construction, or repair of school equipment or facilities in accordance with law, if emergency replacement, construction, or repair is necessary for the health and safety of District students and staff. The Superintendent shall report to the Board at the next regular meeting any contract made under this authority. [See Disaster Exception, CH(LEGAL)]

The delegation regarding emergency contracts does not waive competitive purchasing requirements under Education Code Chapter 44. Only the Board is authorized to waive competitive purchasing requirements under limited circumstances in accordance with Education Code 44.031(h). [See Emergency Damage or Destruction, CH(LEGAL)]

**Purchasing  
Procedures**

The Superintendent shall develop purchasing procedures to implement the requirements of state and federal law. [See also CB, CBB, CH(LEGAL), and COA]

**Purchasing Method**

The Board delegates to the Superintendent the authority to determine the method of purchasing in accordance with CH(LEGAL) or CBB(LEGAL), as appropriate.

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION

CH  
(LOCAL)

*Competitive  
Bidding*

If competitive bidding is chosen as the purchasing method, the Superintendent shall prepare bid specifications. All bids shall be in accordance with administrative regulations, and the submission of any electronic bids shall also be in accordance with Board-adopted rules. All bidders shall be invited to attend the bid opening. Any bid may be withdrawn prior to the scheduled time for opening. Bids received after the specified time shall not be considered.

The District may reject any and all bids in accordance with state or federal law, as applicable.

*Competitive  
Sealed Proposals*

If competitive sealed proposals are chosen as the purchasing method, the Superintendent shall prepare the request for proposals and/or specifications for items to be purchased. All proposals shall be in accordance with administrative regulations, and the submission of any electronic proposals shall also be in accordance with Board-adopted rules. Proposals received after the specified time shall not be considered. Proposals shall be opened at the time specified, and all proposers shall be invited to attend the proposal opening. Proposals may be withdrawn prior to the scheduled time of opening. Changes in the content of a proposal, and in prices, may be negotiated after proposals are opened.

The District may reject any and all proposals in accordance with state or federal law, as applicable.

Electronic Bids or  
Proposals

Bids or proposals that the District has chosen to accept through electronic transmission shall be administered in accordance with Board-adopted rules. Such rules shall safeguard the integrity of the competitive procurement process; ensure the identification, security, and confidentiality of electronic bids or proposals; and ensure that the electronic bids or proposals remain effectively unopened until the proper time.

**Responsibility for  
Debts**

The Board shall assume responsibility for debts incurred in the name of the District so long as those debts are for purchases made in accordance with the adopted budget, state law, Board policy, and the District's purchasing procedures. [See CE] The Board shall not be responsible for debts incurred by persons or organizations not directly under Board control. Persons making unauthorized purchases shall assume full responsibility for all such debts.

**Purchase  
Commitments**

All purchase commitments shall be made by the Superintendent in accordance with administrative procedures, including the District's purchasing procedures.

**Personal Purchases**

District employees shall not be permitted to make purchases for personal use through the District's business office.

---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

---

**Required Vendor Disclosures**

Disclosure of Interested Parties

A district may not enter into a contract described below with a business entity unless the business entity submits a disclosure of interested parties to the district at the time the business entity submits the signed contract to the district.

The requirement above applies only to a contract of a district that:

1. Requires an action or vote by the board before the contract may be signed;
2. Has a value of at least \$1 million; or
3. Is for services that would require a person to register as a lobbyist under Government Code Chapter 305.

*Gov't Code 2252.908*

A contract does not require an action or vote by the board if the board has legal authority to delegate to its staff the authority to execute the contract, the board has delegated this authority, and the board does not participate in the selection of the business entity with which the contract is entered into. *1 TAC 46.1(c)*

*Exclusions*

The disclosure requirement does not apply to a contract with:

1. A publicly traded business entity, including a wholly owned subsidiary of the entity;
2. An electric utility, as defined by Utilities Code 31.002; or
3. A gas utility, as defined by Utilities Code 121.001.

*Gov't Code 2252.908(c)(4)–(6)*

*Required Form*

The disclosure of interested parties must be submitted on a form prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission (TEC) that includes a list of each interested party for the contract of which the contracting business entity is aware; and a written, unsworn declaration subscribed by the authorized agent of the contracting business entity as true under penalty of perjury that is in substantially the form set out in Government Code 2252.908(e)(2). *Gov't Code 2252.908(e); 1 TAC 46.5(a)*

The certification of filing and the completed disclosure of interested parties form generated by TEC's electronic filing application must be printed, signed by an authorized agent of the contracting business entity, and submitted to the district that is the party to the contract for which the form is being filed. *1 TAC 46.5(b)*

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION  
VENDOR DISCLOSURES AND CONTRACTS

CHE  
(LEGAL)

<i>Deadline</i>	<p>A district that receives a completed disclosure of interested parties form and certification of filing shall notify TEC, in an electronic format prescribed by TEC, of the receipt of those documents not later than the 30th day after the date the board receives the disclosure. <i>1 TAC 46.5(c); Gov't Code 2252.908(f)</i></p>
<i>Contract Changes</i>	<p>The disclosure requirements do not apply to a change made to an existing contract, including an amendment, change order, or extension of a contract except as set out below.</p> <p>The disclosure requirements apply to a change made to an existing contract, including an amendment, change order, or extension of a contract if:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. A disclosure of interested parties form was not filed for the existing contract; and either the changed contract requires an action or vote by the board or the value of the changed contract is at least \$1 million; or</li><li>2. The business entity submitted a disclosure of interested parties form to the district that is a party to the existing contract; and either there is a change to the disclosure; or the changed contract requires an action or vote by the board; or the value of the changed contract is at least \$1 million greater than the value of the existing contract.</li></ol> <p><i>1 TAC 46.4</i></p>
<i>Definitions</i>	<p>“Contract” means a contract between a board and a business entity at the time it is voted on by the board or at the time it binds the board, whichever is earlier, and includes an amended, extended, or renewed contract. <i>1 TAC 46.3(a)</i></p> <p>“Business entity” means any entity recognized by law through which business is conducted, including a sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation. The term includes an entity through which business is conducted with a district, regardless of whether the entity is a for-profit or nonprofit entity, and does not include a governmental entity or state agency. <i>Gov't Code 2252.908(a)(1); 1 TAC 46.3(b)</i></p> <p>“Interested party” means a person who has a controlling interest in a business entity with whom a district contracts or who actively participates in facilitating the contract or negotiating the terms of the contract, including a broker, intermediary, adviser, or attorney for the business entity. <i>Gov't Code 2252.908(a)(3); 1 TAC 46.3(d), (e)</i></p> <p>“Controlling interest” means:</p>

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION  
VENDOR DISCLOSURES AND CONTRACTS

CHE  
(LEGAL)

1. An ownership interest or participating interest in a business entity by virtue of units, percentage, shares, stock, or otherwise that exceeds ten percent;
2. Membership on the board of directors or other governing body of a business entity of which the board or other governing body is composed of not more than ten members; or
3. Service as an officer of a business entity that has four or fewer officers, or service as one of the four officers most highly compensated by a business entity that has more than four officers. This provision does not apply to an officer of a publicly held business entity or its wholly owned subsidiaries.

*1 TAC 46.3(c)*

“Signed” includes any symbol executed or adopted by a person with present intention to authenticate a writing, including an electronic signature. *1 TAC 46.3(f)*

“Value” of a contract is based on the amount of consideration received or to be received by the business entity from the district under the contract. *1 TAC 46.3(g)*

Conflict of Interest  
Questionnaire

---

**Note:** See BBFA for additional information applicable to disclosures under Local Government Code Chapter 176, including:

- Definitions;
- Conflicts disclosure statements required to be filed by certain local government officers, including vendors who are also local government officers; and
- Internet posting requirements for conflicts disclosure statements and questionnaires.

---

A vendor shall file a completed conflict of interest questionnaire if the vendor has a business relationship with the district and:

1. Has an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer of the district, or a family member of the officer, described by Local Government Code 176.003(a)(2)(A);
2. Has given a local government officer of the district, or a family member of the officer, one or more gifts with the aggregate value specified by Local Government Code 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding any gift described by Local Government Code 176.003(a-1); or

3. Has a family relationship with a local government officer of the district.

*Local Gov't Code 176.006(a)*

The completed conflict of interest questionnaire must be filed with the appropriate records administrator not later than the seventh business day after the later of:

1. The date that the vendor:
  - a. Begins discussions or negotiations to enter into a contract with a district;
  - b. Submits to the district an application, response to a request for proposals or bids, correspondence, or another writing related to a potential contract with the district; or
2. The date the vendor becomes aware:
  - a. Of an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer, or a family member of the officer described by Local Government Code 176.006(a);
  - b. That the person has given one or more gifts described by Local Government Code 176.006(a); or
  - c. Of a family relationship with a local government officer.

*Local Gov't Code 176.006(a-1)*

*Updating  
Incomplete or  
Inaccurate  
Questionnaires*

A vendor shall file an updated completed questionnaire with the appropriate records administrator not later than the seventh business day after the date on which the vendor becomes aware of an event that would make a statement in the questionnaire incomplete or inaccurate. *Local Gov't Code 176.006(d)*

*Validity of  
Contract*

The validity of a contract between a vendor and the district is not affected solely because the vendor fails to comply with these requirements. *Local Gov't Code 176.006(i)*

**Required Contract Provisions**

No Israel Boycott

A district may not enter into a contract with a company for goods and services unless the contract contains a written verification from the company that it does not boycott Israel and will not during the term of the contract.

The requirement above applies only to a contract that:

1. Is between a district and a company with ten or more full-time employees; and

2. Has a value of \$100,000 or more that is to be paid wholly or partly from public funds of the district.

*Gov't Code 2271.002*

“Company” has the meaning assigned by Government Code 808.001, except that the term does not include a sole proprietorship. *Gov't Code 2271.001(2)*

Retention of  
Contracting  
Information  
*Application*

These provisions apply to a contract that:

1. Has a stated expenditure of at least \$1 million in public funds for the purchase of goods or services by the district; or
2. Results in the expenditure of at least \$1 million in public funds for the purchase of goods or services by the district in a fiscal year of the district.

A board may not accept a bid for a contract described above or award the contract to an entity that the board has determined has knowingly or intentionally failed to comply with Government Code Chapter 552, Subchapter J (Additional Provisions Relating to Contracting Information) in a previous bid or contract described above unless the board determines and documents that the entity has taken adequate steps to ensure future compliance with the requirements of that subchapter. [For additional information and requirements, see GBA and GBAA.]

*Requirements*

A contract described above must require a contracting entity to:

1. Preserve all contracting information related to the contract as provided by the records retention requirements applicable to the district for the duration of the contract;
2. Promptly provide to the district any contracting information related to the contract that is in the custody or possession of the entity on request of the district; and
3. On completion of the contract, either:
  - a. Provide at no cost to the district all contracting information related to the contract that is in the custody or possession of the entity; or
  - b. Preserve the contracting information related to the contract as provided by the records retention requirements applicable to the district.

*Bid and Contract  
Language*

Except as described at Exception, below, a bid for a contract described above and the contract must include the following statement: “The requirements of Subchapter J, Chapter 552, Government Code, may apply to this (include “bid” or “contract” as

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION  
VENDOR DISCLOSURES AND CONTRACTS

CHE  
(LEGAL)

applicable) and the contractor or vendor agrees that the contract can be terminated if the contractor or vendor knowingly or intentionally fails to comply with a requirement of that subchapter.”

*Notice of  
Noncompliance*

A board that is the party to a contract described above shall provide notice to the entity that is a party to the contract if the entity fails to comply with a requirement of Government Code Chapter 552, Subchapter J applicable to the entity. The notice must:

1. Be in writing;
2. State the requirement that the entity has violated; and
3. Unless the exception described below applies, advise the entity that the board may terminate the contract without further obligation to the entity if the entity does not cure the violation on or before the tenth business day after the date the board provides the notice.

*Contract  
Termination*

Except as provided below, a governmental body may terminate a contract described above if:

1. The board provides the required notice to the entity that is party to the contract;
2. The contracting entity does not cure the violation in the prescribed period;
3. The board determines that the contracting entity has intentionally or knowingly failed to comply with a requirement of Government Code Chapter 552, Subchapter J; and
4. The board determines that the entity has not taken adequate steps to ensure future compliance with the requirements of that subchapter.

An entity has taken adequate steps to ensure future compliance with Government Code Chapter 552, Subchapter J if:

1. The entity produces contracting information requested by the board that is in the custody or possession of the entity not later than the tenth business day after the date the board makes the request; and
2. The entity establishes a records management program to enable the entity to comply with Government Code Chapter 552, Subchapter J.

*Exception*

A board may not terminate a contract under these provisions if the contract is related to the purchase or underwriting of a public security, the contract is or may be used as collateral on a loan, or the

contract's proceeds are used to pay debt service of a public security or loan.

*Gov't Code 552.371(a), .372–.374* [See GBA]

**Prohibitions**

Entertainment  
Event Contracts

A person, including a board, may not include a provision in a contract related to a parade, concert, or other entertainment event paid for in whole or in part with public funds that prohibits or would otherwise prevent the disclosure of information relating to the receipt or expenditure of public or other funds by a board for the event. A contract provision that violates Government Code 552.104(c) is void. *Gov't Code 552.104(c)* [See GBA for information related to competition or bidding.]

Taxpayer Resource  
Transactions

A district may not enter into a taxpayer resource transaction with an abortion provider or an affiliate of an abortion provider. *Gov't Code 2272.003(a)*

“Taxpayer resource transaction” means a sale, purchase, lease, donation of money, goods, services, or real property, or any other transaction between a governmental entity and a private entity that provides to the private entity something of value derived from state or local tax revenue, regardless of whether the governmental entity receives something of value in return.

“Affiliate” means a person or entity who enters into with another person or entity a legal relationship created or governed by at least one written instrument, including a certificate of formation, a franchise agreement, standards of affiliation, bylaws, or a license, that demonstrates:

1. Common ownership, management, or control between the parties to the relationship;
2. A franchise granted by the person or entity to the affiliate; or
3. The granting or extension of a license or other agreement authorizing the affiliate to use the other person's or entity's brand name, trademark, service mark, or other registered identification mark.

*Gov't Code 2272.001(3), (5)*

Lobbying  
Restriction—  
Tobacco Education  
Grant Funds

A district receiving funds or grants from the Permanent Fund for Health and Tobacco Education and Enforcement may not use the funds to pay:

1. Lobbying expenses incurred by the district;

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION  
VENDOR DISCLOSURES AND CONTRACTS

CHE  
(LEGAL)

2. A person or entity that is required to register with the Texas Ethics Commission under Government Code Chapter 305 (Registration of Lobbyists);
3. Any partner, employee, employer, relative, contractor, consultant, or related entity of a person or entity described by item 2; or
4. A person or entity who has been hired to represent associations or other entities for the purpose of affecting the outcome of legislation, agency rules, ordinances, or other government policies.

*Gov't Code 403.1067(a)*

Prohibited  
Contracts

A district may not enter into a governmental contract with a company identified on a list prepared and maintained under Government Code 806.051 (now Government Code 2270.0201) (companies with business operations in Sudan), 807.051 (now Government Code 2270.0102) (companies with business operations in Iran), and 2252.153 (companies known to have contracts with or provide supplies or services to foreign terrorist organization). *Gov't Code 2252.152*

“Governmental contract” means a contract awarded by a governmental entity for general construction, an improvement, a service, or a public works project or for a purchase of supplies, materials, or equipment. The term includes a contract to obtain professional services subject to Government Code 2254. *Gov't Code 2252.151(3)*

**Reduction of Energy Consumption**

The board shall establish a long-range energy plan to reduce the district's annual electric consumption by five percent beginning with the 2008 state fiscal year and consume electricity in subsequent fiscal years in accordance with the district's energy plan. The plan must include:

1. Strategies for achieving energy efficiency that:
  - a. Result in net savings for the district; or
  - b. Can be achieved without financial cost to the district; and
2. For each strategy identified above, the initial, short-term capital costs and lifetime costs and savings that may result from implementation of the strategy.

A strategy for achieving energy efficiency includes facility design and construction.

In determining whether a strategy may result in financial cost to the district, the board shall consider the total net costs and savings that may occur over the seven-year period following implementation of the strategy.

The board may submit the plan to the State Energy Conservation Office for the purposes of determining whether funds available through loan programs administered by the office or tax incentives administered by the state or federal government are available to the district. The board may not disallow any proper allocation of incentives.

*Education Code 44.902*

**Energy Savings Performance Contracts**

"Energy savings performance contract" has the meaning assigned by Local Government Code 302.001.

Each energy or water conservation measure must comply with current local, state, and federal construction, plumbing, and environmental codes and regulations. An energy savings performance contract may not include improvements or equipment that allow or cause water from any condensing, cooling, or industrial process or any system of nonpotable usage over which the public water supply system officials do not have sanitary control, to be returned to the potable water supply.

The board may enter into energy savings performance contracts only with persons who are experienced in the design, implementation, and installation of the energy or water conservation measures addressed by the contract.

Government Code Chapter 2269 (Contracting and Delivery Procedures for Construction Projects) does not apply to energy savings performance contracts.

**Performance Bond** Before entering an energy savings performance contract, the board shall require the provider of the energy or water conservation measures to file with the board a payment and performance bond relating to the installation of the measures in accordance with Government Code Chapter 2253 (Public Work Performance and Payment Bonds). The board may also require a separate bond to cover the value of the guaranteed savings on the contract.

**Financing** An energy savings performance contract may be financed:

1. Under a lease/purchase contract that has a term not to exceed 20 years from the final date of installation and that meets federal tax requirements for tax-free municipal leasing or long-term financing.
2. With the proceeds of bonds.
3. Under a contract with the provider of the energy or water conservation measures that has a term not to exceed the lesser of 20 years from the final date of installation or the average useful life of the energy or water conservation or usage measures.

Notwithstanding other law, the board may use any available money to pay the provider of the energy or water conservation measures under these provisions, and the board is not required to pay for such costs solely out of the savings realized by the district under an energy savings performance contract. The board may contract with the provider to perform work that is related to, connected with, or otherwise ancillary to the measures identified in the scope of an energy savings performance contract.

An energy savings performance contract shall contain provisions requiring the provider of the energy or water conservation measures to guarantee the amount of the savings to be realized by the district under the contract. If the term of an energy savings performance contract exceeds one year, the district's contractual obligations in any one year during the term of the contract beginning after the final date of installation may not exceed the total energy, water, wastewater, and operating cost savings, including electrical, gas, water, wastewater, or other utility cost savings and operating cost savings resulting from the measures as determined by the district, divided by the number of years in the contract term.

Contract  
Procurement

An energy savings performance contract shall be let according to the procedures established for professional services by Government Code 2254.004 (the Professional Services Procurement Act). [See CH] Notice of the request for qualifications shall be published in the manner provided for competitive bidding.

Cost Savings  
Review

Before entering into an energy savings performance contract, the board must require that the cost savings projected by an offeror be reviewed by a licensed professional engineer who has a minimum of three years of experience in energy calculation and review, is not an officer or employee of an offeror for the contract under review, and is not otherwise associated with the contract. In conducting the review, the engineer shall focus primarily on the proposed improvements from an engineering perspective, the methodology and calculations related to cost savings, increases in revenue, and, if applicable, efficiency or accuracy of metering equipment. An engineer who reviews a contract shall maintain the confidentiality of any proprietary information the engineer acquires while reviewing the contract. Occupations Code 1001.053 and 1001.407 (Texas Engineering Practice Act) apply to work performed under the contract.

*Education Code 44.901*

**Recycling Program**

A district shall:

1. Establish a program for the separation and collection of all recyclable materials generated by the district's operations.
2. Provide procedures for collecting and storing recyclable materials, containers for recyclable materials, and procedures for making contractual or other arrangements with buyers of recyclable materials.
3. Evaluate the amount of recyclable material recycled and modify the recycling program as necessary to ensure that all recyclable materials are effectively and practicably recycled.
4. Establish educational and incentive programs to encourage maximum employee participation.

*Health and Safety Code 361.425; 30 TAC 328.202*

Exemptions

These provisions do not apply to a school district with a student enrollment of less than 10,000 students.

A district may exclude one or more recyclable materials from their program if the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) finds that:

1. A recycling program for a recyclable material is not available through their solid waste provider; or
2. The inclusion of a recyclable material would create a hardship.

A district may request additional consideration from TCEQ if compliance with these provisions would create a hardship.

*30 TAC 328.204*

Definitions

“Hardship” means a circumstance that causes unreasonable burden on the governmental entity.

“Recyclable material” means a material generated by the entity's operations, including aluminum, steel containers, aseptic packaging and polycoated paperboard cartons, high-grade office paper, and corrugated cardboard.

*30 TAC 328.201(2), (3)*

**Pools**

Generally

For required public pool sanitation and safety standards, see Health and Safety Code 341.064 and .0645 and 25 Administrative Code 265.181–.211.

Drains

Each public pool and spa shall comply with the drain cover standards found at 15 U.S.C. Section 8003. “Public pool and spa” means a swimming pool or spa that is open to the public generally, whether for a fee or free of charge. *15 U.S.C. 8003*

<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>Definition .....</b>	<b>3</b>
	<b>Board Authority.....</b>	<b>3</b>
	Delegation of Authority .....	3
	<b>Contracts Valued at or Above \$50,000.....</b>	<b>3</b>
	Exceptions.....	4
	<b>Notice Publication.....</b>	<b>4</b>
	<b>Contract Selection Criteria .....</b>	<b>4</b>
	<b>Using Method Other Than Competitive Bidding .....</b>	<b>5</b>
	Determine Best Value .....	5
	Publish Criteria .....	5
	Make Evaluations Public .....	5
	<b>Submission .....</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>Right to Work .....</b>	<b>5</b>
	Collective Bargaining.....	6
	<b>Out-of-State Bidders .....</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>Change Orders .....</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>Inspection, Verification, and Testing .....</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>Impact Fees .....</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>Professional Services.....</b>	<b>7</b>
	Architects and Engineers.....	7
	Procuring Architectural or Engineering Services .....	9
	Contracts for Engineering or Architectural Services .....	9
	<b>Payment and Performance Bonds .....</b>	<b>10</b>
	Failure to Obtain Payment Bond.....	11
	Bond for Insured Loss .....	11
	<b>Prevailing Wage on Public Works.....</b>	<b>12</b>
	Enforcement.....	13
	Retainage and Reimbursement .....	13
	Penalty for Noncompliance .....	14
	Criminal Offense.....	14
	<b>Required Workers' Compensation Coverage.....</b>	<b>14</b>
	Exception .....	15
	Definitions .....	15
	<b>Criminal Offenses .....</b>	<b>15</b>

<b>Enforcement Actions .....</b>	<b>16</b>
Defects in Facilities.....	16
Attorney Fees .....	17
Construction Liability Claims.....	18

---

**Note:** For information on the new instructional facilities allotment, see CBA.

For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

For information on procuring goods and services under Education Code Chapter 44, see CH.

For required vendor disclosures and contract provisions, including prohibitions, see CHE.

For provisions pertaining to criminal history record information on contractors, see CJA(LEGAL).

For legal requirements related to energy savings performance contracts, see CL.

---

**Definition** “Public work contract” means a contract for constructing, altering, or repairing a public building or carrying out or completing any public work. *Gov’t Code 2253.001(4)*

**Board Authority** A district may adopt rules as necessary to implement Government Code Chapter 2269. *Gov’t Code 2269.051*

Delegation of Authority The board may delegate its authority under Government Code Chapter 2269 regarding an action authorized or required by Chapter 2269 to a designated representative, committee, or other person.

The district shall provide notice of the delegation, the limits of the delegation, and the name or title of each designated person by rule or in the request for bids, proposals, or qualifications or in an addendum to the request.

*Gov’t Code 2269.053*

[For information regarding delegation in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster, see CH.]

**Contracts Valued at or Above \$50,000** Except as provided by Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, all district contracts for the purchase of goods and services valued at \$50,000 or more in the aggregate for each 12-month period shall be made by the method, of the following methods, that provides the best value for a district [see also CH]:

1. An interlocal contract. *Education Code 44.031(a)(4)* [See CH]
2. A method provided by Government Code Chapter 2269 for construction services. *Education Code 44.031(a)(5)*

- a. Competitive bidding. *Gov't Code 2269 Subch. C* [See CVA]
  - b. Competitive sealed proposals. *Gov't Code 2269 Subch. D* [See CVB]
  - c. Construction manager-agent method. *Gov't Code 2269 Subch. E* [See CVC]
  - d. Construction manager-at-risk method. *Gov't Code 2269 Subch. F* [See CVD]
  - e. Design-build method. *Gov't Code 2269 Subch. G* [See CVE]
  - f. Job order contracting. *Gov't Code 2269 Subch. I* [See CVF]
3. The reverse auction procedure as defined by Government Code 2155.062(d). *Education Code 44.031(a)(6)* [See CH]

*Education Code 44.031(a); Gov't Code Ch. 2269*

**Exceptions**

*Emergency  
Damage or  
Destruction*

For information on procurement options when school equipment, a facility, or personal property is destroyed or severely damaged as a result of an unforeseen catastrophe or emergency, under Education Code 44.031, see CH.

*Contracts  
Requiring a Bond*

A reverse auction procedure may not be used to obtain services related to a public work contract for which a bond is required under Government Code 2253.021 [see Payment and Performance Bonds, below]. "Reverse auction procedure" has the meaning assigned by Government Code 2155.062 or a procedure similar to that described by Section 2155.062. *Gov't Code 2253.021(h)*

**Notice Publication**

A board shall advertise or publish notice of requests for bids, proposals, or qualifications in a manner prescribed by law.

For a contract entered into by a board under a method provided by Government Code 2269, the board shall publish notice of the time and place the bid or proposal or request for qualifications will be received and opened in a manner prescribed by law.

*Gov't Code 2269.052(a)–(b)*

[See CH for additional notice publication requirements.]

**Contract Selection  
Criteria**

In determining the award of a contract under Government Code Chapter 2269, the district shall consider and apply:

1. Any existing laws, including any criteria, related to historically underutilized businesses; and

2. Any existing laws, rules, or applicable municipal charters, including laws applicable to local governments, related to the use of women, minority, small, or disadvantaged businesses.

In determining the award of a contract, the district may consider:

1. The price.
2. The offeror's experience and reputation.
3. The quality of the offeror's goods or services.
4. The impact on the ability of the district to comply with rules relating to historically underutilized businesses.
5. The offeror's safety record.
6. The offeror's proposed personnel.
7. Whether the offeror's financial capability is appropriate to the size and scope of the project.
8. Any other relevant factor specifically listed in the request for bids, proposals, or qualifications.

*Gov't Code 2269.055*

**Using Method Other Than Competitive Bidding**

Determine Best Value

The board that considers a construction contract using a method authorized by Government Code Chapter 2269 other than competitive bidding must, before advertising, determine which method provides the best value for the district.

Publish Criteria

The district shall base its selection among offerors on applicable criteria listed for the particular method used. The district shall publish in the request for proposals or qualifications the criteria that will be used to evaluate the offerors and the applicable weighted value for each criterion.

Make Evaluations Public

The district shall document the basis of its selection and shall make the evaluations public not later than the seventh day after the date the contract is awarded.

*Gov't Code 2269.056*

**Submission**

A person who submits a bid, proposal, or qualification to a governmental entity shall seal it before delivery. *Gov't Code 2269.059*

**Right to Work**

While engaged in procuring goods or services, awarding a contract, or overseeing procurement or construction for a public work or public improvement under Government Code Chapter 2269, a district:

1. May not consider whether a person is a member of or has another relationship with any organization; and
2. Shall ensure that its bid specifications and any subsequent contract or other agreement do not deny or diminish the right of a person to work because of the person's membership or other relationship status with respect to an organization.

*Gov't Code 2269.054*

**Collective  
Bargaining**

A district awarding a public work contract funded with state money, including the issuance of debt guaranteed by the state, may not:

1. Prohibit, require, discourage, or encourage a person bidding on the public work contract, including a contractor or subcontractor, from entering into or adhering to an agreement with a collective bargaining organization relating to the project; or
2. Discriminate against a person described by item 1 based on the person's involvement in the agreement, including the person's status or lack of status as a party to the agreement or willingness or refusal to enter into the agreement.

*Gov't Code 2269.0541(a)*

**Out-of-State Bidders**

For legal requirements regarding out-of-state bidders, see CH.

**Change Orders**

If a change in plans or specifications is necessary after the performance of a contract is begun or if it is necessary to decrease or increase the quantity of work to be performed or of materials, equipment, or supplies to be furnished, the district may approve change orders making the changes. The district may grant general authority to an administrative official to approve the change orders.

The total contract price may not be increased because of the changes unless additional money for increased costs is approved for that purpose from available money or is provided for by the authorization of the issuance of time warrants.

A contract with an original contract price of \$1 million or more may not be increased by more than 25 percent. If a change order for a contract with an original contract price of less than \$1 million increases the contract amount to \$1 million or more, the total of the subsequent change orders may not increase the revised contract amount by more than 25 percent of the original contract price.

*Education Code 44.0411*

**Inspection,  
Verification, and  
Testing**

Independently of the contractor, construction manager-at-risk, or design-build firm, a district shall provide or contract for the construction materials engineering, testing, and inspection services

and the verification testing services necessary for acceptance of the facility by the district. The district shall select the services for which it contracts in accordance with Government Code 2254.004. *Gov't Code 2269.058*

**Impact Fees**

A district is not required to pay impact fees imposed under Local Government Code Chapter 395 unless the board consents to the payment of the fees by entering a contract with the political subdivision that imposes the fees. The contract may contain terms the board considers advisable to provide for the payment of the fees. *Local Gov't Code 395.022*

**Professional Services**

Architects and Engineers

An architect or engineer required to be selected or designated under Government Code Chapter 2269 has full responsibility for complying with Occupations Code Chapter 1051 or 1001, as applicable.

If the selected or designated architect or engineer is not a full-time employee of the district, the district shall select the architect or engineer on the basis of demonstrated competence and qualifications as provided by Government Code 2254.004 [see Procuring Professional Services, below].

*Gov't Code 2269.057*

*Registered Architect*

An architectural plan or specification for any of the following may be prepared only by an architect:

1. A new building having construction costs exceeding \$100,000 that is to be:
  - a. Constructed and owned by a district; and
  - b. Used for education, assembly, or office occupancy; or
2. An alteration or addition having construction costs exceeding \$50,000 that:
  - a. Is to be made to an existing building that:
    - (1) Is owned by a district; and
    - (2) Is or will be used for education, assembly, or office occupancy; and
  - b. Requires the removal, relocation, or addition of a wall or partition or the alteration or addition of an exit.

This provision does not prohibit an owner of a building from contracting with an architect or engineer as the prime design professional for a building construction, alteration, or addition project. Designation as the prime design professional does not expand the

scope of practice of an architect or engineer beyond the scope of practice that the architect or engineer is authorized to practice under Occupations Code Chapter 1001 or 1051.

*Occupations Code 1051.703; 22 TAC 1.212*

*Registered  
Engineer*

A district may not construct a public work involving engineering in which the public health, welfare, or safety is involved, unless:

1. The engineering plans, specifications, and estimates have been prepared by an engineer; and
2. The engineering construction is to be performed under the direct supervision of an engineer.

*Occupations Code 1001.407*

The following work is exempt from Occupations Code Chapter 1001 (Texas Engineering Practice Act):

1. A public work that involves electrical or mechanical engineering, if the contemplated expense for the completed project is \$8,000 or less; or
2. A public work that does not involve electrical or mechanical engineering, if the contemplated expense for the completed project is \$20,000 or less.

*Occupations Code 1001.053*

*Certification for  
Purchases  
Through  
Purchasing  
Cooperatives*

A district may not enter into a contract to purchase construction-related goods or services through a purchasing cooperative under Government Code Chapter 791 in an amount greater than \$50,000 unless a person designated by the district certifies in writing that:

1. The project for which the construction-related goods or services are being procured does not require the preparation of plans and specifications under Occupation Code Chapter 1001 or 1051; or
2. The plans and specifications required under Occupation Code Chapters 1001 and 1051 have been prepared.

“Purchasing cooperative” means a group purchasing organization that governmental entities join as members and the managing entity of which receives fees from members or vendors.

*Gov't Code 791.011(j)* [See CH for more information on interlocal contracts and purchasing cooperatives.]

Procuring  
Architectural or  
Engineering  
Services

Education Code 44.031 does not apply to a contract for professional services rendered, including the services of an architect. *Education Code 44.031(f)* [See CH for information on the Professional Services Procurement Act generally.]

In procuring architectural, engineering, or land-surveying services, a district shall:

1. First select the most highly qualified provider on the basis of demonstrated competence and qualifications; and
2. Then attempt to negotiate with that provider a contract at a fair and reasonable price.

If a satisfactory contract cannot be negotiated with the most highly qualified provider of architectural, engineering, or land-surveying services, a district shall formally end negotiations with that provider, select the next most highly qualified provider, and attempt to negotiate a contract with that provider at a fair and reasonable price. The district shall continue this process to select and negotiate with providers until a contract is entered into.

*Gov't Code 2254.004*

An interlocal contract between a district and a purchasing cooperative may not be used to purchase engineering or architectural services. *Gov't Code 791.011(h)*

Contracts for  
Engineering or  
Architectural  
Services

*Indemnification*

A covenant or promise in, in connection with, or collateral to a contract for engineering or architectural services to which a district is a party is void and unenforceable if the covenant or promise provides that a licensed engineer or registered architect whose work product is the subject of the contract must indemnify or hold harmless the district against liability for damage, other than liability for damage to the extent that the damage is caused by or results from an act of negligence, intentional tort, intellectual property infringement, or failure to pay a subcontractor or supplier committed by the indemnitor or the indemnitor's agent, consultant under contract, or another entity over which the indemnitor exercises control.

*Duty to Defend*

Except as provided below, a covenant or promise in, in connection with, or collateral to a contract for engineering or architectural services to which a district is a party is void and unenforceable if the covenant or promise provides that a licensed engineer or registered architect whose work product is the subject of the contract must defend a party, including a third party, against a claim based wholly or partly on the negligence of, fault of, or breach of contract by the district, the district's agent, the district's employee, or other entity, excluding the engineer or architect or that person's agent,

employee, or subconsultant, over which the district exercises control. A covenant or promise may provide for the reimbursement of a district's reasonable attorney's fees in proportion to the engineer's or architect's liability.

*District as  
Additional  
Insured*

A district may require in a contract for engineering or architectural services to which the district is a party that the engineer or architect name the district as an additional insured under the engineer's or architect's general liability insurance policy and provide any defense provided by the policy.

*Standard of Care*

A contract for engineering or architectural services to which a district is a party must require a licensed engineer or registered architect to perform services:

1. With the professional skill and care ordinarily provided by competent engineers or architects practicing under the same or similar circumstances and professional license; and
2. As expeditiously as is prudent considering the ordinary professional skill and care of a competent engineer or architect.

In a contract for engineering or architectural services to which a district is a party, a provision establishing a different standard of care than a standard described above is void and unenforceable. If a contract contains a void and unenforceable provision, the standard of care described above applies.

Nothing in these provisions prohibits a district in a contract for engineering or architectural services to which the district is a party from including and enforcing conditions that relate to the scope, fees, and schedule of a project in the contract.

*Local Gov't Code 271.904*

**Payment and  
Performance Bonds**

A district that makes a public work contract with a prime contractor shall require the contractor, before beginning the work, to execute to the district:

1. A performance bond if the contract is in excess of \$100,000; and
2. A payment bond if the contract is in excess of \$25,000.

A bond required by this provision must be executed by a corporate surety in accordance with Insurance Code Article 7.19-1 (now Insurance Code 3503.001–.005). A bond for a public work contract with a district must be payable to and its form must be approved by the awarding board.

*Gov't Code 2253.021(a), (d)–(e)*

The performance bond is solely for the protection of the district awarding the public work contract, in the amount of the contract, and conditioned on the faithful performance of the work in accordance with the plans, specifications, and contract documents. *Gov't Code 2253.021(b)*

The payment bond is solely for the protection and use of payment bond beneficiaries who have a direct contractual relationship with the prime contractor or a subcontractor to supply public work labor or material, and in the amount of the contract. *Gov't Code 2253.021(c)*

Failure to Obtain  
Payment Bond

If a district fails to obtain from a prime contractor a payment bond as required above:

1. The district is subject to the same liability that a surety would have if the surety had issued a payment bond and if the district had obtained the bond; and
2. A payment bond beneficiary is entitled to a lien on money due to the prime contractor in the same manner and to the same extent as if the public work contract were subject to Property Code Chapter 53, Subchapter J (Lien on Money Due Public Works Contractor).

*Gov't Code 2253.027(a)*

Bond for Insured  
Loss

A district shall ensure that an insurance company that is fulfilling its obligation under a contract of insurance by arranging for the replacement of a loss, rather than by making a cash payment directly to the district, furnishes or has furnished by a contractor:

1. A performance bond as described above for the benefit of a district; and
2. A payment bond, as described above for the benefit of the beneficiaries described above.

If the payment bond is not furnished, the district is subject to the same liability that a surety would have if the surety had issued the payment bond and the district had required the bond to be provided.

The bonds required to be furnished by the provisions above shall be furnished before the contractor begins work. It is an implied obligation under a contract of insurance for the insurance company to furnish these bonds.

*Exception to  
Bond  
Requirement*

These provisions do not apply to a district when a surety company is complying with an obligation under a bond that had been issued for the benefit of the district.

*Gov't Code 2253.022*

**Prevailing Wage on  
Public Works**

"Worker" includes a laborer or mechanic. *Gov't Code 2258.001(3)*

A worker employed on a public work by or on behalf of a district shall be paid:

1. Not less than the general prevailing rate of per diem wages for work of a similar character in the locality in which the work is performed; and
2. Not less than the general prevailing rate of per diem wages for legal holiday and overtime work.

The requirements above do not apply to maintenance work. A worker is employed on a public work for purposes of this provision if the worker is employed by a contractor or subcontractor in the execution of a contract for public work with a district.

*Gov't Code 2258.021*

For a contract for a public work awarded by a district, the board shall determine the general prevailing rate of per diem wages in the district for each craft or type of worker needed to execute the contract and the prevailing rate for legal holiday and overtime work by:

1. Conducting a survey of the wages received by classes of workers employed on projects of a character similar to the contract work in the district in which the public work is to be performed; or
2. Using the prevailing wage rate as determined by the U.S. Department of Labor in accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. Section 276a et seq.), and its subsequent amendments.

The board shall determine the general prevailing rate of per diem wages as a sum certain, expressed in dollars and cents. A board shall specify in the call for bids for the contract and in the contract itself the wage rates determined under these provisions. The board's determination of the general prevailing rates of per diem wages is final.

*Gov't Code 2258.022(a), (c)–(e)*

Government Code 2258.022(b) applies to a public work located in a county bordering the United Mexican States or in a county adjacent to a county bordering the United Mexican States. *Gov't Code 2258.022(b)*

Enforcement

A board awarding a contract, and an agent or officer of the board, shall:

1. Take cognizance of complaints of all violations of Government Code Chapter 2258 committed in the execution of the contract; and
2. Withhold money forfeited or required to be withheld under Government Code Chapter 2258 from the payments to the contractor under the contract, except that the board may not withhold money from other than the final payment without a determination by the board that there is good cause to believe that the contractor has violated Government Code Chapter 2258.

On receipt of information, including a complaint by a worker, concerning an alleged violation of Government Code 2258.023 [see Penalty for Noncompliance, below] by a contractor or subcontractor, a board shall make an initial determination as to whether good cause exists to believe that the violation occurred. A board must make its determination before the 31st day after the date the board receives the information. A board shall notify in writing the contractor or subcontractor and any affected worker of its initial determination.

*Gov't Code 2258.051-.052(a)-(c)*

Retainage and  
Reimbursement

A board shall retain any amount due under the contract pending a final determination of the violation. *Gov't Code 2258.052(d)*

---

**Note:** Arbitration of unresolved issues is governed by Government Code 2258.053-.055.

---

A board shall use any amounts retained under Government Code Chapter 2258 to pay the worker the difference between the amount the worker received in wages for labor on the public work at the rate paid by the contractor or subcontractor and the amount the worker would have received at the general prevailing rate as provided in the arbitrator's award. The board may adopt rules, orders, or ordinances relating to the manner in which the reimbursement is made. *Gov't Code 2258.056(a)-(b)*

Penalty for  
Noncompliance

The contractor who is awarded a contract by a district or a subcontractor of the contractor shall pay not less than the rates determined under these provisions to a worker employed by it in the execution of the contract. A contractor or subcontractor who violates this provision shall pay to the district on whose behalf the contract is made, \$60 for each worker employed for each calendar day or part of the day that the worker is paid less than the wage rates stipulated in the contract. A board awarding a contract shall specify this penalty in the contract. A contractor or subcontractor does not violate this section if a board awarding a contract does not determine the prevailing wage rates and specify the rates in the contract as required by these provisions. The board shall use any money collected under this provision to offset the costs incurred in the administration of Government Code Chapter 2258. *Gov't Code 2258.023*

Criminal Offense

An officer, agent, or representative of a district commits an offense if the person willfully violates or does not comply with a provision of Government Code 2258. *Gov't Code 2258.058(a)*

**Required Workers'  
Compensation  
Coverage**

A district that enters into a building or construction contract shall require the contractor to certify in writing that the contractor provides workers' compensation insurance coverage for each employee of the contractor employed on the public project. Each subcontractor shall provide such a certificate relating to coverage of the subcontractor's employees to the general contractor, who shall provide the subcontractor's certificate to the district. *Labor Code 406.096(a)-(b)*

A district that enters into a building or construction contract on a project shall:

1. Include in the bid specifications all the duties and responsibilities of contractors pertaining to required workers' compensation coverage, using the language required by 28 Administrative Code 110.110(c)(7).
2. As part of the contract, using the language required by 28 Administrative Code 110.110(c)(7), require the contractor to perform the duties and responsibilities pertaining to required workers' compensation coverage as set out in 28 Administrative Code 110.110(d).
3. Obtain from the contractor a certificate of coverage for each person providing services on the project, prior to that person beginning work on the project.
4. Obtain from the contractor a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage:

- a. Before the end of the current coverage period, if the contractor's current certificate shows that the coverage period ends during the duration of the project; and
  - b. No later than seven days after the expiration of the coverage for each other person providing services on the project whose current certificate shows that the coverage period ends during the duration of the project.
5. Retain certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the project and for three years thereafter.
  6. Provide a copy of the certificate of coverage to the Texas Department of Insurance, Division of Workers' Compensation upon request and to any person entitled to a copy by law.
  7. Use the language contained in 28 Administrative Code 110.110(c)(7) for bid specifications and contracts, without any additional words or changes, except those required to accommodate the specific document in which they are contained or to impose stricter standards of documentation.

*28 TAC 110.110(c)*

Exception

This coverage requirement does not apply to sole proprietors, partners, and corporate officers who meet the requirements of Labor Code 406.097(c), and who are explicitly excluded from coverage in accordance with Labor Code 406.097(a). *28 TAC 110.110(i)*

Definitions

"Persons providing services on the project" includes all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the contractor has undertaken to perform on the project, regardless of whether that person contracted directly with the contractor and regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes but is not limited to independent contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity furnishing persons to perform services on the project. "Services" includes but is not limited to providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. "Services" does not include activities unrelated to the project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets. *28 TAC 110.110(a)(7)*

"Project" includes the provision of all services related to a building or construction contract for a district. *28 TAC 110.110(a)(8)*

**Criminal Offenses**

For information on criminal offenses for violations of Education Code 44.031, see CH.

**Enforcement Actions** Government Code Chapter 2269 may be enforced through an action for declaratory or injunctive relief filed not later than the tenth day after the date on which the contract is awarded. *Gov't Code 2269.452*

**Defects in Facilities** A district that brings an action for recovery of damages for the defective design, construction, renovation, or improvement of a district facility financed by bonds shall provide the commissioner with written notice of the action by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, not later than the 30th day after the date the action is filed. If the district fails to comply with this provision, the court or an arbitrator or other adjudicating authority shall dismiss the action without prejudice. The dismissal of an action under this provision extends the statute of limitations on the action for a period of 90 days.

The notice must include a copy of the petition and an itemized list of the defects in the design, construction, renovation, or improvement for which the district is seeking damages under the action.

In an action involving an instructional facility financed by bonds for which the district receives state assistance under Education Code Chapter 46, Subchapter A (Instructional Facilities Allotment), the commissioner may join in the action on behalf of the state to protect the state's share in the action.

A district that brings an action under these provisions shall use the net proceeds from the action for:

1. The repair of the defective design, construction, renovation, or improvement of the facility on which the action is brought, including the repair of any ancillary damage to furniture and fixtures;
2. The replacement of the facility on which the action is brought;
3. The reimbursement of the district for a repair or replacement; or
4. Any other purpose with written approval from the commissioner.

Education Code 46.008 applies to the repair. A district shall provide to the commissioner an itemized accounting of any repairs made.

The state's share resulting from an action brought under these provisions involving an instructional facility financed by bonds for which the school district receives state assistance under Education Code Chapter 46, Subchapter A is state property. The district shall send to the comptroller any portion of the state's share not used by the district to repair the defective design, construction, renovation,

or improvement of the instructional facility on which the action is brought or to replace the facility. Education Code 48.272 applies to the state's share.

*Definitions*

“Net proceeds” means the difference between the amount recovered by or on behalf of a school district in an action, by settlement or otherwise, and the legal fees and litigation costs incurred by the district in prosecuting the action.

“State’s share” means an amount equal to the district's net proceeds from the recovery multiplied by a percentage determined by dividing the amount of state assistance under Education Code Chapter 46, Subchapter A used to pay the principal of and interest on bonds issued in connection with the instructional facility that is the subject of the action by the total amount of principal and interest paid on the bonds as of the date of the judgment or settlement.

*Education Code 44.151*

*Attorney General  
Enforcement*

If the attorney general believes that a district has violated or is violating Education Code 44.151(d), (e), or (f) (use of proceeds, accounting, and the state’s share), the attorney general may, after providing at least two weeks' notice to the district, bring an action on behalf of the state to enjoin the district from violating those sections.

In such an action, the attorney general may request and the court may order any other appropriate relief that is in the public interest, including payment of:

1. A civil penalty in an amount not to exceed \$20,000 for each violation;
2. The attorney general's reasonable costs for investigating and prosecuting the violation; or
3. If applicable, the amount of the state's share.

*Education Code 44.152(a)–(b)*

*Attorney Fees*

A governmental contract may not provide for the award of attorney’s fees to a district in a dispute in which the district prevails unless the contract provides for the award of attorney’s fees to each other party to the contract if that party prevails in the dispute.

“Governmental contract” means a contract awarded by a governmental entity for general construction, an improvement, a service, or a public works project or for a purchase of supplies, materials, or equipment.

*Gov’t Code 2252.904*

FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION

CV  
(LEGAL)

Construction  
Liability Claims

To assert a claim against a contractor, subcontractor, supplier, or design professional for damages arising from damage to or loss of real or personal property caused by an alleged construction defect in an improvement to real property that is a public building or public work in which the district has an interest, the district must comply with Government Code Chapter 2272. *Gov't Code 2272.002(a)*

**Compliance with Law**

The Superintendent shall establish procedures that ensure that all school facilities within the District comply with applicable laws and local building codes.

Building Code Adoption

All construction projects shall be designed to meet the most current International Building Code edition with the latest amendments, in addition to requirements set out at policy CS.

**Construction Contracts**

The project delivery/contract award method to be used for each construction contract valued at or above \$100,000 shall be the competitive sealed proposal, as determined and approved by the Board as the best value. If another method is deemed more appropriate for a particular construction project, the Superintendent or designee shall submit a recommendation for the Board to consider, determine, and approve a different project delivery method that provides the best value to the District. [See CV series generally and CBB(LEGAL) for requirements if federal funds are involved.]

For construction contracts valued at or above \$100,000, the Superintendent shall also submit the resulting contract to the Board for approval. Lesser expenditures for construction and construction-related materials or services shall be at the discretion of the Superintendent and consistent with law and policy. [See also CH and CBB(LEGAL)]

---

**Note:** For provisions regarding delegation of authority for construction contracts in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting the District, see CH(LOCAL).

---

**Change Orders**

Change orders permitted by law shall be approved prior to any changes being made in the approved plans or the actual construction of the facility.

Change orders valued at or above \$100,000 shall require Board approval. The Superintendent or designee shall be authorized to approve change orders of a lesser amount.

**Extension of Time**

The Superintendent or designee shall approve any extensions of time to construction contracts without requiring Board approval.

**Project Administration**

All construction projects shall be administered by the Superintendent or designee.

The Superintendent shall keep the Board informed concerning construction projects and also shall provide information to the general public.

**Final Payment**

The District shall not make final payments for construction or the supervision of construction until the work has been completed and the Superintendent or designee has accepted the work.

---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

For legal requirements generally applicable to the procurement process, see CH and CV.

---

“Competitive bidding” is a procurement method by which a district contracts with a contractor for the construction, alteration, rehabilitation, or repair of a facility by awarding the contract to the lowest responsible bidder.

Except as otherwise provided by Government Code Chapter 2269 or other law, a district may contract for the construction, alteration, rehabilitation, or repair of a facility only after the district advertises for bids for the contract in a manner prescribed by law, receives competitive bids, and awards the contract to the lowest responsible bidder.

*Gov't Code 2269.101*

**Preparation of Request**

The district shall prepare a request for competitive bids that includes construction documents, estimated budget, project scope, estimated project completion date, and other information that a contractor may require to submit a bid. *Gov't Code 2269.103*

Architect/Engineer

The district shall select or designate an architect or engineer in accordance with Occupations Code Chapter 1051 or 1001, as applicable, to prepare the construction documents required for a project to be awarded by competitive bidding. *Gov't Code 2269.102* [See CV]

**Opening Bids**

The district shall receive, publicly open, and read aloud the names of the offerors and their bids. *Gov't Code 2269.104*

Bids may be opened only by the board at a public meeting or by an officer or employee of the district at or in an office of the district. A bid that has been opened may not be changed for the purpose of correcting an error in the bid price. Local Government Code Chapter 271, Subchapter B does not change the common law right of a bidder to withdraw a bid due to a material mistake in the bid. *Local Gov't Code 271.026*

The board is entitled to reject any and all bids. *Local Gov't Code 271.027(a)*

**Safety Record**

In determining who is a responsible bidder, the district may take into account the safety record of the bidder; of the firm, corporation, partnership, or institution represented by the bidder; or of anyone acting for such firm, corporation, partnership, or institution if:

1. The board has adopted a written definition and criteria for accurately determining the safety record of a bidder.
2. The board has given notice to prospective bidders in the bid specifications that the safety record of a bidder may be considered in determining the responsibility of the bidder.
3. The determinations are not arbitrary and capricious.

*Local Gov't Code 271.0275*

**Identical Bids**

If a district is required to accept bids on a contract and receives two or more bids from responsible bidders that are identical, in nature and amount, as the lowest and best bids, the board shall enter into a contract with only one of those bidders and must reject all other bids.

If only one of the bidders submitting identical bids is a resident of the district, the district must select that bidder. If two or more of the bidders submitting identical bids are residents of the district, the district must select one of those bidders by the casting of lots. In all other cases, the district must select from the identical bids by the casting of lots.

The casting of lots must be in a manner prescribed by the board and must be conducted in the presence of the board. All qualified bidders or their legal representatives may be present at the casting of lots.

These provisions do not prohibit a district from rejecting all bids. These provisions apply to all districts required by general or special law to accept bids and award contracts on the basis of the lowest and best bid, but do not apply to bidding for contracts to act as a depository for school funds under Education Code Chapter 45, Subchapter G [see BDAE].

*Local Gov't Code 271.901*

**Make Evaluations  
Public**

Not later than the seventh day after the date the contract is awarded, the district shall document the basis of its selection and shall make the evaluations public. *Gov't Code 2269.105*

**Applicability of Other  
Competitive Bidding  
Laws**

Except as otherwise specifically provided in this policy, Local Government Code Chapter 271, Subchapter B (Competitive Bidding on Certain Public Works Contracts), does not apply to the competitive bidding process conducted under this policy. *Gov't Code 2269.106*

---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

For legal requirements generally applicable to the procurement process, see CH and CV.

---

“Competitive sealed proposals” is a procurement method by which a district requests proposals, ranks the offerors, negotiates as prescribed, and then contracts with a general contractor for the construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of a facility. In selecting a contractor through competitive sealed proposals, a district shall follow the procedures provided by Government Code 2269, Subchapter D. *Gov’t Code 2269.151*

**Request for Proposals**

The district shall prepare a request for competitive sealed proposals that includes construction documents, selection criteria and the weighted value for each criterion, estimated budget, project scope, estimated project completion date, and other information that a contractor may require to respond to the request. *Gov’t Code 2269.153*

Architect/Engineer

The district shall select or designate an architect or engineer to prepare construction documents for the project. *Gov’t Code 2269.152 [See CV]*

**Opening Proposals**

The district shall receive, publicly open, and read aloud the names of the offerors and any monetary proposals made by the offerors. Not later than the 45th day after the date on which the proposals are opened, the district shall evaluate and rank each proposal submitted in relation to the published selection criteria. *Gov’t Code 2269.154*

**Selection**

The district shall select the offeror that submits the proposal that offers the best value for the district based on:

1. The selection criteria in the request for proposal and the weighted value for those criteria in the request for proposal; and
2. Its ranking evaluation.

The district shall first attempt to negotiate a contract with the selected offeror. The district and its architect or engineer may discuss with the selected offeror options for a scope or time modification and any price change associated with the modification. If the district is unable to negotiate a satisfactory contract with the selected offeror, the district shall, formally and in writing, end negotiations with that offeror and proceed to the next offeror in the order of the

Lake Travis ISD  
227913

FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION  
COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSALS

CVB  
(LEGAL)

selection ranking until a contract is reached or all proposals are rejected.

*Gov't Code 2269.155*

---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

For legal requirements generally applicable to the procurement process, see CH and CV.

---

The “construction manager-agent method” is a delivery method by which a district contracts with a construction manager-agent to provide consultation or administrative services during the design and construction phase and to manage multiple contracts with various construction prime contractors.

A construction manager-agent is a sole proprietorship, partnership, corporation, or other legal entity that serves as the agent for the district by providing construction administration and management services described above for the construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of a facility. A district may retain a construction manager-agent only as provided by Government Code Chapter 2269, Subchapter E.

*Gov’t Code 2269.201*

The contract between the district and the construction manager-agent may require the construction manager-agent to provide administrative personnel, equipment necessary to perform duties under this policy, on-site management, and other services specified in the contract. *Gov’t Code 2269.201–.202*

A construction manager-agent may not:

1. Self-perform any aspect of the construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of the facility.
2. Be a party to a construction subcontract for the construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of the facility.
3. Provide or be required to provide performance and payment bonds for the construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of the facility.

*Gov’t Code 2269.203*

A construction manager-agent represents the district in a fiduciary capacity. *Gov’t Code 2269.204*

**Architect/Engineer**

On or before the selection of a construction manager-agent, the district shall select or designate an architect or engineer in accordance with Occupations Code Chapter 1051 or 1001, as applicable, to prepare the construction documents for the project. [See CV]

The district's architect or engineer may not serve, alone or in combination with another person, as the construction manager-agent unless the architect or engineer is hired to serve as the construction manager-agent under a separate or concurrent selection process conducted in accordance with this policy. This provision does not prohibit the district's architect or engineer from providing customary construction-phase services under the architect's or engineer's original professional service agreement in accordance with applicable licensing laws.

To the extent that the construction manager-agent's services are defined as part of the practice of architecture or engineering under Occupations Code Chapter 1051 or 1001 those services must be conducted by a person licensed under the applicable chapter.

*Gov't Code 2269.205*

**Selection of  
Construction  
Manager-Agent**

A district shall select a construction manager-agent on the basis of demonstrated competence and qualifications in the same manner that an architect or engineer is selected under Government Code 2254.004. *Gov't Code 2269.207* [See CV]

**Insurance**

A construction manager-agent selected under this policy shall maintain professional liability or errors and omissions insurance in the amount of at least \$1 million for each occurrence. *Gov't Code 2269.208*

**Selection of  
Contractors**

A district using the construction manager-agent method shall procure, in accordance with applicable law and in any manner authorized by Government Code Chapter 2269, a general contractor or trade contractors who will serve as the prime contractor for their specific portion of the work and provide performance and payment bonds to the district in accordance with applicable laws. *Gov't Code 2269.206*

---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

For legal requirements generally applicable to the procurement process, see CH and CV.

---

The “construction manager-at-risk method” is a delivery method by which a district contracts with an architect or engineer for design and construction phase services and contracts separately with a construction manager-at-risk to serve as the general contractor and to provide consultation during the design and construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of a facility.

A construction manager-at-risk is a sole proprietorship, partnership, corporation, or other legal entity that assumes the risk for construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of a facility at the contracted price as a general contractor and provides consultation to the district regarding construction during and after the design of the facility. The contracted price may be a guaranteed maximum price. A district may use the construction manager-at-risk method in selecting a general contractor for the construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of a facility only as provided by Government Code Chapter 2269, Subchapter F.

*Gov't Code 2269.251*

**Architect/Engineer**

On or before the selection of a construction manager-at-risk, the district shall select or designate an architect or engineer or architect to prepare the construction documents for the project. [See CV]

The district’s architect or engineer for a project, or an entity related to the district’s architect or engineer, may not serve, alone or in combination with another, as the construction manager-at-risk. This provision does not prohibit the district’s engineer or architect from providing customary construction phase services under the architect’s or engineer’s original professional service agreement in accordance with applicable licensing laws.

An entity is related to the district’s architect or engineer if the entity is a sole proprietorship, corporation, partnership, limited liability company, or other entity that is a subsidiary, parent corporation, or partner or has any other relationship in which the district’s architect or engineer has an ownership interest, or is subject to common ownership or control, or is party to an agreement by which it will receive any proceeds of the construction manager-at-risk’s payments from the district.

*Gov't Code 2269.252*

**Selection Process**

The district shall select the construction manager-at-risk in a one-step or two-step process. A district shall prepare a single request for proposals, in the case of a one-step process, and an initial request for qualifications, in the case of a two-step process, that includes:

1. A statement as to whether the selection process is a one-step or two-step process;
2. General information on the project site, project scope, schedule, selection criteria and the weighted value for each criterion, and estimated budget and the time and place for receipt of the proposals or qualifications; and
3. Other information that may assist a district in its selection of a construction manager-at-risk.

The district shall state the selection criteria in the request for proposals or qualifications.

If a one-step process is used, the district may request, as part of the offeror's proposal, proposed fees and prices for fulfilling the general conditions. If a two-step process is used, the district may not request fees or prices in step one. In step two, the district may request that five or fewer offerors, selected solely on the basis of qualifications, provide additional information, including the construction manager-at-risk's proposed fee and prices for fulfilling the general conditions.

*Gov't Code 2269.253(a)–(e)*

**Opening and  
Evaluating  
Proposals**

At each step, the district shall receive, publicly open, and read aloud the names of the offerors. At the appropriate step, the district shall also read aloud the fees and prices, if any, stated in each proposal as the proposal is opened. Not later than the 45th day after the date on which the final proposals are opened, the district shall evaluate and rank each proposal submitted in relation to the criteria set forth in the request for proposals. *Gov't Code 2269.253(f)–(g)*

**Selection**

The district shall select the offeror that submits the proposal that offers the best value for the district based on the published selection criteria and on its ranking evaluation. The district shall first attempt to negotiate a contract with the selected offeror. If the district is unable to negotiate a satisfactory contract with the selected offeror, the district shall, formally and in writing, end negotiations with that offeror and proceed to negotiate with the next offeror in the order of the selection ranking until a contract is reached or negotiations with all ranked offerors end. *Gov't Code 2269.254(a)–(c)*

**Make Rankings  
Public**

Not later than the seventh day after the date the contract is awarded, the district shall make the proposal rankings public. *Gov't Code 2269.254(d)*

**Trade Contractors/  
Subcontractors**

A construction manager-at-risk shall publicly advertise for bids or proposals and receive bids or proposals from trade contractors or subcontractors for the performance of all major elements of the work other than the minor work that may be included in the general conditions. A construction manager-at-risk may seek to perform portions of the work itself if:

1. The construction manager-at-risk submits its bid or proposal for those portions of the work in the same manner as all other trade contractors or subcontractors; and
2. The district determines that the construction manager-at-risk's bid or proposal provides the best value for the district.

*Gov't Code 2269.255*

**Bids or Proposals**

The construction manager-at-risk shall review all trade contractor or subcontractor bids or proposals in a manner that does not disclose the contents of the bid or proposal during the selection process to a person not employed by the construction manager-at-risk, architect, engineer, or district. All bids or proposals shall be made available to the district on request and to the public after the later of the award of the contract or the seventh day after the date of final selection of bids or proposals. *Gov't Code 2269.256(a)*

If the construction manager-at-risk reviews, evaluates, and recommends to the district a bid or proposal from a trade contractor or subcontractor but the district requires another bid or proposal to be accepted, the district shall compensate the construction manager-at-risk by a change in price, time, or guaranteed maximum cost for any additional cost and risk that the construction manager-at-risk incurs because of the district's requirement that another bid or proposal be accepted. *Gov't Code 2269.256(b)*

**Default**

If a selected trade contractor or subcontractor defaults in the performance of its work or fails to execute a subcontract after being selected in accordance with this policy, the construction manager-at-risk may itself fulfill, without advertising, the contract requirements or select a replacement trade contractor or subcontractor to fulfill the contract requirements. *Gov't Code 2269.257*

**Payment and  
Performance Bond**

If a fixed contract amount or guaranteed maximum price has not been determined at the time the contract is awarded, the penal sums of the performance and payment bonds delivered to the district must each be in an amount equal to the construction budget,

as specified in the request for proposals or qualifications. The construction manager-at-risk shall deliver the bonds not later than the tenth day after the date the construction manager-at-risk executes the contract unless the construction manager-at-risk furnishes a bid bond or other financial security acceptable to the district to ensure that the construction manager will furnish the required performance and payment bonds when a guaranteed maximum price is established. *Gov't Code 2269.258* [See CV for more information on payment and performance bonds.]

---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

For legal requirements generally applicable to the procurement process, see CH and CV.

---

“Design-build” is a project delivery method by which a district contracts with a single entity to provide both design and construction services for the construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of a facility. *Gov’t Code 2269.301*

This policy applies only to a facility that is a building or an associated structure, including an electric utility structure. This policy does not apply to:

1. A highway, road, street, bridge, underground utility, water supply project, water plant, wastewater plant, water and wastewater distribution or conveyance facility, wharf, dock, airport runway or taxiway, drainage project, or related type of project associated with civil engineering construction; or
2. A building or structure that is incidental to a project that is primarily a civil engineering construction project.

*Gov’t Code 2269.302*

A district may use the design-build method for the construction, rehabilitation, alteration, or repair of a building or associated structure only as provided by Government Code Chapter 2269, Subchapter G. In using that method, the district shall enter into a single contract with a design-build firm for the design and construction of the building or associated structure. *Gov’t Code 2269.303*

**Design-Build Firm**

A design-build firm under this policy must be a sole proprietorship, partnership, corporation, or other legal entity or team that includes an architect or engineer and a construction contractor. *Gov’t Code 2269.304*

**Architect/Engineer**

The district shall select or designate an architect or engineer independent of the design-build firm to act as the district’s representative for the duration of the project. *Gov’t Code 2269.305* [See CV]

**Request for Qualifications**

The district shall prepare a request for qualifications that includes general information on the project site, project scope, budget, special systems, selection criteria and the weighted value for each criterion, and other information that may assist potential design-build firms in submitting proposals for the project. *Gov’t Code 2269.306(a)*

	<p>The district may not require offerors to submit architectural or engineering designs as part of a proposal or a response to a request for qualifications. <i>Gov't Code 2269.306(d)</i></p>
<p>Design Criteria Package</p>	<p>The district shall also prepare the design criteria package that includes more detailed information on the project. If the preparation of the design criteria package requires architectural or engineering services that constitute the practice of architecture within the meaning of Occupations Code Chapter 1051 or the practice of engineering within the meaning of Occupations Code Chapter 1001, those services shall be provided in accordance with the applicable law. <i>Gov't Code 2269.306(b)</i></p> <p>The design criteria package must include a set of documents that provides sufficient information, including criteria for selection, to permit a design-build firm to prepare a response to the district's request for qualifications and to provide any additional information requested. The design criteria package must specify criteria the district considers necessary to describe the project and may include, as appropriate, the legal description of the site, survey information concerning the site, interior space requirements, special material requirements, material quality standards, conceptual criteria for the project, special equipment requirements, cost or budget estimates, time schedules, quality assurance and quality control requirements, site development requirements, applicable codes and ordinances, provisions for utilities, parking requirements, and any other requirement. <i>Gov't Code 2269.306(c)</i></p>
<p>Evaluation <i>Qualification</i></p>	<p>For each design-build firm that responded to the request for qualifications, the district shall evaluate the firm's experience, technical competence, and capability to perform, the past performance of the firm and members of the firm, and other appropriate factors submitted by the firm in response to the request for qualifications, except that cost-related or price-related evaluation factors are not permitted. Each firm must certify to the district that each architect or engineer that is a member of the firm was selected based on demonstrated competence and qualifications, in the manner provided by Government Code 2254.004. A district shall qualify a maximum of five responders to submit proposals that contain additional information and, if the district chooses, to interview for final selection. <i>Gov't Code 2269.307(a)–(c)</i></p>
<p><i>Proposals</i></p>	<p>The district shall evaluate the additional information submitted by the offerors on the basis of the selection criteria stated in the request for qualifications and the results of any interview. The district may request additional information regarding demonstrated competence and qualifications, considerations of the safety and long-</p>

term durability of the project, the feasibility of implementing the project as proposed, the ability of the offeror to meet schedules, or costing methodology.

“Costing methodology” means an offeror’s policies on subcontractor markup, definition of general conditions, range of cost for general conditions, policies on retainage, policies on contingencies, discount for prompt payment, and expected staffing for administrative duties. The term does not include a guaranteed maximum price or bid for overall design or construction.

*Gov’t Code 2269.307(d)–(e)*

The district shall rank each proposal submitted on the basis of the criteria set forth in the request for qualifications. *Gov’t Code 2269.307(f)*

**Selection**

The district shall select the design-build firm that submits the proposal offering the best value for the district on the basis of the published selection criteria and on its ranking evaluations.

The district shall first attempt to negotiate a contract with the selected firm. If the district is unable to negotiate a satisfactory contract with the selected firm, the district shall, formally and in writing, end all negotiations with that firm and proceed to negotiate with the next firm in the order of the selection ranking until a contract is reached or negotiations with all ranked firms end.

*Gov’t Code 2269.308(a)–(c)*

**Make Rankings Public**

Not later than the seventh day after the date the contract is awarded, the district shall make the proposal rankings public. *Gov’t Code 2269.308(d)*

**Design**

After selection of the design-build firm, that firm’s architects or engineers shall submit all design elements for review and determination of scope compliance to the district or the district’s architect or engineer before or concurrently with construction. *Gov’t Code 2269.309*

**Final Construction Documents**

The design-build firm shall supply a set of construction documents for the completed project to the district at the conclusion of construction. The documents must note any changes made during construction. *Gov’t Code 2269.310*

**Payment or Performance Bond**

A payment or performance bond is not required and may not provide coverage for the design portion of the design-build contract with the design-build firm under this policy.

Amount

If a fixed contract amount or guaranteed maximum price has not been determined at the time the design-build contract is awarded,

the penal sums of the performance and payment bonds delivered to the district must each be in an amount equal to the construction budget, as specified in the design criteria package. The design-build firm shall deliver the bonds not later than the tenth day after the date the design-build firm executes the contract, unless the design-build firm furnishes a bid bond or other financial security acceptable to the district to ensure that the design-build firm will furnish the required performance and payment bonds before construction begins.

*Gov't Code 2269.311* [See CV for more information on payment and performance bonds]

---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB.

For legal requirements generally applicable to the procurement process, see CH and CV.

---

“Job order contracting” is a procurement method used for maintenance, repair, alteration, renovation, remediation, or minor construction of a facility when the work is of a recurring nature but the delivery times, type, and quantities of work required are indefinite. *Gov’t Code 2269.401*

This policy applies only to a facility that is a building, the design and construction of which is governed by accepted building codes, or a structure or land, whether improved or unimproved, that is associated with a building. This policy does not apply to:

1. A highway, road, street, bridge, utility, water supply project, water plant, wastewater plant, water and wastewater distribution or conveyance facility, wharf, dock, airport runway or taxiway, drainage project, or related type of project associated with civil engineering construction; or
2. A building or structure that is incidental to a project that is primarily a civil engineering construction project.

*Gov’t Code 2269.402*

A district may award job order contracts for the maintenance, repair, alteration, renovation, remediation, or minor construction of a facility if the work is of a recurring nature but the delivery times are indefinite, and indefinite quantities and orders are awarded substantially on the basis of predescribed and prepriced tasks. The district shall establish the maximum aggregate contract price when it advertises the proposal. The board shall approve each job, task, or purchase order that exceeds \$500,000. *Gov’t Code 2269.403*

### **Establishing Unit Prices**

The district may establish contractual unit prices for a job order contract by:

1. Specifying one or more published construction unit price books and the applicable divisions or line items; or
2. Providing a list of work items and requiring the offerors to propose one or more coefficients or multipliers to be applied to the price book or prepriced work items as the price proposal.

*Gov’t Code 2269.404*

**Competitive Sealed  
Proposal Method**

A district may use the competitive sealed proposal method under Government Code Chapter 2269, Subchapter D for job order contracts. [See CVB] The district shall advertise for, receive, and publicly open sealed proposals for job order contracts. The district may require offerors to submit information in addition to rates, including experience, past performance, and proposed personnel and methodology. *Gov't Code 2269.405*

Architect or  
Engineer

If a job order contract or an order issued under the contract requires architectural or engineering services that constitute the practice of architecture within the meaning of Occupations Code Chapter 1051 or the practice of engineering within the meaning of Occupations Code Chapter 1001, a district shall select or designate an architect or engineer to prepare the construction documents for the project. [See CV]

This provision does not apply to a job order contract or an order issued under the contract for industrialized housing, industrialized buildings, or relocatable educational facilities subject to and approved under Occupations Code Chapter 1202 if the contractor employs the services of an architect or engineer who approves the documents for the project.

*Gov't Code 2269.408*

**Awarding Contracts**

The district may award job order contracts to one or more job order contractors in connection with each solicitation of proposals. *Gov't Code 2269.406*

**Contract Term**

The base term for a job order contract may not exceed two years. The district may renew the contract annually for not more than three additional years. *Gov't Code 2269.409*

**Use of Contract**

A job order contract may be used to accomplish work only for the district that awards the contract unless:

1. The solicitation for the job order contract and the contract specifically provide for use by other persons; or
2. The district enters into an interlocal agreement that provides otherwise.

*Gov't Code 2269.407*

**Job Orders**

An order for a job or project under a job order contract must be signed by the district's representative and the contractor. The order may be:

1. A fixed-price, lump-sum contract based substantially on contractual unit pricing applied to estimated quantities; or

2. A unit price order based on the quantities and line items delivered.

*Gov't Code 2269.410*

**Bonds**

The contractor shall provide payment and performance bonds, if required by law, based on the amount or estimated amount of any order. *Gov't Code 2269.411* [See CV for more information on payment and performance bonds.]



**Leave Administration**

The Superintendent shall develop administrative regulations addressing employee leaves and absences to implement the provisions of this policy.

**Definitions**

The term "immediate family" is defined as:

Immediate Family

1. Spouse.
2. Son or daughter, including a biological, adopted, or foster child, a son- or daughter-in-law, a stepchild, a legal ward, or a child for whom the employee stands *in loco parentis*.
3. Parent, stepparent, parent-in-law, or other individual who stands *in loco parentis* to the employee.
4. Sibling, stepsibling, and sibling-in-law.
5. Grandparent and grandchild.
6. Any person residing in the employee's household at the time of illness or death.

For purposes of the Family and Medical Leave Act (FMLA), the definitions of spouse, parent, son or daughter, and next of kin are found in DECA(LEGAL).

Family Emergency

The term "family emergency" shall be limited to disasters and life-threatening situations involving the employee or a member of the employee's immediate family.

Leave Day

A "leave day" for purposes of earning, using, or recording leave shall mean the number of hours per day equivalent to the employee's usual assignment, whether full-time or part-time.

School Year

A "school year" for purposes of earning, using, or recording leave shall mean the term of the employee's annual employment as set by the District for the employee's usual assignment, whether full-time or part-time.

---

**Note:** For District contribution to employee insurance during leave, see CRD(LOCAL).

---

**Availability**

The District shall make state personal leave and local leave for the current year available for use at the beginning of the school year.

**Earning Local Leave**

An employee shall not earn any local leave when he or she is in unpaid status. An employee using full or proportionate paid leave shall be considered to be in paid status.

**State Leave Proration**

If an employee separates from employment with the District before his or her last duty day of the school year or begins employment

after the first duty day of the school year, state personal leave shall be prorated based on the actual time employed.

If an employee separates from employment before the last duty day of the school year, the employee's final paycheck shall be reduced for state personal leave the employee used beyond his or her pro rata entitlement for the school year.

**Local Leave  
Proration**

When an employee has used two or fewer local leave days more than he or she has earned, the District shall deduct the cost of unearned local leave days from the employee's paycheck for the month in which the employee used more leave than he or she earned. When an employee has used three or more local leave days more than he or she has earned, the District shall deduct the cost of unearned local leave over the balance of the employee's remaining paychecks for the employee's work year.

**Medical Certification**

An employee shall submit medical certification of the need for leave if:

1. The employee is absent more than five consecutive workdays because of personal illness or illness in the immediate family;
2. The District requires medical certification due to a questionable pattern of absences or when deemed necessary by the supervisor or Superintendent; or
3. The employee requests FMLA leave for the employee's serious health condition; a serious health condition of the employee's spouse, parent, or child; or for military caregiver leave.

In each case, medical certification shall be made by a health-care provider as defined by the FMLA. [See DECA(LEGAL)]

**State Personal Leave**

The Board requires employees to differentiate the manner in which state personal leave is used.

**Nondiscretionary  
Use**

Nondiscretionary use of leave shall be for the same reasons and in the same manner as state sick leave accumulated before May 30, 1995. [See DEC(LEGAL)]

Nondiscretionary use includes leave related to the birth or placement of a child and taken within the first year after the child's birth, adoption, or foster placement.

**Discretionary Use**

Discretionary use of leave is at the individual employee's discretion, subject to limitations set out below.

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

*Request for  
Leave*

In deciding whether to approve or deny a request for discretionary use of state personal leave, the supervisor shall not seek or consider the reasons for which an employee requests to use leave. The supervisor shall, however, consider the duration of the requested absence in conjunction with the effect of the employee's absence on the educational program and District operations, as well as the availability of substitutes.

**Local Leave**

Each employee shall earn paid leave days in accordance with the following schedule.

**Local Leave Days Earned**

<b>Days Employed During the Year</b>	<b>Professional and all full-time employees (37.5–40 hrs/week)</b>	<b>Nonprofessional part- time employees (20–37.4 hrs/week)</b>
00 – 12	0.0	0.0
13 – 25	0.0	0.0
26 – 38	0.0	0.0
39 – 51	0.0	0.0
52 – 64	0.0	0.0
65 – 77	0.5	0.0
78 – 90	1.0	0.0
91 – 103	1.5	0.0
104 – 116	2.0	0.0
117 – 129	2.5	0.0
130 – 142	3.0	0.0
143 – 155	3.5	0.0
156 – 168	4.0	0.0
169 – 179	4.5	0.0
180 – 194	5.0	0.0
195 – 206	5.5	0.0
207 – 217	6.0	0.5
218 – 223	6.5	1.0
224 +	7.0	1.5

Local leave shall accumulate without limit. Upon resignation, all unused and nonreimbursable sick leave shall be lost.

Local leave shall be used according to the terms and conditions of state sick leave accumulated before the 1995–96 school year [see

DEC(LEGAL)] or as extenuating circumstance leave as defined in DEC(REGULATION).

An employee may also use local leave for absences related to the birth or placement of a child when leave is taken within the first year after the child's birth, adoption, or foster placement.

**Family and Medical Leave**

FMLA leave shall run concurrently with applicable paid leave and compensatory time, as applicable.

---

**Note:** See DECA(LEGAL) for provisions addressing FMLA.

---

Twelve-Month Period

For purposes of an employee's entitlement to FMLA leave, the 12-month period shall be measured forward from the date an individual employee's first FMLA leave begins.

Combined Leave for Spouses

When both spouses are employed by the District, the District shall limit FMLA leave for the birth, adoption, or placement of a child, or to care for a parent with a serious health condition, to a combined total of 12 weeks. The District shall limit military caregiver leave to a combined total of 26 weeks.

Intermittent or Reduced Schedule Leave

The District shall permit use of intermittent or reduced schedule FMLA leave for the care of a newborn child or for the adoption or placement of a child with the employee.

Certification of Leave

When an employee requests leave, the employee shall provide certification, in accordance with FMLA regulations, of the need for leave.

Fitness-for-Duty Certification

In accordance with administrative regulations, when an employee takes FMLA leave due to the employee's own serious health condition, the employee shall provide, before resuming work, a fitness-for-duty certification.

Leave at the End of Semester

When a teacher takes leave near the end of the semester, the District may require the teacher to continue leave until the end of the semester.

**Temporary Disability Leave**

Any full-time employee whose position requires educator certification by the State Board for Educator Certification or by the District shall be eligible for temporary disability leave. The maximum length of temporary disability leave shall be 180 calendar days. [See DBB(LOCAL) for temporary disability leave placement and DEC(LEGAL) for return to active duty.]

An employee's notification of need for extended absence due to the employee's own medical condition shall be forwarded to the Superintendent as a request for temporary disability leave.

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

The District shall require the employee to use temporary disability leave and paid leave, including any compensatory time, concurrently with FMLA leave, except that an employee receiving workers' compensation income benefits may choose to receive those benefits in lieu of using paid leave.

**Workers'  
Compensation**

---

**Note:** Workers' compensation is not a form of leave. The workers' compensation law does not require the continuation of the District's contribution to health insurance.

---

An absence due to a work-related injury or illness shall be designated as FMLA leave, temporary disability leave, and/or assault leave, as applicable.

An employee eligible for workers' compensation wage benefits, and not on assault leave, shall indicate in writing whether he or she chooses to:

1. Receive workers' compensation wage benefits; or
2. Use available paid leave. Workers' compensation wage benefits shall begin when:
  - a. Paid leave is exhausted;
  - b. The employee elects to discontinue use of paid leave; or
  - c. Leave payments are less than the employee's pre-injury average weekly wage.

No Paid Leave  
Offset

The District shall not permit the option for paid leave offset in conjunction with workers' compensation income benefits. [See CRE]

**Court Appearances**

Absences due to compliance with a valid subpoena or for jury duty shall be fully compensated by the District and shall not be deducted from the employee's pay or leave balance.

Absences for court appearances related to an employee's personal business shall be deducted from the employee's personal leave or shall be taken by the employee as leave without pay.

**Neutral Absence  
Control**

If an employee does not return to work after exhausting all available paid and unpaid leave, the District shall provide the employee written notice that he or she no longer has leave available for use. The District shall automatically pursue termination of an employee who has exhausted all available leave, regardless of the reason for the absence [see DF series]. The employee's eligibility for reasonable accommodations, as required by the Americans with Disabilities Act [see DAA(LEGAL)], shall be considered before termination. If terminated, the employee may apply for reemployment with the District.



**Purpose**

A primary purpose of the public school curriculum is to prepare thoughtful, active citizens who understand the importance of patriotism and can function productively in a free enterprise society with appreciation for the basic democratic values of our state and national heritage. A district shall foster the continuation of the tradition of teaching United States and Texas history and the free enterprise system in regular subject matter, in reading courses, and in the adoption of textbooks. *Education Code 28.002(h)*

As a condition of accreditation, a district shall provide instruction in the essential knowledge and skills at appropriate grade levels in the foundation and enrichment curriculum. *Education Code 28.002(c); 19 TAC 74.1(b)*

A district shall ensure that all children in the district participate actively in a balanced curriculum designed to meet individual needs. *Education Code 28.002(g)*

Instruction may be provided in a variety of arrangements and settings, including mixed-age programs designed to permit flexible learning arrangements for developmentally appropriate instruction for all student populations to support student attainment of course and grade-level standards. *19 TAC 74.2*

**Required Curriculum**

Foundation  
Curriculum

A district that offers kindergarten through grade 12 shall offer a foundation curriculum that includes:

1. English language arts and reading;
2. Mathematics;
3. Science; and
4. Social studies, consisting of Texas, United States, and world history; government; geography; and economics with emphasis on the free enterprise system and its benefits.

*Education Code 28.002(a)(1); 19 TAC 74.1(a)(1)*

Enrichment  
Curriculum

A district that offers kindergarten through grade 12 shall offer an enrichment curriculum that includes:

1. Languages other than English, to the extent possible. American Sign Language is a language for these purposes and the district may offer an elective course in the language;
2. Health, with emphasis on:
  - a. Physical health, including the importance of proper nutrition and exercise;

- b. Mental health, including instruction about mental health conditions, substance abuse, skills to manage emotions, establishing and maintaining positive relationships, and responsible decision-making; and
  - c. Suicide prevention, including recognizing suicide-related risk factors and warning signs;
- 3. Physical education;
  - 4. Fine Arts;
  - 5. Career and technical education;
  - 6. Technology applications;
  - 7. Religious literature, including the Hebrew Scriptures (Old Testament) and New Testament, and its impact on history and literature; and
  - 8. Personal financial literacy.

*Education Code 28.002(a)(2), (e); 19 TAC 74.1(a)(2)*

Digital Citizenship

The State Board of Education by rule shall require each district to incorporate instruction in digital citizenship into the district's curriculum, including information regarding the potential criminal consequences of cyberbullying.

"Cyberbullying" has the meaning assigned by Education Code 37.0832. [See FFI]

"Digital citizenship" means the standards of appropriate, responsible, and healthy online behavior, including the ability to access, analyze, evaluate, create, and act on all forms of digital communication.

*Education Code 28.002(z)*

Positive Character  
Traits

Beginning with the 2021–22 school year, districts are required to provide instruction in the essential knowledge and skills for positive character traits outlined in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 120, Subchapter A at least once in the following grade bands: kindergarten–grade 2, grades 3–5, grades 6–8, and grades 9–12.

Districts may provide the required instruction in a variety of arrangements, including through a stand-alone course or by integrating the positive character traits standards in the essential knowledge and skills for one or more courses or subject areas at the appropriate grade levels.

*19 TAC 120.1*

BASIC INSTRUCTIONAL PROGRAM  
REQUIRED INSTRUCTION (ALL LEVELS)

EHAA  
(LEGAL)

Local Credit	A district may offer courses for local credit, at its discretion, in addition to those in the required curriculum, but it may not delete or omit instruction in the foundation and enrichment curricula specified above. <i>Education Code 28.002(f); 19 TAC 74.1(b)</i>
<b>Local Instructional Plan</b>	A district's local instructional plan may draw on state curriculum frameworks and program standards as appropriate. A district is encouraged to exceed minimum requirements of law and State Board rule.
Major Curriculum Initiatives	Before the adoption of a major curriculum initiative, including the use of a curriculum management system, a district must use a process that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Includes teacher input;</li><li>2. Provides district employees with the opportunity to express opinions regarding the initiative; and</li><li>3. Includes a meeting of the board at which information regarding the initiative is presented, including the cost of the initiative and any alternatives that were considered; and members of the public and district employees are given the opportunity to comment regarding the initiative.</li></ol> <p><i>Education Code 28.002(g)</i></p>
<b>Common Core State Standards</b>	A district may not use common core state standards to comply with the requirement to provide instruction in the essential knowledge and skills at appropriate grade levels. A district may not be required to offer any aspect of a common core state standards curriculum. "Common core state standards" means the national curriculum standards developed by the Common Core State Standards Initiative. <i>Education Code 28.002(b-1), (b-3), (b-4)</i>
<b>Scope and Sequence</b>	In adopting a recommended or designated scope and sequence for a subject in the required curriculum under Education Code 28.002(a) in a particular grade level, a district shall ensure sufficient time is provided for teachers to teach and students to learn the essential knowledge and skills for that subject and grade level [see DG]. <i>Education Code 28.0027(a)</i>
<b>Coordinated Health Programs</b>	TEA shall make available to each district one or more coordinated health programs in elementary, middle, and junior high school. Each program must provide for coordinating education and services related to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Physical health education, including programs designed to prevent obesity, cardiovascular disease, oral diseases, and</li></ol>

Type 2 diabetes and programs designed to promote the role of proper nutrition;

2. Mental health education, including education about mental health conditions, mental health well-being, skills to manage emotions, establishing and maintaining positive relationships, and responsible decision-making;
3. Substance abuse education, including education about alcohol abuse, prescription drug abuse, and abuse of other controlled substances;
4. Physical education and physical activity; and
5. Parental involvement.

*Education Code 38.013; 19 TAC 102.1031(a)*

A district shall participate in appropriate training to implement TEA's coordinated health program and shall implement the program in each elementary, middle, and junior high school in the district. *Education Code 38.014*

Coordinated school health programs that are developed by districts and that meet TEA criteria may be approved and made available as approved programs. Districts must use materials that are proven effective, such as TEA-approved textbooks or materials developed by nationally recognized and/or government-approved entities. *19 TAC 102.1031(c)*

### **Physical Education**

Each district shall establish specific objectives and goals the district intends to accomplish through the physical education curriculum. The physical education curriculum must be sequential, developmentally appropriate, and designed, implemented, and evaluated to enable students to develop the motor, self-management, and other skills, knowledge, attitudes, and confidence necessary to participate in physical activity throughout life.

A physical education course shall:

1. Offer students an opportunity to choose among many types of physical activity in which to participate;
2. Offer students both cooperative and competitive games; and
3. Be an enjoyable experience for students.

On a weekly basis, at least 50 percent of a physical education class shall be used for actual student physical activity and the activity shall be, to the extent practicable, at a moderate or vigorous level.

Student/Teacher  
Ratio

The objectives and goals shall include, to the extent practicable, student/teacher ratios [see EEB] that are small enough to enable the district to:

1. Carry out the purposes of and requirements for the physical education curriculum; and
2. Ensure the safety of students participating in physical education.

If a district establishes a student to teacher ratio greater than 45 to 1 in a physical education class, the district shall specifically identify the manner in which the safety of the students will be maintained.

*Education Code 25.114, 28.002(d); 19 TAC 74.37*

Classification for  
Physical Education

A district shall classify students for physical education on the basis of health into one of the following categories:

1. Unrestricted—not limited in activities.
2. Restricted—excludes the more vigorous activities. Restricted classification is of two types:
  - a. Permanent—A member of the healing arts licensed to practice in Texas shall provide written documentation to the school as to the nature of the impairment and the expectations for physical activity for the student.
  - b. Temporary—Students may be restricted from physical activity of the physical education class. A member of the healing arts licensed to practice in Texas shall provide written documentation to the school as to the nature of the temporary impairment and the expected amount of time for recovery. During recovery time, the student shall continue to learn the concepts of the lessons but shall not actively participate in the skill demonstration.
3. Adapted and remedial—specific activities prescribed or prohibited for students as directed by a member of the healing arts licensed to practice in Texas.

*19 TAC 74.31*

**School Health  
Advisory Council**

A board shall establish a local school health advisory council (SHAC) to assist the district in ensuring that local community values are reflected in the district's health education instruction. *Education Code 28.004(a)* [See BDF regarding composition of the SHAC and FFA regarding federal wellness requirements]

Duties

The SHAC's duties include recommending:

1. The number of hours of instruction to be provided in:
  - a. Health education in kindergarten through grade 8; and
  - b. If the district requires health education for high school graduation, health education, including physical health education and mental health education, in grades 9 through 12.
2. Policies, procedures, strategies, and curriculum appropriate for specific grade levels designed to prevent physical health concerns, including obesity, cardiovascular disease, Type 2 diabetes, and mental health concerns, including suicide, through coordination of:
  - a. Health education, which must address physical health concerns and mental health concerns to ensure the integration of physical health education and mental health education;
  - b. Physical education and physical activity;
  - c. Nutrition services;
  - d. Parental involvement;
  - e. Instruction on substance abuse prevention;
  - f. School health services, including mental health services;
  - g. A comprehensive school counseling program under Education Code 33.005 [see FFEA];
  - h. A safe and healthy school environment; and
  - i. School employee wellness;
3. Appropriate grade levels and methods of instruction for human sexuality instruction;
4. Strategies for integrating the curriculum components specified by item 2, above, with the following elements in a coordinated school health program:
  - a. School health services, including physical health services and mental health services, if provided at a campus by the district or by a third party under a contract with the district;
  - b. A comprehensive school counseling program under Education Code 33.005 [see FFEA];
  - c. A safe and healthy school environment; and

- d. School employee wellness;
5. If feasible, joint use agreements or strategies for collaboration between the district and community organizations or agencies. Any agreement entered into based on a recommendation of the SHAC must address liability for the district and community organization;
6. Appropriate grade levels and curriculum for instruction regarding opioid addiction and abuse and methods for administering an opioid antagonist; and
7. Strategies to increase parental awareness regarding:
  - a. Risky behaviors and early warning signs of suicide risks and behavioral health concerns, including mental health disorders and substance use disorders; and
  - b. Available community programs and services that address risky behaviors, suicide risks, and behavioral health concerns.

*Education Code 28.004(c), (n)*

Policy  
Recommendations

The SHAC shall consider and make policy recommendations to the district concerning the importance of daily recess for elementary school students. The SHAC must consider research regarding unstructured and undirected play, academic and social development, and the health benefits of daily recess in making the recommendations. The SHAC shall ensure that local community values are reflected in any policy recommendation made to the district concerning the importance of daily recess for elementary school students.  
*Education Code 28.004(l)*

The SHAC shall make policy recommendations to the district to increase parental awareness of suicide-related risk factors and warning signs and available community suicide prevention services.  
*Education Code 28.004(o)*

**Content of Human  
Sexuality Instruction**

The board shall determine the specific content of a district's instruction in human sexuality. *Education Code 28.004(h)*

The board shall select any instruction relating to human sexuality, sexually transmitted diseases, or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) with the advice of the SHAC. The instruction must:

1. Present abstinence as the preferred choice of behavior for unmarried persons of school age;

2. Devote more attention to abstinence than to any other behavior;
3. Emphasize that abstinence is the only method that is 100 percent effective in preventing pregnancy, sexually transmitted diseases, infection with HIV or AIDS, and the emotional trauma associated with adolescent sexual activity;
4. Direct adolescents to a standard of behavior in which abstinence before marriage is the most effective way to prevent pregnancy, sexually transmitted diseases, and infection with HIV or AIDS; and
5. Teach contraception and condom use in terms of human use reality rates instead of theoretical laboratory rates, if instruction on contraception and condoms is included in the curriculum.

*Education Code 28.004(e)*

Condoms

A district may not distribute condoms in connection with instruction relating to human sexuality. *Education Code 28.004(f)*

Separate Classes

If a district provides human sexuality instruction, it may separate students according to sex for instructional purposes. *Education Code 28.004(g)* [See FB regarding single-sex classes under Title IX]

Notice to Parents

Before each school year, a district shall provide written notice to a parent of each student enrolled in the district of the board's decision regarding whether the district will provide human sexuality instruction to district students. If instruction will be provided, the notice must include:

1. A summary of the basic content of the district's human sexuality instruction to be provided to the student, including a statement informing the parent of the instructional requirements under state law;
2. A statement of the parent's right to:
  - a. Review curriculum materials as provided by Education Code 28.004(j); and
  - b. Remove the student from any part of that instruction without subjecting the student to any disciplinary action, academic penalty, or other sanction imposed by the district or the student's school; and

3. Information describing the opportunities for parental involvement in the development of the curriculum to be used in human sexuality instruction, including information regarding the SHAC.

A parent may use the grievance procedure at FNG concerning a complaint of a violation of notice requirements.

*Education Code 28.004(i)–(i-1)*

Availability of  
Materials

A district shall make all curriculum materials used in human sexuality instruction available for reasonable public inspection. *Education Code 28.004(j)* [See EFA regarding selection of curriculum materials for human sexuality instruction]

**Character Education**

A district must adopt a character education program that includes the following positive character education traits:

1. Courage;
2. Trustworthiness, including honesty, reliability, punctuality, and loyalty;
3. Integrity;
4. Respect and courtesy;
5. Responsibility, including accountability, diligence, perseverance, and self-control;
6. Fairness, including justice and freedom from prejudice;
7. Caring, including kindness, empathy, compassion, consideration, patience, generosity, and charity;
8. Good citizenship, including patriotism, concern for the common good and the community, and respect for authority and the law;
9. School pride; and
10. Gratitude.

In developing or selecting a character education program under Education Code 29.906, a district shall consult with a committee selected by the district that consists of parents of district students, educators, and other members of the community, including community leaders.

The provisions above do not require or authorize proselytizing or indoctrinating concerning any specific religious or political belief.

*Education Code 29.906*



---

**Note:** The policies in the EHBA series are statements of principles governing special education programs for Texas school districts. In no way are these policies intended to cover the entire scope and detail involved in administering any special education program.

---

**Nondiscrimination**

No qualified student with a disability shall, on the basis of disability, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any district service, program, or activity. *42 U.S.C. 12132; 29 U.S.C. 794(a); 34 C.F.R. 104.4(a)* [See also FB]

**Free Appropriate  
Public Education  
(FAPE)**

Eligible students with disabilities shall enjoy the right to a free appropriate public education, which may include instruction in the regular classroom, instruction through special teaching, or instruction through approved contracts. Instruction shall be supplemented by the provision of related services when appropriate. *Education Code 29.003(a)*

“Free appropriate public education” (FAPE) means special education and related services that:

1. Have been provided at public expense, under public supervision and direction, and without charge;
2. Meet standards set out by the Texas Education Agency (TEA);
3. Include an appropriate preschool, elementary school, or secondary school education; and
4. Are provided in conformity with the student’s individualized education program (IEP).

*20 U.S.C. 1401(9); 34 C.F.R. 300.13, .17, .36*

**Least Restrictive  
Environment**

A district shall ensure that, to the maximum extent appropriate, children with disabilities, including children in public or private institutions or other care facilities, shall be educated with children who are not disabled. Special classes, separate schooling, or other removal of children with disabilities from the regular educational environment shall occur only when the nature or severity of the disability is such that education in regular classes with the use of supplementary aids and services cannot be achieved satisfactorily. *20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(5); 34 C.F.R. 300.114(a)(2)*

**Discipline**

All disciplinary actions regarding students with disabilities shall be in accordance with federal requirements, Education Code Chapter 37, and 19 Administrative Code 89.1053. *19 TAC 89.1050(k)* [See FOF]

**Instructional  
Arrangements and  
Settings**

Mainstream

Instructional arrangements/settings shall be based on the individual needs and IEPs of eligible students receiving special education services and shall include the following:

The mainstream instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education and related services to a student in the regular classroom in accordance with the student's IEP. Qualified special education personnel must be involved in the implementation of the student's IEP through the provision of direct, indirect, and/or support services to the student and/or the student's regular classroom teacher(s) necessary to enrich the regular classroom and enable student success. The student's IEP must specify the services that will be provided by qualified special education personnel to enable the student to appropriately progress in the general education curriculum and/or appropriately advance in achieving the goals set out in the student's IEP.

Examples of services provided in this instructional arrangement include, but are not limited to, direct instruction, helping teacher, team teaching, co-teaching, interpreter, educational aides, curricular or instructional modifications/accommodations, special materials/equipment, positive classroom behavioral interventions and supports, consultation with the student and his/her regular classroom teacher(s) regarding the student's progress in regular education classes, staff development, and reduction of ratio of students to instructional staff.

Homebound

The homebound instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education and related services to students who are served at home or hospital bedside.

Students served on a homebound or hospital bedside basis are expected to be confined for a minimum of four consecutive weeks as documented by a physician licensed to practice in the United States. Homebound or hospital bedside instruction may, as provided by local district policy [see EEH(LOCAL)], also be provided to chronically ill students who are expected to be confined for any period of time totaling at least four weeks throughout the school year as documented by a physician licensed to practice in the United States. The student's ARD committee shall determine the amount of services to be provided to the student in this instructional arrangement/setting in accordance with federal and state laws, rules, and regulations, including the provisions specified in 19 Administrative Code 1005(b).

Home instruction may also be used for services to infants and toddlers (birth through age 2) and young children (ages 3–5) when determined appropriate by the child's individualized family services plan (IFSP) committee or ARD committee.

Hospital Class	The hospital class instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education instruction in a classroom, a hospital facility, or a residential care and treatment facility not operated by the district. If the students residing in the facility are provided special education services outside the facility, they are considered to be served in the instructional arrangement in which they are placed and are not to be considered as in a hospital class.
Speech Therapy	The speech therapy instructional arrangement/setting is for providing speech therapy services whether in a regular education classroom or in a setting other than a regular education classroom. When the only special education or related service provided to a student is speech therapy, then this instructional arrangement may not be combined with any other instructional arrangement.
Resource Room/Services	The resource room/services instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education and related services to a student in a setting other than regular education for less than 50 percent of the regular school day.
Self-Contained (Mild, Moderate, or Severe) Regular Campus	The self-contained (mild, moderate, or severe) regular campus instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education and related services to a student who is in a self-contained program for 50 percent or more of the regular school day on a regular school campus.
Off-Home Campus	<p>The off-home campus instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education and related services to the following, including, but not limited to, students at South Texas Independent School District and Windham School District:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. A student who is one of a group of students from more than one district served in a single location when a free appropriate public education is not available in the respective sending district;</li><li>2. A student in a community setting or environment (not operated by a school district) that prepares the student for post-secondary education/training, integrated employment, and/or independent living in coordination with the student's individual transition goals and objectives, including a student with regularly scheduled instruction or direct involvement provided by district personnel or a student in a facility not operated by a school district (other than a nonpublic day school) with instruction provided by district personnel; or</li><li>3. A student in a self-contained program at a separate campus operated by the district that provides only special education and related services.</li></ol>

Nonpublic Day School	The nonpublic day school instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education and related services to students through a contractual agreement with a nonpublic school for special education.
Vocational Adjustment Class/Program	The vocational adjustment class/program instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education and related services to a student who is placed on a job (paid or unpaid unless otherwise prohibited by law) with regularly scheduled direct involvement by special education personnel in the implementation of the student's IEP. This instructional arrangement/setting shall be used in conjunction with the student's individual transition goals and only after the district's career and technical education classes have been considered and determined inappropriate for the student.
Residential Care and Treatment Facility (Not District Resident)	The residential care and treatment facility (not district resident) instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education instruction and related services to students who reside in care and treatment facilities and whose parents do not reside within the boundaries of the district providing educational services to the students. In order to be considered in this arrangement, the services must be provided on a district campus. If the instruction is provided at the facility, rather than on a district campus, the instructional arrangement is considered to be the hospital class arrangement/setting rather than this instructional arrangement. Students with disabilities who reside in these facilities may be included in the average daily attendance of the district in the same way as all other students receiving special education.
State-Supported Living Center	The state-supported living center instructional arrangement/setting is for providing special education and related services to a student who resides at a state-supported living center when the services are provided at the state-supported living center location. If services are provided on a local district campus, the student is considered to be served in the residential care and treatment facility arrangement/setting.  <i>19 TAC 89.63(c), .1005(b)</i>
<b>Other Program Options</b>	Other program options that may be considered for the delivery of special education and related services to a student include contracts with other districts and programs approved by TEA.  <i>19 TAC 89.63(f), .1005(f)</i>
<b>Regular School Day</b>	Subject to 19 Administrative Code 89.1075(e) (General Program Requirements and Local District Procedures) [see EHBAB], for the purpose of determining the student's instructional arrangement/set-

ting, the regular school day is defined as the period of time determined appropriate by the admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee. *19 TAC 89.1005(b)*

**Nonpublic Day  
School Placements**

For nonpublic day school placements [see Nonpublic Day School, above], the district or shared service arrangement shall submit information to TEA indicating the students' identification numbers, initial dates of placement, and the names of the facilities with which the district or shared service arrangement is contracting. The district or shared service arrangement shall not count contract students' average daily attendance as eligible. TEA shall determine the number of contract students reported in full-time equivalents and pay state funds to the district according to the formula prescribed in law. *19 TAC 89.1005(e)*

**Related Services**

"Related services" means transportation, and such developmental, corrective, and other supportive services as may be required to assist a child with a disability to benefit from special education, including the early identification and assessment of disabling conditions in children.

The term includes speech-language pathology and audiology services, interpreting services, psychological services, physical and occupational therapy, recreation, including therapeutic recreation, social work services, school nurse services designed to enable a child with a disability to receive FAPE as described in the child's IEP, counseling services, including rehabilitation counseling, orientation and mobility services, and medical services, except that medical services shall be for diagnostic and evaluation purposes only.

The term does not include a medical device that is surgically implanted, the optimization of the device's functioning, or the replacement of such device.

*20 U.S.C. 1401(26); 34 C.F.R. 300.34*

**Extended School  
Year Services**

Extended school year (ESY) services are defined as individualized instructional programs beyond the regular school year for eligible students with disabilities.

A district shall ensure that ESY services are available as necessary to provide a student with a disability with FAPE.

ESY services must be provided only if the ARD committee determines, on an individual basis, that the services are necessary for FAPE. A district may not limit ESY services to particular categories

of disability or unilaterally limit the type, amount, or duration of ESY services.

*34 C.F.R. 300.106; 19 TAC 89.1065*

**Off-Campus Program** An off-campus program includes special education and related services provided during school hours in a facility other than a school district campus.

Program Provider An off-campus program provider is an entity that provides the services identified above and includes:

1. A county system operating under application of former law as provided in Education Code 11.301;
2. A regional education service center established under Education Code, Chapter 8;
3. A nonpublic day school; or
4. Any other public or private entity with which a school district enters into a contract under Education Code 11.157(a), for the provision of special education services in a facility other than a district campus operated by a district.

*19 TAC 89.1094(a)(2)–(3)*

Program Placement A district may contract with an off-campus program provider to provide some or all of the special education and related services to a student in accordance with the requirements in 19 Administrative Code 89.1094.

Before the district places a student with a disability in, or refers a student to, an off-campus program, the district shall initiate and conduct:

1. An onsite review to ensure that the off-campus program is appropriate for meeting the student's educational needs; and
2. A meeting of the student's ARD committee to develop an IEP for the student in accordance with 34 C.F.R. 300.320–.325, state statutes, and commissioner of education rules in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 89 (Commissioner's Rules Concerning Special Education Services).

The appropriateness of the off-campus program for each student placed shall be documented in the IEP annually. The student's ARD committee may only recommend an off-campus program placement for a student if the committee determines that the nature and severity of the student's disability and special education needs are such that the student cannot be satisfactorily educated in the

district. The district must follow the requirements of 19 Administrative Code 89.1094(b)(3)(A)–(C), regarding the review of the placement of the off-campus program for each student.

The placement of more than one student in the same off-campus program facility may be considered in the same on-site visit to a facility. However, the IEP of each student must be individually reviewed, and a determination of appropriateness of placement and services must be made for each student.

*19 TAC 89.1094(b)*

Notification and  
Review

Within 30 calendar days from an ARD committee's decision to place or continue the placement of a student in an off-campus program, a district must electronically submit to TEA notice of, and information regarding, the placement in accordance with submission procedures specified by TEA.

If the off-campus program is on the commissioner's list of approved off-campus programs, TEA will review the student's IEP and placement as required by 34 C.F.R. 300.120, and, in the case of a placement in or referral to a private school or facility, 34 C.F.R. 300.146. After review, TEA will notify the district whether federal or state funds for the off-campus program placement are approved. If TEA does not approve the use of funds, it will notify the district of the basis for the non-approval.

If the off-campus program is not on the commissioner's list of approved off-campus programs, TEA will begin the approval procedures described below. Districts must ensure there is no delay in implementing a child's IEP in accordance with 34 C.F.R. 300.103(c).

If an off-campus program placement is ordered by a special education hearing officer or court of competent jurisdiction, the district must notify TEA of the order within 30 calendar days. The off-campus program serving the student is not required to go through the approval procedures described in 19 Administrative Code 89.1094 for the ordered placement. If, however, the district or other districts intend to place other students in the off-campus program, the off-campus program will be required to go through the approval procedures to be included on the commissioner's list of approved off-campus programs.

*19 TAC 89.1094(c)*

Approval

Off-campus programs must have their educational programs approved for contracting purposes by the commissioner in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 89.1094(d).

Funding Procedures	The cost of off-campus program placements will be funded according to Education Code 48.102 and 19 Administrative Code 89.1005(e).
Contracts	<p>Contracts between districts and approved off-campus programs must not exceed a district's fiscal year and shall not begin prior to July 1 of the contracted fiscal year.</p> <p>Amendments to a contract must be electronically submitted to TEA in accordance with submission procedures specified by TEA no later than 30 calendar days from the change in placement or services within the school district's fiscal year.</p> <p><i>19 TAC 89.1094(e)(1)–(2)</i></p>
Change of Residence	<p>If a student who is placed in an off-campus program by a district changes his or her residence to another Texas district during the school year, the district must notify TEA within ten calendar days of the date on which the district ceased contracting with the off-campus program for the student's placement. The student's new district must meet the requirements of 34 C.F.R. 300.323(e), by providing comparable services to those described in the student's IEP from the previous district until the new district either adopts the student's IEP from the previous district or develops, adopts, and implements a new IEP. The new district must comply with all procedures described in 19 Administrative Code 89.1094 for continued or new off-campus program placement. <i>19 TAC 89.1094(e)(3)</i></p>

**Identification**

Child Find

A district shall ensure that all children residing within the district who have disabilities, regardless of the severity of their disabilities, and who are in need of special education and related services are identified, located, and evaluated. This requirement applies to:

1. Homeless children;
2. Children who are wards of the state;
3. Children attending private schools;
4. Highly mobile children (including migrant children); and
5. Children who are suspected of being in need of special education but who are advancing from grade to grade.

*20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(3)(A); 34 C.F.R. 300.111(a)(1)(i), (c)*

*Private School  
Students*

A district shall conduct a timely and meaningful consultation with private school representatives regarding the child find process and the provision of special education and related services to children enrolled in private schools in the district.

A district shall undertake activities similar to those undertaken for public school children and shall complete the child find process for children enrolled in private schools in a time period comparable to that for other students attending public schools in the district.

*20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(10)(A)(ii)–(iv)* [See EHBAC regarding students in nondistrict placement.]

*Preschool  
Students*

A district shall develop a system to notify district residents with children who are at least three and younger than six and who are eligible for enrollment in a special education program of the availability of the program. *Education Code 29.009*

**Requests and  
Referrals for  
Evaluation**

The screening of a student by a teacher or specialist to determine appropriate instructional strategies for curriculum implementation shall not be considered to be an evaluation for eligibility for special education and related services. *20 U.S.C. 1414(a)(1)(E)*

Referral of students for a full individual and initial evaluation for possible special education services shall be a part of a district's overall general education referral or screening system. Either a parent, TEA, another state agency, or the district may initiate a request for an initial evaluation.

District Obligation to  
Refer

Students experiencing difficulty in the general classroom should be considered for all support services available to all students, such as tutorial; remedial; compensatory; response to evidence-based intervention; and other academic or behavior support services. A student is not required to be provided with interventions for any

specific length of time prior to a referral being made or a full individual and initial evaluation being conducted. If the student continues to experience difficulty in the general classroom with the provision of interventions, district personnel must refer the student for a full individual and initial evaluation. A referral for a full individual and initial evaluation may be initiated at any time by school personnel, the student's parents or legal guardian, or another person involved in the education or care of the student. *19 TAC 89.1011(a)*

Parental Request

If a parent submits a written request to a district's director of special education services or to a district administrative employee for a full individual and initial evaluation of a student, the district shall, not later than the 15th school day after the date the district receives the request:

1. Provide the parent with prior written notice of its proposal to conduct an evaluation consistent with 34 C.F.R. 300.503, a copy of the procedural safeguards notice required by 34 C.F.R. 300.504, and an opportunity to give written consent for the evaluation; or
2. Provide the parent with prior written notice of its refusal to conduct an evaluation consistent with 34 C.F.R. 300.503, and a copy of the procedural safeguards notice required by 34 C.F.R. 300.504.

*19 TAC 89.1011(b); Education Code 29.004(c); 20 U.S.C. 1414(a)(1); 34 C.F.R. 300.301*

Notice of Rights

A reasonable time before a district proposes or refuses to initiate the identification, evaluation, or educational placement of a student or the provision of a free appropriate public education (FAPE) to a student, the district shall provide written notice to the student's parent or guardian. *20 U.S.C. 1415(b)(3); 34 C.F.R. 300.503(a)* [See EHBAE]

Initial Evaluation  
Required

A district shall conduct a full individual and initial evaluation before the initial provision of special education and related services. *20 U.S.C. 1414(a)(1)(A)*

*Consent for Initial  
Evaluation*

Before a district conducts an initial evaluation, it shall make reasonable efforts to obtain informed parental consent.

If the parent does not provide consent for an initial evaluation, or if the parent fails to respond to a request to provide consent, a district may, but is not required to, pursue the initial evaluation by utilizing due process procedures [see EHBAE], except to the extent inconsistent with state law relating to such parental consent.

Parental consent to initial evaluation shall not be construed as consent for placement for special education and related services.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(a)(1)(D)(i)(I); 34 C.F.R. 300.300(b)*

Wards of the  
State

If the child is a ward of the state and is not residing with the child's parent, a district shall make reasonable efforts to obtain the informed consent from the parent for an initial evaluation, unless:

1. Despite reasonable efforts to do so, the district cannot discover the whereabouts of the parent;
2. The rights of the parent have been terminated; or
3. The rights of the parent to make educational decisions have been subrogated and an individual appointed by a judge to represent the student has given consent for an initial evaluation.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(a)(1)(D)(iii); 34 C.F.R. 300.300(a)(2)*

*Time Frame for  
Completion of  
Written Report*

A district must complete the written report of a full individual and initial evaluation:

1. Not later than the 45th school day following the date on which the district receives written consent for the evaluation from the student's parent. If a student has been absent from school during that period on three or more school days, the period must be extended by a number of school days equal to the number of school days during that period on which the student has been absent; or
2. For students under five years of age by September 1 of the school year and not enrolled in public school and for students enrolled in a private or homeschool setting, not later than the 45th school day following the date on which the district receives written consent for the evaluation from the student's parent.

If a district receives written consent for the evaluation from the student's parent at least 35 but less than 45 school days before the last instructional day of the school year, the written report of a full individual and initial evaluation of a student must be provided to the student's parent not later than June 30 of that year.

If a district receives written consent signed by a student's parent less than 35 school days before the last instructional day of the school year or if the district receives the written consent at least 35 but less than 45 school days before the last instructional day of the school year but the student is absent from school during that period on three or more days, the report must be completed not later

than the 45th school day following the date the district received written consent, except that the period must be extended by a number of school days equal to the number of school days during that period on which the student has been absent.

A student is considered absent for the school day if the student is not in attendance at the school's official attendance taking time or at the alternate attendance taking time set for that student. A student is considered in attendance if the student is off campus participating in an activity that is approved by the school board and is under the direction of a professional staff member of the school district or an adjunct staff member who has a minimum of a bachelor's degree and is eligible for participation in the Teacher Retirement System of Texas.

"School day" does not include a day that falls after the last instructional day of the spring school term and before the first instructional day of the subsequent fall school term.

These time frames shall not apply if the parent repeatedly fails or refuses to produce the child for the evaluation.

Transfer  
Students

A district shall ensure that evaluations of children who transfer from one district to another in the same academic year are coordinated with the children's prior and subsequent schools, as necessary and as expeditiously as possible, to ensure prompt completion of evaluations.

If a student was in the process of being evaluated for special education eligibility by a district and enrolls in another school district before the previous district completed the full individual and initial evaluation, the new district must coordinate with the previous district as necessary and as expeditiously as possible to ensure a prompt completion of the evaluation in accordance with 34 C.F.R., 300.301(d)(2) and (e) and 300.304(c)(5).

The timelines above do not apply in such a situation if:

1. The new school district is making sufficient progress to ensure a prompt completion of the evaluation; and
2. The parent and the new school district agree to a specific time when the evaluation will be completed.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(a)(1)(C), (b)(3)(D); 34 C.F.R. 300.301(c)–(e); Education Code 29.004; 19 TAC 89.1011*

*Psychological  
Examinations*

If a district determines that an additional examination or test is required for the initial and individual evaluation, the district shall provide the information required by Education Code 29.0041(a) and

shall obtain additional parental consent. If a parent does not give consent within 20 calendar days after the district provided the information, the parent's consent is considered denied.

The time required for a district to provide information and seek consent may not be counted toward the time frame for completion of an evaluation. [See Time Frame for Completion of Written Report, above]

*Education Code 29.0041*

**Eligibility and  
Reevaluations**

A student is eligible to participate in a district's special education program if:

1. The student is between the ages of 3 and 21, inclusive;
2. The student has one or more of the disabilities listed in federal regulations, state law, or both; and
3. The student's disability(ies) prevents the student from being adequately or safely educated in the public schools without the provision of special services.

*20 U.S.C. 1401(3); Education Code 29.003(b); 19 TAC 89.1035*

**Disability Definitions**

To be eligible to receive special education services, a student must be a "child with a disability," as defined in 34 C.F.R. 300.8(a), subject to the provisions of 34 C.F.R. 300.8(c), Education Code 29.003, and 19 Administrative Code 89.1040. The provisions in 19 Administrative Code 89.1040 specify criteria to be used in determining whether a student's condition meets one or more of the definitions in federal regulations or in state law. *19 TAC 89.1040*

**Visual and Auditory  
Impairments**

A student with a visual or auditory impairment shall be eligible to participate in a district's special education program from birth. *19 TAC 89.1035(b); Education Code 30.002(e), .081*

**Determination of  
Initial Eligibility**

Upon completion of the administration of assessments and other evaluation measures, a team of qualified professionals and the parent shall make the determination of whether the child has a disability and of the educational needs of the child.

A district shall provide a copy of the evaluation report and the documentation of determination of eligibility at no cost to the parent.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(b)(4); 34 C.F.R. 300.306(a)*

The admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee must make its decisions regarding a student's initial eligibility determination and, if appropriate, individualized education program (IEP) and placement within 30 calendar days from the date of the completion of the written full individual and initial evaluation report. If the 30th

day falls during the summer and school is not in session, the student's ARD committee has until the first day of classes in the fall to finalize decisions concerning the student's initial eligibility determination, IEP, and placement, unless the full individual and initial evaluation indicates that the student will need extended school year (ESY) services during that summer.

When a report is provided to a parent not later than June 30 as described at Time Frame for Completion of Written Report, above, the ARD committee must meet not later than the 15th school day of the following school year to consider the evaluation. If, however, an evaluation indicates that a student will need ESY services, the ARD committee must meet as expeditiously as possible.

*19 TAC 89.1011(d), (e)*

Consent for  
Services

*Initial Provision of  
Services*

A district must obtain informed consent from the parent for the initial provision of special education and related services. If the parent of a child fails to respond to a request for, or refuses to consent to, the initial provision of services, the district:

1. May not use the procedures in 34 C.F.R. part 300 subpart E (including the mediation and due process procedures) in order to obtain agreement or a ruling that the services may be provided to the child;
2. Will not be considered to be in violation of the requirement to make FAPE available to the child for the failure to provide the services for which the district requests consent; and
3. Is not required to convene an ARD meeting or develop an IEP for the child for the services.

*Revoking  
Consent*

If, at any time after the provision of initial services, the parent of a child revokes consent in writing for the continued provision of services, the district:

1. May not continue to provide services to the child, but must provide prior written notice before ceasing services;
2. May not use the procedures in 34 C.F.R. part 300 subpart E in order to obtain agreement or a ruling that the services may be provided to the child;
3. Will not be considered to be in violation of the requirement to make FAPE available to the child because of the failure to provide the child with further services; and

4. Is not required to convene an ARD meeting or develop an IEP for further provision of services.

*34 C.F.R. 300.300(b)*

Reevaluations

A district shall ensure that each child with a disability is reevaluated if the district determines that the educational or related services needs of the child, including improved academic achievement and functional performance, warrant a reevaluation, or if the child's parent or teacher requests a reevaluation.

Reevaluation shall occur:

1. No more than once a year, unless the parent and the district agree otherwise; and
2. At least once every three years, unless the parent and district agree that a reevaluation is unnecessary.

A district shall obtain informed parental consent before conducting a reevaluation, except that informed parental consent is not needed if the district can demonstrate that it has taken reasonable measures to obtain consent and the child's parent has failed to respond.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(a)(2), (c)(3); 34 C.F.R. 300.303*

Evaluation for  
Change in Eligibility

A district must evaluate a child with a disability before determining that the child is no longer a child with a disability. However, an evaluation is not required before the termination of eligibility due to graduation from secondary school with a regular diploma or due to exceeding the age eligibility for FAPE under state law. If a child's eligibility terminates under the aforementioned circumstances, a district must provide a summary of academic achievement and functional performance, which shall include recommendations on how to assist the child in meeting the child's postsecondary goals. *34 C.F.R. 300.305(e); 20 U.S.C. 1414(c)(5)*

All students graduating under 19 Administrative Code 89.170 [see EIF] must be provided with a summary of academic achievement and functional performance as described above. This summary must consider, as appropriate, the views of the parent and student and written recommendations from adult service agencies on how to assist the student in meeting postsecondary goals. An evaluation as required by 34 C.F.R. 300.305(e)(1), must be included as part of the summary for a student graduating under 19 Administrative Code 89.1070(b)(3)(A), (B), or (C) or (f)(4)(A), (B), or (C). *19 TAC 89.1070(g)*

Independent  
Evaluation

The parents have a right to obtain an independent educational evaluation of their child. If a parent requests an independent evaluation, a district shall provide the parents with information regarding where one can be obtained and the district's criteria for independent evaluations.

The results of a parent-initiated independent educational evaluation, whether at public or private expense, must be considered by the district if it meets the district's criteria, in any decision made with respect to providing FAPE to the child.

*At Public  
Expense*

If a parent requests an independent evaluation at public expense, the district shall, without unnecessary delay, either:

1. File a due process complaint to request a hearing to show that its evaluation is appropriate; or
2. Ensure that an independent evaluation is provided at public expense, unless the district demonstrates that the evaluation obtained by the parent did not meet district criteria.

*At Private  
Expense*

If a district initiates a hearing, and the final decision is that the district's evaluation is appropriate, the parent still has a right to an independent evaluation, but not at public expense.

*34 C.F.R. 300.502*

**Prescription  
Medication**

An employee of a district is prohibited from requiring a child to obtain a prescription for a substance covered under the federal Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.) as a condition of attending school, receiving an evaluation for special education, or receiving special education and related services.

An employee is not prohibited from consulting or sharing classroom-based observations with parents regarding a student's academic and functional performance, behavior in the classroom or school, or the need for evaluation for special education or related services.

*20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(25)*

**Admission, Review,  
and Dismissal  
Committee**

Each district must establish an admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee for each eligible student with a disability and for each student for whom a full individual and initial evaluation is conducted. The ARD committee is the individualized education program (IEP) team defined in federal law and regulations, including 34 C.F.R. 300.321.

The district is responsible for all of the functions for which the IEP team is responsible under federal law and regulations and for which the ARD committee is responsible under state law, including the responsibilities listed at 19 Administrative Code 89.1050.

*19 TAC 89.1050(a); 34 C.F.R. 300.116(a), .321(a)*

**Committee  
Members**

A district shall ensure that each ARD committee meeting includes all of the following:

1. The parents of a student with a disability;
2. At least one regular education teacher of the student (if the student is, or may be, participating in the regular education environment);
3. At least one special education teacher or, if appropriate, at least one special education provider of the student;
4. A representative of the district who:
  - a. Is qualified to provide or supervise the provision of specially designed instruction to meet the unique needs of students with disabilities;
  - b. Is knowledgeable about the general education curriculum; and
  - c. Is knowledgeable about the availability of resources of the district;
5. Other individuals who have knowledge or special expertise regarding the student at the discretion of the district or the parent;
6. An individual who can interpret the instructional implications of evaluation results, who may be a member of the ARD committee described in items 2–5;
7. The student, if appropriate;
8. For a student with an auditory impairment, including deaf-blindness, a teacher who is certified in the education of students with auditory impairments;

9. For a student with a visual impairment, including deaf-blindness, a teacher who is certified in the education of students with visual impairments;
10. For a student with limited English proficiency, a member of the language-proficiency assessment committee (LPAC), who may also be a member as described at items 2 or 3;
11. A representative of any participating agency likely to be responsible for providing transition services for a student, as appropriate, and with the consent of the student's parents or a student who has reached the age of majority; and
12. When considering initial or continued placement of a student in a career and technical education program, a representative from career and technical education, preferably the teacher.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(d)(1)(B); 34 C.F.R. 300.321; 19 TAC 75.1023(d)(1), 89.1050(c)*

A district member of the ARD committee shall not be required to attend an IEP meeting, in whole or in part, if the parent and the district agree in writing that the attendance is not necessary because the member's area of the curriculum or related services is not being modified or discussed during the meeting.

A district member of the ARD committee may be excused from attending an IEP meeting, in whole or in part, when the meeting involves a modification to or discussion of the member's area of curriculum or related services if the parent, in writing, and the district consent to the excusal and the member submits, in writing, to the parent and the ARD committee, input into the development of the IEP before the meeting.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(d)(1)(C); 34 C.F.R. 300.321(e)*

*Regular  
Education  
Teacher*

If an ARD committee is required to include a regular education teacher, the regular education teacher must, to the extent practicable, be a teacher who is responsible for implementing a portion of the child's IEP. *Education Code 29.005(a)*

*Parent  
Involvement*

A district shall take steps to ensure that one or both parents of a student with a disability are present at each ARD committee meeting or are afforded an opportunity to participate, including:

1. Notifying the parents of the meeting early enough to ensure that they will have an opportunity to attend (the notice shall include the purpose, time, and location of the meeting, who will be in attendance, that persons with knowledge or special expertise may be invited by either the parent or the district, and

that the Part C service coordinator or other representatives of the Part C system may be invited to the initial meeting for a child previously served under a Part C early childhood intervention program); and

2. Scheduling the meeting at a mutually agreed on time and place.

If the purpose of the meeting is to consider transition services, the notice must also indicate this purpose, indicate that the district will invite the student, and identify any other agency that will be invited to send a representative.

*34 C.F.R. 300.322(a)–(b); 19 TAC 89.1050(d)*

*Alternative  
Means of  
Meeting  
Participation*

If neither parent can attend an ARD meeting, the district must allow other methods of participation, such as through telephone calls or video conferencing. *20 U.S.C. 1414(f); 34 C.F.R. 300.322(c); 19 TAC 89.1050(d)*

An ARD meeting may be conducted without a parent in attendance if a district is unable to convince the parents that they should attend, but the district shall have a record of its attempts to arrange a mutually agreed on time and place, such as detailed records of telephone calls, correspondence, or visits made or attempted and the results of any of those actions. *34 C.F.R. 300.322(d)*

Meetings

A district shall initiate and conduct ARD committee meetings for the purpose of developing, reviewing, and revising the IEP of a child with a disability. The committee shall review each child's IEP periodically, and, if appropriate, revise the IEP. A meeting must be held for this purpose at least once a year. The ARD committee must also determine the child's placement once a year.

A "meeting" does not include informal or unscheduled conversations involving district personnel and conversations on issues such as teaching methodology, lesson plans, or coordination of service provisions if those issues are not addressed in the child's IEP. A "meeting" also does not include preparatory activities that district personnel engage in to develop a proposal or response to a parent proposal that will be discussed at a later meeting.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(d)(4); 34 C.F.R. 300.116(b)(1), .324(b), (c)(1), .501(b)(3)*

*Meeting at  
Parent's Request*

Upon receipt of a written request for an ARD committee meeting from a parent, the school district must schedule and convene a meeting in accordance with the procedures in 19 Administrative Code 89.1050(d) or within five school days, provide the parent with

written notice explaining why the district refuses to convene a meeting. *19 TAC 89.1050(e)*

Written Notice

If a parent is unable to speak English, a district must provide the parent with a written notice regarding the ARD committee meeting required under 19 Administrative Code 89.1050(d) (notice for purposes of scheduling) or (e)(2) (notice explaining why the district refuses to convene a meeting) in the parent's native language, unless it is clearly not feasible to do so. If the parent's native language is not a written language, the school district must take steps to ensure that the notice is translated orally or by other means to the parent in his or her native language or other mode of communication so that the parent understands the content of the notice. *19 TAC 89.1050(f)*

**Transfer Students**

In-State Transfers

When a student transfers to a new district within the state in the same school year and the parents verify that the student was receiving special education services in the previous district or the previous district verifies in writing or by telephone that the student was receiving special education services, the new school district must meet the requirements of 34 C.F.R. 300.323(e) regarding the provision of special education services. The time line for completing the requirements outlined in 34 C.F.R. 300.323(e)(1) or (2) is 30 school days from the date the student is verified as being a student eligible for special education services.

Transfers from  
Another State

When a student transfers from a district in another state in the same school year and the parents verify that the student was receiving special education services in the previous district or the previous district verifies in writing or by telephone that the student was receiving special education services, the new district must meet the requirements of 34 C.F.R. 300.323(f) regarding the provision of special education services. If the new district determines that an evaluation is necessary, the evaluation is considered a full individual and initial evaluation and must be completed within the time lines established by 19 Administrative Code 89.1011(c) and (e). The time line for completing the requirements in 34 C.F.R. 300.323(f)(2), if appropriate, is 30 calendar days from the date of the completion of the evaluation report. If the school district determines that an evaluation is not necessary, the time line for completing the requirements outlined in 34 C.F.R. 300.323(f)(2) is 30 school days from the date the student is verified as being a student eligible for special education services.

*19 TAC 89.1050(j)*

Transfer of Records

The district in which the child enrolls shall take reasonable steps to promptly obtain the child's records, including the IEP and supporting documents and any other records relating to the provision of

special education or related services to the child, from the previous district.

The previous district shall take reasonable steps to promptly respond to the request from the new district and must furnish the new school district with a copy of the student's records, including the student's special education records, not later than the tenth working day after the date a request for the information is received by the previous school district.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(d)(2)(C)(ii); 34 C.F.R. 300.323(g); 19 TAC 89.1050(j)(3)*

**Students Who Are Homeless or in Substitute Care**

When a student who is homeless or in substitute care transfers into a district after being referred by a previous district for a special education evaluation, the receiving district must accept the referral and ensure that any written report of a full individual and initial evaluation must be completed in accordance with the timelines established in 19 Administrative Code 89.1011 (relating to Full Individual and Initial Evaluation).

When a student who is already eligible for special education and is homeless or in substitute care transfers into a district during the school year, the receiving district must ensure that it meets the student transfer requirements of 19 Administrative Code 89.1050(j) (relating to the Admission, Review, and Dismissal Committee).

*19 TAC 89.1615*

**Military Dependents**

A district shall initially provide comparable services to a military student with disabilities based on his or her current IEP. This does not preclude the district from performing subsequent evaluations to ensure appropriate placement of the student. *Education Code 162.002 art. V, C [See FDD]*

**Individualized Education Program**

A district shall develop, review, and revise an IEP for each child with a disability. *20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(4); 34 C.F.R. 300.320(a)*

At the beginning of each school year, a district shall have in effect, for each child with a disability in its jurisdiction, an IEP. *20 U.S.C. 1414(d)(2)(A); 34 C.F.R. 300.323(a)*

The term "individualized education program" means a written statement for each student with a disability that documents the decisions of the ARD committee with respect to issues discussed at each committee meeting and includes:

1. A statement of the student's present levels of academic achievement and functional performance;

2. A statement of measurable annual goals, including academic and functional goals;
3. A description of how the student's progress toward the annual goals will be measured and when periodic reports on the progress of the student will be provided;
4. A statement of the specific special education and related services and supplementary aids and services, based on peer-reviewed research to the extent practicable, to be provided to the student;
5. A statement of the program modifications or supports for school personnel that will be provided for the student;
6. An explanation of the extent, if any, to which the student will not participate with nondisabled students in the regular class and in extracurricular and nonacademic activities;
7. The projected dates for initiation of services and modifications and the anticipated frequency, location, and duration of these services and modifications;
8. A statement of any individual appropriate and allowable accommodations that are necessary to measure the academic achievement and functional performance of the student on state or district-wide assessments;
9. If the ARD committee determines that the student must take an alternative assessment instead of a particular regular state or district-wide assessment, a statement of why the student cannot participate in the regular assessment and why the particular assessment selected is appropriate for the student;
10. If the ARD committee determines that a student is in need of extended school year (ESY) services, identification of the goals and objectives that will be addressed during ESY services;
11. Beginning not later than when a student reaches 14 years of age and updated annually thereafter, the ARD committee's consideration and decisions regarding the transition issues under 19 Administrative Code 89.1055(h) [see EHBAD];
12. Beginning not later than the first IEP to be in effect when the student is 16, or younger if determined appropriate by the ARD committee, and updated annually thereafter, a statement of appropriate measurable postsecondary goals and transition services needed to assist the student in reaching those goals [see EHBAD];

13. Beginning not later than one year before the student reaches the age of 17, a statement that the student has been informed of the rights that will transfer to the student upon reaching the age of majority;
14. The date of the meeting;
15. The name, position, and signature of each member participating in the meeting; and
16. An indication of whether the child's parents, the adult student, if applicable, and the administrator agreed or disagreed with the decisions of the ARD committee.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(d); 34 C.F.R. 300.320; Education Code 29.005(b-1), .011; 19 TAC 89.1055*

The written statement of a student's IEP may be required to include only information included in the model form developed by TEA under Education Code 29.0051(a) and posted on the TEA website. A district may use the model form to comply with the requirements for an IEP under 20 U.S.C. 1414(d). *Education Code 29.005(f), .0051*

Behavioral  
Intervention Plan

The ARD committee may determine that a behavior improvement plan or a behavioral intervention plan (BIP) is appropriate for a student for whom the committee has developed an IEP. If the committee makes that determination, the BIP shall be included as part of the student's IEP and provided to each teacher with responsibility for educating the student. *Education Code 29.005(g); 19 TAC 89.1055(g)*

Translation of IEP  
into Native  
Language

If the parent is unable to speak English and Spanish is the parent's native language, a district shall provide a written or audiotaped copy of the student's IEP translated into Spanish. If the parent's native language is other than Spanish or English, a district shall make a good faith effort to provide a written or audiotaped copy of the student's IEP translated into the parent's native language. *Education Code 29.005(d)*

A written copy of the student's IEP translated into Spanish or the parent's native language means that all of the text in the student's IEP in English is accurately translated into the target language in written form. The IEP translated into the target language must be a comparable rendition of the IEP in English and not a partial translation or summary of the IEP in English.

An audio recording of the student's IEP translated into Spanish or the parent's native language means that all of the content in the student's IEP in English is orally translated into the target language and recorded with an audio device. A district is not prohibited from

providing the parent with an audio recording of an ARD committee meeting at which the parent was assisted by an interpreter as long as the audio recording provided to the parent contains an oral translation into the target language of all of the content in the student's IEP in English.

If a parent's native language is not a written language, the district must take steps to ensure that the student's IEP is translated orally or by other means to the parent in his or her native language or other mode of communication.

Under 34 C.F.R. 300.322(f), a district must give a parent a written copy of the student's IEP at no cost to the parent. A school district meets this requirement by providing a parent with a written copy of the student's IEP in English or by providing a parent with a written translation of the student's IEP in the parent's native language as provided above.

*19 TAC 89.1050(i)*

Autism/Pervasive  
Developmental  
Disorder

For students with autism/pervasive developmental disorders, the following strategies shall be considered by the ARD committee, based on peer-reviewed, research-based educational programming practices to the extent practicable and, when needed, addressed in the IEP:

1. Extended educational programming;
2. Daily schedules reflecting minimal unstructured time and active engagement in learning activities;
3. In-home training and community-based training or viable alternatives that assist the student with the acquisition of social/behavioral skills;
4. Positive behavior support strategies based on relevant information;
5. Beginning at any age, futures planning for integrated living, work, community, and educational environments that considers skills necessary to function in current and postsecondary environments;
6. Parent/family training and support, provided by qualified personnel with experience in Autism Spectrum Disorders (ASD);
7. Suitable staff-to-student ratio appropriate to identified activities and as needed to achieve social/behavioral progress based on the student's developmental and learning level (acquisition, fluency, maintenance, generalization) that encourages work towards individual independence;

8. Communication interventions, including language forms and functions that enhance effective communication across settings;
9. Social skills supports and strategies based on social skills assessment/curriculum and provided across settings;
10. Professional educator/staff support; and
11. Teaching strategies based on peer-reviewed, research-based practices for students with ASD.

If the ARD committee determines that services are not needed in one or more of the areas in 1–11 above, the IEP shall include a statement reflecting that decision and the basis upon which the determination was made.

*19 TAC 89.1055(e)–(f)*

*Visual  
Impairment*

If a district provides special education services to students with visual impairments, it shall have written procedures as required in Education Code 30.002(c)(10) (staff access to resources). *19 TAC 89.1075(b)*

*Collaborative  
Process*

All members of the ARD committee shall have the opportunity to participate in a collaborative manner in developing the IEP. Decisions of the ARD committee concerning the required elements of the IEP shall be made by mutual agreement, if possible. The ARD committee may agree to an annual IEP or an IEP of shorter duration.

*Ten-Day Recess*

When mutual agreement about all required elements of the IEP is not achieved, the parent who disagrees must be offered a single opportunity to recess and reconvene the ARD committee meeting. The period of time for reconvening the ARD committee meeting must not exceed ten school days, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise. The ARD committee must schedule the reconvened meeting at a mutually agreed upon time and place. The opportunity to recess and reconvene is not required when:

1. The student's presence on campus represents a danger of physical harm to the student or others;
2. The student has committed an expellable offense; or
3. The student has committed an offense that may lead to placement in a disciplinary alternative education program. [See FOF]

These requirements do not prohibit the ARD committee from recessing an ARD committee meeting for reasons other than the failure to reach mutual agreement about all required elements of an IEP.

During the recess, the ARD committee members must consider alternatives, gather additional data, prepare further documentation, and/or obtain additional resource persons who may assist in enabling the ARD committee to reach mutual agreement.

*Failure to Reach Agreement*

If a recess is implemented and the ARD committee still cannot reach mutual agreement, a district shall implement the IEP it has determined to be appropriate for the student. Each member of the ARD committee who disagrees with the IEP developed by the ARD committee is entitled to include a statement of disagreement in the IEP.

If the IEP is not developed by agreement, the written statement of the program must include the basis of the disagreement. Each member of the ARD committee who disagrees with the IEP developed by the committee is entitled to include a statement of disagreement in the written statement of the program.

*Education Code 29.005(c); 19 TAC 89.1050(g)*

Modification of Existing IEP

Changes to the IEP may be made either by the entire ARD committee or by amending the IEP by agreement, rather than redrafting the entire IEP.

After the annual IEP meeting for a school year, the parent and district may agree not to convene an IEP meeting for the purposes of making changes to the IEP and instead may develop a written document to amend or modify the child's current IEP.

Upon request, a parent shall be provided with a revised copy of the IEP with amendments incorporated.

To the extent possible, a district shall encourage the consolidation of reevaluation meetings for the child and other ARD meetings for the child.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(d)(3)(D)-(F); 34 C.F.R. 300.324(a)(4)-(6)*

**Teacher Access to IEP**

Each district must ensure that each teacher who provides instruction to a student with a disability has access to relevant sections of the student's current IEP, is informed of the teacher's specific responsibilities related to implementation of the IEP, and has an opportunity to request assistance regarding implementation of the student's IEP. *19 TAC 89.1075(c)*

**Teacher Request to  
Review IEP**

Each district shall develop a process to be used by a teacher who instructs a student with a disability in a regular classroom setting:

1. To request a review of the student's IEP;
2. To provide input in the development of the student's IEP;
3. That provides for a timely district response to the teacher's request; and
4. That provides for notification to the student's parent or legal guardian of that response.

*Education Code 29.001(11); 19 TAC 89.1075(d)*



**Private School—  
District Placed**

Student Receives  
IEP

If a district places a child with a disability in a private school or facility, or refers the child to a private school or facility, as a means of carrying out the requirements of the special education laws, the district shall ensure that the child is provided special education and related services, in accordance with an individualized education program (IEP), at no cost to the parents. *20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(10)(B)(i)*

**Private School—  
Parent Placed**

When a parentally placed child with a disability is referred to a district, the district shall convene an admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee to determine whether the district can offer the child a free appropriate public education (FAPE). If the district determines that it can offer FAPE, it is not responsible for providing educational services to the child, except that the district must develop and implement an individualized services plan (ISP). *19 TAC 89.1096(b)*

Offer of FAPE  
Rejected

*Student Receives  
ISP*

If a district made FAPE available to a child with a disability and the parents elected to place the child in a private school or facility, the district is not required to pay for the cost of education, including special education and related services. However, the district must develop and implement an ISP. *20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(10)(C)(i); 34 C.F.R. 300.148(a)*

FAPE Offered but  
Not Provided

*Reimbursement*

If the parents of a child with a disability, who previously received special education and related services under the authority of a district, enroll the child in a private school without the consent or referral by the district, a court or a hearing officer may require the district to reimburse the parents for the cost of that enrollment if the court or hearing officer finds that the district had not made FAPE available to the child in a timely manner before the enrollment. This right of reimbursement is subject to the notice and other requirements set forth at *34 C.F.R. 300.148(d)*. *20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(10)(C)(ii); 34 C.F.R. 300.148(c)*

**Home School  
Students**

A home school student is considered a private school student, for purposes of a district's obligations under IDEA, if the home school provides elementary or secondary education that incorporates an adopted curriculum designed to meet basic educational goals, including scope and sequence of courses, and formal review and documentation of student progress. *19 TAC 89.1096(a)(2)*

**Individualized  
Services Plan (ISP)**

Each parentally placed private school child with a disability who has been designated to receive services shall have an ISP that describes the specific special education and related services that a district will provide the child.

Parentally placed private school children with disabilities may receive a different amount of services than children with disabilities in

public schools. No parentally placed private school child has an individual right to receive some or all of the special education and related services that the child would receive if enrolled in a public school.

Decisions about the services that will be provided must be made in accordance with 34 C.F.R. 300.134(c) (consultation process) and 300.137(c) (attendance of private school representatives at services plan committee meetings). A district must make the final decisions with respect to the services to be provided.

*34 C.F.R. 300.137, .138*

### **Dual Enrollment**

Parents shall have the right to “dual enroll” an eligible student age three or four in both the public school and a private school beginning on the student’s third birthday and continuing until the end of the school year in which the student turns five, or until the student is eligible to attend a district’s kindergarten program, whichever comes first, subject to the following:

1. The student’s ARD committee shall develop an IEP designed to provide the student with FAPE in the least restrictive environment (LRE).
2. From the IEP, the parent and the district shall determine which special education and/or related services will be provided to the student and the location where those services will be provided, based on the requirements concerning placement in the LRE and the policies and procedures of the district.
3. The district shall be responsible for employing and supervising the personnel providing the service, providing the needed instructional materials, and maintaining pupil accounting records. Materials and services provided shall be consistent with those provided for students enrolled only in the public school and shall remain the property of the district.

*19 TAC 89.1096(c)*

### **Responsible District**

The district where a student resides is responsible for providing special education and related services to a student whose parents choose dual enrollment.

If the parents decline dual enrollment, but request an ISP, the district where the private school is located is responsible for development of the ISP for a student designated to receive services.

*19 TAC 89.1096(c), (d)*

**Transportation**

If a student has been placed by his or her parents in a private school or facility, a district shall provide special transportation with federal funds only when the ARD committee determines that the condition of the student warrants the service in order for the student to receive the special education and related services (if any) set forth in the IEP. *19 TAC 89.1096(e)*

**District Charter Schools**

A district shall serve children with disabilities attending district charter schools in the same manner as it serves children with disabilities in its other schools and shall provide federal special education funds to those schools in the same manner as it provides those funds to its other schools. *20 U.S.C. 1413(a)(5); 34 C.F.R. 300.209(b)*

**Residential Facilities**

Identification of  
Students

If a residential facility that is licensed by appropriate state agencies is located within the district's boundaries, the district must provide special education and related services to eligible students residing in the facility.

If, after contacting the facility to offer services to eligible students with disabilities, a district determines that educational services are provided through a charter school, approved non-public school, or a facility operated private school, the district is not required to provide services. However, a district shall annually contact the facility to offer services to eligible students with disabilities.

*19 TAC 89.1001(c)*

District Placements

A district may contract with a public or private facility, institution, or agency inside or outside of Texas for residential placement for a student with a disability when the ARD committee determines that a residential placement is necessary for the student to receive FAPE. Contracts for residential placement must be approved by the commissioner. *Education Code 29.008(a); 19 TAC 89.61(a), .1092*

If placement in a public or private residential program is necessary to provide special education and related services, the program, including non-medical care and room and board, must be at no cost to the parents. *34 C.F.R. 300.104*

If a district contracts for education services, rather than providing the services itself, it shall oversee the implementation of the student's IEP and shall annually reevaluate the appropriateness of the arrangement. *Education Code 29.008(d)*

Further, a district shall have the responsibilities set forth at 19 Administrative Code 89.61 and 89.1092(a)(4) regarding students in residential placements. A district must contract with residential placements in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 89.1092.

Notification                      Within 30 calendar days from an ARD committee's decision to place a student in a residential education program, a district must electronically submit to TEA notice of and information regarding the placement in accordance with submission procedures specified by TEA.

*19 TAC 89.1092(b)*

Out-of-State Placements                      If a district contracts for an out-of-state residential placement, it shall do so in accordance with the rules for in-state residential placement, except that the facility shall be approved by the appropriate agency in the state in which the facility is located rather than by the Texas commissioner of education. *19 TAC 89.61(c)(3)*

**School for the Blind and Visually Impaired and School for the Deaf**

A district shall share the cost of education (excluding the summer program) for each of its students enrolled in the Texas School for the Blind and Visually Impaired or Texas School for the Deaf.

Before considering the student's educational placement for special education services, a district shall provide each parent of a student with visual or auditory impairments the following written information regarding the Texas School for the Deaf or Texas School for the Blind and Visually Impaired:

1. The availability of programs offered.
2. The eligibility and admissions requirements.
3. The student's rights to admission and to appeal admission decisions.

*Education Code 30.003(a), .004(a); 19 TAC 89.62*

A district may request services through the Texas School for the Blind and Visually Impaired or the Texas School for the Deaf in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 89.1085. *19 TAC 89.1085*

**Adult Prisons**

If a child with a disability is convicted as an adult under state law and incarcerated in an adult prison, the child's ARD committee may modify the child's IEP or placement, notwithstanding the LRE requirements, if the state has demonstrated a bona fide security or compelling penological interest that cannot otherwise be accommodated.

The following requirements do not apply to children with disabilities who are convicted as adults under state law and incarcerated in adult prisons:

1. Federal requirements pertaining to participation of students with disabilities in general assessments;

2. Requirements concerning transition planning and transition services, if the children's eligibility will end, because of their age, before they will be released from prison.

*20 U.S.C. 1414(d)(7)*



**Transition Services  
Defined**

“Transition services” means a coordinated set of activities for a child with a disability that:

1. Is designed to be within a results-oriented process, that is focused on improving the academic and functional achievement of the child to facilitate the child’s movement from school to post-school activities, including postsecondary education, vocational education, integrated employment (including supported employment), continuing and adult education, adult services, independent living, or community participation.
2. Is based on the individual child’s needs, taking into account the child’s strengths, preferences, and interests.
3. Includes instruction, related services, community experiences, the development of employment and other post-school adult living objectives, and if appropriate, acquisition of daily living skills and functional vocational evaluation.

*20 U.S.C. 1401(34); 34 C.F.R. 300.43*

**Individual Transition  
Planning**

Not later than when a student reaches 14 years of age, the admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee must consider, and if appropriate, address the following issues in the individualized education program (IEP):

1. Appropriate student involvement in the student's transition to life outside the public school system;
2. If the student is younger than 18 years of age, appropriate involvement in the student's transition by the student's parents and other persons invited to participate by the student's parents or the school district in which the student is enrolled;
3. If the student is at least 18 years of age, involvement in the student's transition and future by the student's parents and other persons, if the parent or other person is invited to participate by the student or the school district in which the student is enrolled or has the student's consent to participate pursuant to a supported decision-making agreement under Estates Code, Chapter 1357;
4. Appropriate postsecondary education options, including preparation for postsecondary-level coursework;
5. An appropriate functional vocational evaluation;
6. Appropriate employment goals and objectives;

7. If the student is at least 18 years of age, the availability of age-appropriate instructional environments, including community settings or environments that prepare the student for postsecondary education or training, competitive integrated employment, or independent living, in coordination with the student's transition goals and objectives;
8. Appropriate independent living goals and objectives;
9. Appropriate circumstances for facilitating a referral of a student or the student's parents to a governmental agency for services or public benefits, including a referral to a governmental agency to place the student on a waiting list for public benefits available to the student, such as a waiver program established under Section 1915(c), Social Security Act [42 U.S.C. Section 1396n(c)]; and
10. The use and availability of appropriate supplementary aids, services, curricula, and other opportunities to assist the student in developing decision-making skills; and supports and services to foster the student's independence and self-determination, including a supported decision-making agreement under Estates Code Chapter 1357.

In accordance with 34 C.F.R. 300.320(b), beginning not later than the first IEP to be in effect when the student turns 16 years of age, or younger if determined appropriate by the ARD committee, and updated annually thereafter, the IEP must include the following:

1. Appropriate measurable postsecondary goals based upon age-appropriate transition assessments related to training, education, employment, and, where appropriate, independent living skills; and
2. The transition services, including courses of study, needed to assist the student in reaching the postsecondary goals developed under item 1.

A student's ARD committee shall annually review the issues described above and, if necessary, update the portions of the student's IEP that address those issues.

[See EHBAB regarding membership of ARD committee for transition services meetings]

*20 U.S.C. 1414(d)(1)(A)(i)(VIII), 1414(d)(6); 34 C.F.R. 300.320(b); Education Code 29.011, .0111; 19 TAC 89.1055(h)-(j)*

Transition and  
Employment Guide

TEA is required to develop a transition and employment guide for students enrolled in special education programs and their parents

to provide information on statewide services and programs that assist in the transition to life outside the public school system. A school district shall:

1. Post the transition and employment guide on the district's website if the district maintains a website;
2. Provide written information and, if necessary, assistance to a student or parent regarding how to access the electronic version of the guide at:
  - a. The first meeting of the student's ARD committee at which transition is discussed; and
  - b. The first committee meeting at which transition is discussed that occurs after the date on which the guide is updated; and
3. On request, provide a printed copy of the guide to a student or parent.

*Education Code 29.0112(a), (e)*

## **Graduation**

Graduation with a regular high school diploma under 19 Administrative Code 89.1070(b)(1), (b)(3)(D), (f)(1), (f)(2), (f)(3) or (f)(4)(D) terminates a student's eligibility for special education services. For students who receive a diploma according to 19 Administrative Code 89.1070(b)(2), (b)(3)(A), (B), or (C) or (f)(4)(A), (B), or (C), the ARD committee must determine needed educational services upon the request of the student or parent to resume services, as long as the student meets the age requirements. *19 TAC 89.1070(a), (j)* [See EHBAA]

Graduation from high school with a regular diploma constitutes a change in placement that requires written prior notice to parents.

A district is not required to conduct an evaluation before termination of eligibility due to graduation from secondary school with a regular high school diploma or due to exceeding the age eligibility for a FAPE under state law.

A district shall provide the child with a summary of the child's academic achievement and functional performance, which shall include recommendations on how to assist the child in meeting the child's postsecondary goals.

[See EIF]

*20 U.S.C. 1414(c)(5); 34 C.F.R. 300.102(a)(3), .305(e)(2)*



**Compensatory  
Education Allotment**

Census Block

On a schedule determined by the commissioner of education and in accordance with Education Code 48.104, each district shall report to the agency the census block group in which each student enrolled in the district who is educationally disadvantaged resides.  
*Education Code 48.104(i)*

Use

At least 55 percent of the district's compensatory education funds must be used to:

1. Fund supplemental programs and services designed to eliminate any disparity in performance on assessment instruments administered under Education Code Chapter 39, Subchapter B or disparity in the rates of high school completion between:
  - a. Students who are educationally disadvantaged and students who are not educationally disadvantaged; and
  - b. Students at risk of dropping out of school, as defined below, and all other students; or
2. Support a program eligible under Title I of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 [see AID], and its subsequent amendments, and by federal regulations implementing that Act.

*Education Code 48.104(k)*

Dropout Prevention  
Strategies

A district with a high dropout rate, as determined by the commissioner, shall submit a plan to the commissioner describing the manner in which the district intends to use its compensatory education allotment for developing and implementing research-based strategies for dropout prevention.

A district shall submit the plan not later than December 1 of each school year preceding the school year in which the district will receive the compensatory education allotment to which the plan applies.

A district may not spend or obligate more than 25 percent of the district's compensatory education allotment unless the commissioner approves the plan.

A district's plan shall:

1. Design a dropout recovery plan that includes career and technology education courses or technology applications courses that lead to industry or career certification;
2. Integrate into the dropout recovery plan research-based strategies to assist students in becoming able academically to pursue postsecondary education, including:

- a. High-quality, college readiness instruction with strong academic and social supports;
  - b. Secondary to postsecondary bridging that builds college readiness skills, provides a plan for college completion, and ensures transition counseling; and
  - c. Information concerning appropriate supports available in the first year of postsecondary enrollment to ensure postsecondary persistence and success, to the extent funds are available for the purpose; and
3. Plan to offer advanced academic and transition opportunities, including dual credit courses and college preparatory courses, such as advanced placement courses.

A district may enter into a partnership with a public junior college in accordance with Education Code 29.402 [see GNC] in order to fulfill a plan.

Any program designed to fulfill a plan must comply with the requirements of Education Code 29.081(e) and (f).

*Education Code 29.918*

**Educationally  
Disadvantaged  
Students**

Student Eligibility

To be considered educationally disadvantaged in order to be counted to generate the compensatory education allotment pursuant to Education Code 48.104, a student must meet the income requirements for eligibility under the National School Lunch Program (NSLP), authorized by 42 U.S.C. 1751, et seq.

Districts may use the following approved methods for the purpose of receiving the compensatory education allotment pursuant to Education Code 48.104:

1. Parent certification, where the parent or guardian asserts meeting the income requirements for eligibility;
2. Direct certification, where the process by which eligible children are certified for free meals without the need for a household application based on household participation in one or more federal assistance programs; or
3. Direct verification, where public records are used to verify a student's eligibility for free or reduced-price meals when verification of student eligibility is required.

*19 TAC 61.1027(a)*

Virtual School  
Network

Districts must request prior approval from the commissioner to claim students receiving a full-time virtual education through the

state virtual school network in their counts of educationally disadvantaged students. The request must include a plan detailing the enhanced services to be delivered to full-time state virtual school network students and submitted in a manner and with a deadline specified by the commissioner. *19 TAC 61.1027(b)(3)(B)*

**Definition of At-Risk Student**

“Student at risk of dropping out of school” includes each student who is under 26 years of age and who:

1. Was not advanced from one grade level to the next for one or more school years, unless the student did not advance from prekindergarten or kindergarten to the next grade level only as a result of the request of the student’s parent;
2. If the student is in grades 7–12, did not maintain an average equivalent to 70 on a scale of 100 in two or more subjects in the foundation curriculum during a semester in the preceding or current school year, or is not maintaining such an average in two or more subjects in the foundation curriculum in the current semester;
3. Did not perform satisfactorily on a state assessment instrument and who has not in the previous or current school year subsequently performed on that instrument or another appropriate instrument at a level equal to at least 110 percent of the level of satisfactory performance on that instrument;
4. If the student is in prekindergarten, kindergarten, or grades 1–3, did not perform satisfactorily on a readiness test or assessment instrument administered during the current school year;
5. Is pregnant or is a parent;
6. Has been placed in a DAEP in accordance with Education Code 37.006 during the preceding or current school year;
7. Has been expelled in accordance with Education Code 37.007 during the preceding or current school year;
8. Is currently on parole, probation, deferred prosecution, or other conditional release;
9. Was previously reported through the Public Education Information Management System (PEIMS) to have dropped out of school;
10. Is a student of limited English proficiency, as defined by Section 29.052;

SPECIAL PROGRAMS  
COMPENSATORY/ACCELERATED SERVICES

EHBC  
(LEGAL)

11. Is in the custody or care of the Department of Family and Protective Services or has, during the current school year, been referred to the department by a school official, officer of the juvenile court, or law enforcement official;
12. Is homeless [see FD];
13. Resided in the preceding school year or resides in the current school year in a residential placement facility in a district, including a detention facility, substance abuse treatment facility, emergency shelter, psychiatric hospital, halfway house, cottage home operation, specialized child-care home, or general residential operation; or
14. Has been incarcerated, or has a parent or guardian who has been incarcerated, within the lifetime of the student, in a penal institution as defined by Penal Code 1.07.

*Education Code 29.081(d)(1)*

Regardless of the student's age, a student who participates in an adult education program provided under a high school diploma and industry certification charter school program is considered a "student at risk of dropping out of high school." *Education Code 29.081(d)(2)*

Local Eligibility  
Criteria

In addition to students described above, a student who satisfies local eligibility criteria adopted by a board may receive compensatory education services. The number of students receiving services under local eligibility criteria during a school year may not exceed ten percent of the number of students described above who received services from the district during the preceding school year. *Education Code 29.081(g)*

**Compensatory,  
Intensive, and  
Accelerated  
Instruction**

A district shall use student performance data from state basic skills assessment instruments and achievement tests to design and implement appropriate compensatory, intensive, or accelerated instructional services for students in the district's schools that enable the students to perform at grade level at the conclusion of the next regular school term. *Education Code 29.081(a)*

Accelerated  
Instruction

A district shall provide accelerated instruction to an enrolled student who has taken an end-of-course assessment instrument and has not performed satisfactorily or who is at risk of dropping out of school.

A district shall offer before the next scheduled administration of the assessment instrument, without cost to the student, additional accelerated instruction to each student in any subject in which the

student failed to perform satisfactorily on an end-of-course assessment instrument required for graduation.

A district that is required to provide accelerated instruction must separately budget sufficient funds for that purpose. [See CE]

A district shall evaluate the effectiveness of accelerated instruction programs and annually hold a public hearing to consider the results.

*Education Code 29.081(b), (b-1), (b-2), (b-3), 39.025(b-1)*

Each time a student fails to perform satisfactorily on an assessment instrument administered under Education Code 39.023(c), the district in which the student attends school shall provide to the student accelerated instruction in the applicable subject area, using funds appropriated for accelerated instruction under Education Code 28.0211. Accelerated instruction may require participation of the student before or after normal school hours and may include participation at times of the year outside normal school operations.  
*Education Code 28.0217*

*Effectiveness*

A district shall evaluate and document the effectiveness of the accelerated instruction in reducing any disparity in performance on state assessment instruments or disparity in the rates of high school completion between students at risk of dropping out of school and all other district students. *Education Code 29.081(c)*

**Dropout Recovery  
Education Programs**

A district may use a private or public community-based dropout recovery education program to provide alternative education programs for students at risk of dropping out of school. The program may be offered at a campus or through the use of an online program that leads to a high school diploma and prepares the student to enter the workforce. A campus-based dropout recovery education program must meet the criteria set forth at Education Code 29.081(e-1)(1)–(5). An online dropout recovery education program must meet the criteria set forth at Education Code 29.081(e-2)(1)–(8).

Students in attendance at a dropout recovery education program shall be included in a district's average daily attendance for funding purposes.

*Education Code 29.081(e)–(f)*

Communities in  
Schools

An elementary or secondary school receiving funding under Education Code 33.156 shall participate in the Communities in Schools (CIS) program if the number of students enrolled in the school who are at risk of dropping out of school is equal to at least ten percent

of the number of students in average daily attendance at the school, as determined by TEA. *Education Code 33.157*

**Optional Extended Year Program**

A district may set aside an amount from the district's compensatory education allotment or may apply to the agency for funding of an extended year program. *Education Code 29.082(a); 19 TAC 105.1001*

**Optional Flexible Year Program**

A district may provide an optional flexible year program (OFYP) for students who did not or are not likely to perform successfully on state assessment instruments or who would not otherwise be promoted to the next grade level. *Education Code 29.0821; 19 TAC 129.1029*

**Optional Flexible School Day Program**

Notwithstanding Education Code 25.081 or 25.082, a district may apply to the commissioner to provide a flexible school day program (OFSDP) for students who:

1. Have dropped out of school or are at risk of dropping out of school as defined by Education Code 29.081;
2. Attend a campus that is implementing an innovative redesign of the campus or an early college high school under a plan approved by the commissioner; or
3. As a result of attendance requirements under Education Code 25.092, will be denied credit for one or more classes in which the students have been enrolled.

*Education Code 29.0822*

A district may apply to the commissioner to provide an OFSDP for students, in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 129.1027.

A board must approve the application. The board must include the OFSDP as an item on the regular agenda for a board meeting in compliance with 19 Administrative Code 129.1027(h)(2) before applying to operate an OFSDP. The application shall include the information described in 19 Administrative Code 129.1027.

*19 TAC 129.1027(c)*

**Tutorial Services**

A district may provide tutorial services at district schools. If a district provides tutorial services, it shall require a student whose grade in a subject for a reporting period is lower than the equivalent of 70 on a scale of 100 to attend tutorials. [See EC for provisions on loss of class time.]

A district may provide transportation services to accommodate students who are required to attend tutorials and who are eligible for regular transportation.

*Education Code 29.084*

**Basic Skills  
Programs**

A district may apply to the commissioner for funding of basic skills programs for students in grade 9 who are at risk of not earning sufficient credit or who have not earned sufficient credit to advance to grade 10 and who fail to meet minimum skills levels established by the commissioner.

With the consent of a student's parent or guardian, a district may assign a student to the basic skills program.

A basic skills program may not exceed 210 instructional days and must meet the requirements set forth at Education Code 29.086.

*Education Code 29.086(a)*

**After-School and  
Summer Intensive  
Mathematics and  
Science Programs**

A district may provide an intensive after-school program or an intensive program during the period that school is recessed for the summer to provide mathematics and science instruction to:

1. Students who are not performing at grade level in mathematics or science to assist those students in performing at grade level;
2. Students who are not performing successfully in a mathematics course or science course to assist those students in successfully completing the course; or
3. Other students as determined by the district.

Before providing a program, a board must adopt a policy for:

1. Determining student eligibility for participating in the program that:
  - a. Prescribes the grade level or course a student must be enrolled in to be eligible; and
  - b. Provides for considering teacher recommendations in determining eligibility;
2. Ensuring that parents of or persons standing in parental relation to eligible students are provided notice of the program;
3. Ensuring that eligible students are encouraged to attend the program;

4. Ensuring that the program is offered at one or more locations in the district that are easily accessible to eligible students; and
5. Measuring student progress on completion of the program.

*Education Code 29.088, .090; 19 TAC 102.1041*

**Mentoring Services Program**

A district may provide a mentoring services program to students at risk of dropping out of school. A board may arrange for any public or nonprofit community-based organization to come to the district's schools and implement the program.

A board shall obtain the consent of a student's parent or guardian before allowing the student to participate in the program.

*Education Code 29.089*

**Accelerated Reading Instruction Program**

A district shall implement an accelerated reading instruction program that provides reading instruction that addresses reading deficiencies to each student in kindergarten, first grade, or second grade who is determined, on the basis of reading instrument results [see EKC], to be at risk for dyslexia or other reading difficulties. The district shall determine the form, content, and timing of the program.

A district shall provide additional reading instruction and intervention to each student given the seventh grade reading assessment [see EKC], as appropriate to improve the student's reading skills in the relevant areas identified through the assessment instrument.

*Education Code 28.006(g), (g-1), (k)*

**Intensive Program of Instruction**

State Assessments

A district shall offer an intensive program of instruction to a student who does not perform satisfactorily on a state assessment instrument or is not likely to receive a high school diploma before the fifth school year following the student's enrollment in grade 9, as determined by the district.

The program shall be designed to:

1. Enable the student to:
  - a. To the extent practicable, perform at the student's grade level at the conclusion of the next regular school term; or
  - b. Attain a standard of annual growth specified by a district and reported by the district to TEA; and
2. If applicable, carry out the purposes of Education Code 28.0211. [See EIE]

Students Receiving Special Education Services	<p>For a student in a special education program who does not perform satisfactorily on an assessment instrument administered under Education Code 39.023(a), (b), or (c), the student's admission, review, and dismissal committee shall design the program to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Enable the student to attain a standard of annual growth on the basis of the student's individualized education program (IEP); and</li><li>2. If applicable, carry out the purposes of Education Code 28.0211. [See EIE]</li></ol>
Graduation Requirements	<p>A district shall use funds appropriated by the legislature for an intensive program of instruction to plan and implement intensive instruction and other activities aimed at helping a student satisfy state and local high school graduation requirements.</p>
No Cause of Action	<p>A district's determination of the appropriateness of an intensive program of instruction for a student is final and does not create a cause of action.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.0213</i></p>
<b>College Preparatory Courses</b>	<p>Each district shall partner with at least one institution of higher education to develop and provide courses in college preparatory mathematics and English language arts. The courses must be designed:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. For students at the 12th grade level whose performance on:<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. An end-of-course assessment instrument required under Education Code 39.023(c) does not meet college readiness standards; or</li><li>b. Coursework, a college entrance examination, or an assessment instrument designated under Education Code 51.334 [Texas Success Initiative (TSI) assessment] indicates that the student is not ready to perform entry-level college coursework; and</li></ol></li><li>2. To prepare students for success in entry-level college courses.</li></ol> <p>A course must be provided on the campus of the high school offering the course or through distance learning or as an online course provided through an institution of higher education with which the district partners.</p>
Faculty	<p>Appropriate faculty of each high school offering courses and appropriate faculty of each institution of higher education with which the district partners shall meet regularly as necessary to ensure that each course is aligned with college readiness expectations.</p>

Notice	Each district shall provide a notice to each eligible student and the student's parent or guardian regarding the benefits of enrolling in a course.
Credit Earned	A student who successfully completes an English language arts course may use the credit earned toward satisfying the advanced English language arts curriculum requirement for the foundation high school program under Education Code 28.025(b-1)(1). A student who successfully completes a mathematics course may use the credit earned in the course toward satisfying an advanced mathematics curriculum requirement under Education Code 28.025 after completion of the mathematics curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program under Education Code 28.025(b-1)(2).
Dual Credit	A course may be offered for dual credit at the discretion of the institution of higher education with which a district partners.
Instructional Materials	Each district, in consultation with each institution of higher education with which the district partners, shall develop or purchase instructional materials for a course consistent with Education Code Chapter 31. The instructional materials must include technology resources that enhance the effectiveness of the course and draw on established best practices.  <i>Education Code 28.014</i>
End-of-Course Exam	A student enrolled in a college preparatory mathematics or English language arts course under Education Code 28.014 who satisfies the TSI college readiness benchmarks on an assessment instrument administered at the end of the course satisfies the requirements concerning and is exempt from the administration of the Algebra I or the English I and English II end-of-course assessment instruments, as applicable, as prescribed by Education Code 39.023(c) [see EKB], even if the student did not perform satisfactorily on a previous administration of the applicable end-of-course assessment instrument. A student who fails to perform satisfactorily on the assessment instrument may retake that assessment instrument or may take the appropriate end-of-course assessment instrument. <i>Education Code 39.025(a-1)</i>

<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>High School Diploma..... 2</b>
	FAFSA Required..... 2
	Individual Graduation Committee..... 3
	Students Who Entered Grade 9 Before the 2011–12 School Year ..... 5
	Special Education..... 6
	Posthumous Diploma ..... 6
	Diplomas for Veterans ..... 7
	<b>Personal Graduation Plan ..... 7</b>
	Junior High or Middle School PGP ..... 7
	High School PGP ..... 8
	<b>Early Graduation ..... 9</b>
	<b>State Graduation Requirements..... 9</b>
	Students Entering Grade 9 ..... 9
	Students Who Entered Grade 9 Before the 2014–15 School Year ..... 16
	<b>Transfers from Out-of-State or Nonpublic Schools ..... 19</b>
	<b>Graduation of Students Receiving Special Education Services ..... 20</b>
	Modified Curriculum and Content ..... 20
	Employability and Self-Help Skills..... 20
	Summary of Academic Achievement and Evaluation ..... 20
	<b>Graduation of Military Dependents ..... 22</b>
	Course Waiver..... 22
	Transfers During Senior Year..... 22
	Substitute Passing Standard ..... 23
	<b>Graduation of Student Who Is Homeless or in Conservatorship of DFPS..... 23</b>

- High School Diploma** A student may graduate and receive a diploma only if the student:
1. Successfully completes the curriculum requirements identified by the State Board of Education (SBOE) [see State Graduation Requirements, below], has performed satisfactorily on applicable state assessments [see EKB], and complies with the financial aid application requirements in Education Code 28.0256 [see below]; or
  2. Successfully completes an individualized education program (IEP) developed under Education Code 29.005. [See EHBAB]
- Education Code 28.025(c)*

---

**Note:** Education Code 28.0256 applies beginning with students enrolled at the 12th grade level during the 2021–22 school year.

---

- FAFSA Required** Before graduating from high school, each student must complete and submit a free application for federal student aid (FAFSA) or a Texas application for state financial aid (TASFA).
- A student is not required to comply with the above provision if:
1. The student's parent or other person standing in parental relation submits a signed form indicating that the parent or other person authorizes the student to decline to complete and submit the financial aid application;
  2. The student signs and submits the form described above on the student's own behalf if the student is 18 years of age or older or the student's disabilities of minority have been removed for general purposes under Family Code Chapter 31; or
  3. A school counselor authorizes the student to decline to complete and submit the financial aid application for good cause, as determined by the school counselor.

A district shall adopt a form to be used for purposes of this provision. The form must be approved by the Texas Education Agency (TEA) and made available in English, Spanish, and any other language spoken by a majority of the students enrolled in a bilingual education or special language program under Education Code Subchapter B, Chapter 29, in the district.

If a school counselor notifies a district whether a student has complied with this section for purposes of determining whether the student meets high school graduation requirements under Education Code 28.025, the school counselor may only indicate whether the

student has complied with this section and may not indicate the manner in which the student complied.

*Education Code 28.0256*

---

**Note:** Education Code 28.0258 and 19 Administrative Code 74.1025 related to individual graduation committees expire September 1, 2023.

---

Individual  
Graduation  
Committee

Without complying with the requirements above, a student may receive a diploma if the person is eligible for a diploma as determined by an individual graduation committee (IGC) established under Education Code 28.0258. *Education Code 28.025(c-6)*

A student receiving special education services is not subject to the IGC requirements in Education Code 28.0258 or 19 Administrative Code 74.1025. A student's admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee determines whether a student is required to achieve satisfactory performance on an end-of-course (EOC) assessment to graduate. *19 TAC 74.1025(n)* [See EHBAB]

For each 11th or 12th grade student who has failed to comply with the EOC assessment instrument performance requirements under Education Code 39.025 for not more than two courses, the district shall establish an IGC at the end of or after the student's 11th grade year to determine whether the student may qualify to graduate. A student may not qualify to graduate as a result of an IGC decision before the student's 12th grade year.

The IGC shall be composed of:

1. The principal or principal's designee;
2. For each EOC assessment instrument on which the student failed to perform satisfactorily, the teacher of the course;
3. The department chair or lead teacher supervising the teacher(s) above; and
4. As applicable:
  - a. The student's parent or person standing in parental relation to the student;
  - b. A designated advocate if the parent is unable to serve; or
  - c. The student, at the student's option, if the student is at least 18 years of age or is an emancipated minor.

The superintendent shall establish procedures for convening the committee.

The district shall provide an appropriate translator, if available, for a parent, advocate, or student who is unable to speak English.

*Education Code 28.0258(a)–(c), (c-2); 19 TAC 74.1025(b)*

A district may not establish an initial IGC for eligible students after June 10 or before the start of the next school year. Once the IGC has been established, it is the original IGC for that student.

If a student leaves a district after an original IGC has been established and before that original IGC awards a high school diploma to the student, any other district that later enrolls the student shall request information from the student's original IGC of record and shall implement the original IGC recommendations to the extent possible.

*Alternate  
Members*

In the event that the teacher identified in item 2 above is unavailable, the principal shall designate as an alternate member of the committee a teacher certified in the subject of the EOC assessment on which the student failed to perform satisfactorily and who is most familiar with the student's performance in that subject area.

In the event that the individual identified above in item 3 above is unavailable, the principal shall designate as an alternate member of the committee an experienced teacher certified in the subject of the EOC assessment on which the student failed to perform satisfactorily and who is familiar with the content of and instructional practices for the applicable course.

In the event that the student's parent or person standing in parental relation to the student is unavailable to participate in the IGC, the principal shall designate an advocate with knowledge of the student to serve as an alternate member of the committee.

*19 TAC 74.1025(c), (e), (g)–(i)*

*Notice*

A district shall ensure a good faith effort is made to timely notify the appropriate person described under item 4 above of the time and place for convening the IGC and the purpose of the committee. The notice must be provided in person or by regular mail or email; clear and easy to understand; and written in English, in Spanish, or, to the extent practicable, in the native language of the appropriate person. *Education Code 28.0258(d)*

ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT  
GRADUATION

EIF  
(LEGAL)

*Curriculum  
Requirements*

To be eligible to graduate and receive a high school diploma from the IGC, a student must successfully complete the curriculum requirements required for high school graduation. [See State Graduation Requirements, below] *Education Code 28.0258(e)*

*Additional  
Requirements to  
Graduate*

A student's IGC shall recommend additional requirements by which the student may qualify to graduate, including additional remediation; and for each EOC assessment instrument on which the student failed to perform satisfactorily:

1. The completion of a project related to the subject area of the course that demonstrates proficiency in the subject area; or
2. The preparation of a portfolio of work samples in the subject area of the course, including work samples from the course that demonstrate proficiency in the subject area.

A student may submit to the IGC coursework previously completed to satisfy a recommended additional requirement.

*Education Code 28.0258(f), (g)*

In determining whether a student is qualified to graduate, the committee shall consider the criteria at Education Code 28.0258(h) and any other academic information designated for consideration by the board. After considering the criteria, the committee may determine that the student is qualified to graduate. A student may graduate and receive a high school diploma on the basis of the committee's decision only if the student successfully completes all additional requirements recommended by the committee, the student meets applicable curriculum requirements, and the committee's vote is unanimous. The decision of a committee is final and may not be appealed. *Education Code 28.0258(i)*

*English  
Language  
Learners*

For provisions related to an IGC and English language learners (ELL), see EKB.

Students Who  
Entered Grade 9  
Before the 2011–12  
School Year

In accordance with Education Code 28.02541, a district may award a high school diploma to an individual who:

1. Entered grade 9 before the 2011–12 school year;
2. Successfully completed the curriculum requirements for high school graduation applicable when the individual entered grade 9;
3. Has not performed satisfactorily on the exit-level assessment instrument or part of an assessment instrument required for high school graduation, including an alternative assessment instrument offered under Education Code 39.025(c-2);

4. Has been administered at least three times the required subject-area test(s) for which the individual has not performed satisfactorily on the exit-level assessment instrument applicable to the individual when the individual entered grade 9; and
5. Meets the alternative requirements for graduation in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.1027(c) or the local alternative requirements approved by the board in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.1027(d).

*19 TAC 74.1027(a); Education Code 28.02541*

<i>District Determination</i>	The district in which the individual is enrolled or was last enrolled shall determine whether the individual may qualify to graduate and receive a high school diploma on the basis of the alternative requirements for graduation. <i>19 TAC 74.1027(b)</i>
<i>Alternative Requirements</i>	The alternative requirements for graduation are listed at 19 Administrative Code 74.1027(c).
<i>Local Alternative Requirements</i>	With approval by the board, a district may develop recommendations for local alternative requirements if the requirements would allow an individual to demonstrate proficiency in the content related to an examination for which the individual has not performed satisfactorily. <i>19 TAC 74.1027(d)</i>
<i>Appeals</i>	A decision regarding whether the individual qualifies to graduate and receive a high school diploma is final and may not be appealed. <i>19 TAC 74.1027(e); Education Code 28.02541</i>
<i>Documentation</i>	The district shall maintain documentation to support the decision to award or not award an individual a high school diploma. <i>19 TAC 74.1027(f)</i>
Special Education	A student receiving special education services who successfully completes the requirements of his or her IEP, including performance on a state assessment required for graduation, shall receive a high school diploma. A student's ARD committee shall determine if the student will be required to meet satisfactory performance on an assessment for purposes of graduation. <i>19 TAC 101.3023(a)</i> [See Graduation of Students Receiving Special Education Services, below, and EKB]
Posthumous Diploma	Beginning with students who would have graduated at the end of the 2019–20 school year, and on request of the student's parent, a district shall issue a high school diploma posthumously to each student who died while enrolled in the district at the end of the school year in which the student was expected to graduate under the regular schedule of school attendance. The high school diploma may

not be issued before the graduation date of the class in which the student was enrolled at the time of death.

*Exception*

A district is not required to issue a posthumous diploma if the student was convicted of a felony offense under Title 5 or 6, Penal Code, or adjudicated as having engaged in conduct constituting a felony offense under Title 5 or 6, Penal Code.

*Education Code 28.0254*

Diplomas for  
Veterans

Notwithstanding any other provision of this policy, a district may issue a high school diploma to a person who is an honorably discharged member of the armed forces of the United States; was scheduled to graduate from high school after 1940 and before 1975 or after 1989; and left school after completing the sixth or a higher grade, before graduating from high school, to serve in:

1. World War II, the Korean War, the Vietnam War, the Persian Gulf War, the Iraq War, or the war in Afghanistan; or
2. Any other war formally declared by the United States, military engagement authorized by the United States Congress, military engagement authorized by a United Nations Security Council resolution and funded by the United States Congress, or conflict authorized by the president of the United States under the War Powers Resolution of 1973, 50 U.S.C. 1541, et seq.

*Education Code 28.0251*

**Personal Graduation  
Plan**

Junior High or  
Middle School PGP

A principal of a junior high or middle school shall designate a school counselor, teacher, or other appropriate individual to develop and administer a personal graduation plan (PGP) for each student enrolled in the junior high or middle school who:

1. Does not perform satisfactorily on a state assessment instrument; or
2. Is not likely to receive a high school diploma before the fifth school year following the student's enrollment in grade level 9, as determined by a district.

A PGP must:

1. Identify educational goals for the student;
2. Include diagnostic information, appropriate monitoring and intervention, and other evaluation strategies;
3. Include an intensive instruction program described in Education Code 28.0213 [see EHBC];

4. Address participation of the student's parent or guardian, including consideration of the parent's or guardian's educational expectations for the student; and
5. Provide innovative methods to promote the student's advancement, including flexible scheduling, alternative learning environments, online instruction, and other interventions that are proven to accelerate the learning process and have been scientifically validated to improve learning and cognitive ability.

*Education Code 28.0212*

*Students  
Receiving  
Special  
Education  
Services*

For a student receiving special education services, the student's ARD committee and the district are responsible for developing the student's PGP.

A student's IEP developed under Education Code 29.005 may be used as the student's PGP.

*Education Code 28.0212(c); 19 TAC 89.1050(a) [See EHBAB]*

High School PGP

A principal of a high school shall designate a school counselor or school administrator to review PGP options with each student entering grade 9 together with that student's parent or guardian. The PGP options reviewed must include the distinguished level of achievement and endorsements.

Before the conclusion of the school year, the student and the student's parent or guardian must confirm and sign a PGP for the student that identifies a course of study that:

1. Promotes college and workforce readiness and career placement and advancement; and
2. Facilitates the student's transition from secondary to postsecondary education.

A district may not prevent a student and the student's parent or guardian from confirming a PGP that includes pursuit of a distinguished level of achievement or an endorsement.

A student may amend the student's PGP after the initial confirmation of the plan. If a student amends the student's PGP, the school must send written notice to the student's parents regarding the change.

TEA must make available to a district information that explains the advantages of the distinguished level of achievement described by Education Code 28.025(b-15) and each endorsement described by

Education Code 28.025(c-1). A district, in turn, shall publish the information from TEA on the internet website of the district and ensure that the information is available to students in grades nine and above and the parents or legal guardians of those students in the language in which the parents or legal guardians are most proficient.

A district is required to provide this information in the language in which the parents or legal guardians are most proficient only if at least 20 students in a grade level primarily speak that language.

*Education Code 28.02121*

**Early Graduation**

A parent is entitled to request, with the expectation that the request will not be unreasonably denied, that the parent's child be permitted to graduate from high school earlier than the child would normally graduate, if the child completes each course required for graduation. The decision of a board concerning the request is final and may not be appealed. *Education Code 26.003(a)(3)(C), (b)* [See FMH, FNG]

**State Graduation Requirements**

---

**Note:** For current state graduation requirements, including those for students who entered grade 9 before the 2007–08 school year but that are not otherwise referenced in this policy, see Education Code 28.025 and 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74.

---

Students Entering  
Grade 9

To receive a high school diploma, a student entering grade 9 in the 2014–15 school year and thereafter must complete:

1. Requirements of the foundation high school program under 19 Administrative Code 74.12 [see Foundation High School Program, below];
2. Testing requirements for graduation under 19 Administrative Code Chapter 101 [see EKB]; and
3. Demonstrated proficiency, as determined by the district, in delivering clear verbal messages; choosing effective nonverbal behaviors; listening for desired results; applying valid critical-thinking and problem-solving processes; and identifying, analyzing, developing, and evaluating communication skills needed for professional and social success in interpersonal situations, group interactions, and personal and professional presentations.

A student shall enroll in the courses necessary to complete the curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program and the curriculum requirements for at least one endorsement.

*Education Code 28.025(c); 19 TAC 74.11(a), (c)*

*Foundation High School Program*

A student must earn at least 22 credits to complete the foundation high school program and must demonstrate proficiency in the following core courses:

1. English language arts—4 credits;
2. Mathematics—3 credits;
3. Science—3 credits;
4. Social Studies—3 credits;
5. Languages other than English—2 credits;
6. Physical Education—1 credit;
7. Fine Arts—1 credit; and
8. Elective courses—5 credits.

*19 TAC 74.12*

*Endorsements*

A student shall specify in writing an endorsement the student intends to earn upon entering grade 9. *19 TAC 74.13(a)*

A student may earn any of the following endorsements:

1. Science, technology, engineering, and mathematics (STEM);
2. Business and industry;
3. Public services;
4. Arts and humanities; and
5. Multidisciplinary studies.

A district must make at least one endorsement available to students. A district that offers only one endorsement curriculum must offer multidisciplinary studies.

To earn an endorsement a student must demonstrate proficiency in the curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program and, in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.13(e), earn:

1. A fourth credit in mathematics;
2. An additional credit in science; and

3. Two additional elective credits.

A course completed as part of the four courses needed to satisfy an endorsement requirement may also satisfy a requirement under the foundation high school program, including an elective requirement. The same course may count as part of the set of four courses for more than one endorsement.

A district shall permit a student to enroll in courses under more than one endorsement before the student's junior year and to choose, at any time, to earn an endorsement other than the endorsement the student previously indicated.

A student must earn at least 26 credits to earn an endorsement, but a student is not entitled to remain enrolled to earn more than 26 credits.

A district may define advanced courses and determine a coherent sequence of courses for an endorsement area, provided that prerequisites in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–118, 126, 127, and 130 are followed.

*Education Code 28.025; 19 TAC 74.13*

Exception

A student may graduate under the foundation high school program without earning an endorsement if, after the student's sophomore year:

1. The student and the student's parent or person standing in parental relation to the student are advised by a school counselor of the specific benefits of graduating from high school with one or more endorsements; and
2. The student's parent or person standing in parental relation to the student files with a school counselor written permission, on a form adopted by TEA, allowing the student to graduate under the foundation high school program without earning an endorsement.

*19 TAC 74.11(d)*

*Distinguished  
Level of  
Achievement*

A student may earn a distinguished level of achievement by successfully completing the curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program and the curriculum requirements for at least one endorsement, including four credits in science and four credits in mathematics, including Algebra II. *19 TAC 74.11(e)*

*Algebra II  
Notification*

Not later than September 1 of each school year, a district shall notify by regular mail or email the parent of or other person standing in parental relation to each student enrolled in grade 9 or above that the student is not required to complete an Algebra II course to

graduate under the foundation high school program. The notification must include information regarding the potential consequences to a student of not completing an Algebra II course, including the impact on eligibility for:

1. Automatic college admission under Education Code 51.803; and
2. Certain financial aid authorized under Title 3 of the Education Code.

*Education Code 28.02123*

*Prerequisites*

A student may not be enrolled in a course that has a required prerequisite unless:

1. The student has completed the prerequisite course(s);
2. The student has demonstrated equivalent knowledge as determined by the district; or
3. The student was already enrolled in the course in an out-of-state, an out-of-country, or a Texas nonpublic school and transferred to a Texas public school prior to successfully completing the course.

A district may award credit for a course a student completed without having met the prerequisites if the student completed the course in an out-of-state, an out-of-country, or a Texas nonpublic school where there was not a prerequisite.

*19 TAC 74.11(i)–(j)*

*Dual Credit  
Courses*

Courses offered for dual credit at or in conjunction with an institution of higher education (IHE) that provide advanced academic instruction beyond, or in greater depth than, the essential knowledge and skills for the equivalent high school course required for graduation may satisfy graduation requirements, including requirements for required courses, advanced courses, and courses for elective credit as well as requirements for endorsements. *19 TAC 74.11(h)*

*Core Curriculum  
College Courses*

A district shall permit a student to comply with the curriculum requirements under the foundation high school program by successfully completing appropriate courses in the core curriculum of an IHE. A student who has completed the core curriculum of an IHE in accordance with Education Code 61.822, as certified by the IHE in accordance with Education Code 4.28:

1. Is considered to have earned an endorsement by successfully completing the appropriate courses for that endorsement;

2. Is considered to have earned a distinguished level of achievement under the foundation high school program; and
3. Is entitled to receive a high school diploma.

*19 TAC 74.11(n)*

*Languages Other  
Than English*

Students may earn credit for languages other than English in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.12(b)(5).

A student who successfully completes a dual language immersion program may satisfy one credit of the two credits required in a language other than English in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.12(b)(5)(F).

*19 TAC 74.12(b)(5)*

A student who successfully completes a course in American Sign Language while in elementary school may satisfy one credit of the two credits required in a language other than English. *19 TAC 74.12(b)(5)(G)*

*Physical  
Education  
Substitutions*

*Other Physical  
Activity*

In accordance with local district policy, the required physical education credit may be earned through completion of any TEKS-based course that is not being used to satisfy another specific graduation requirement. [See Restrictions, below]

In accordance with local district policy, credit for any physical education course may be earned through participation in the following activities:

1. Athletics;
2. JROTC; and
3. Appropriate private or commercially sponsored physical activity programs conducted on or off campus. A district must apply to the commissioner of education for approval of such programs, which may be substituted for state graduation credit in physical education. Such approval may be granted under the following conditions:
  - a. Olympic-level participation and/or competition includes a minimum of 15 hours per week of highly intensive, professional, supervised training. The training facility, instructors, and the activities involved in the program must be certified by the superintendent to be of exceptional quality. Students qualifying and participating at this level may be dismissed from school one hour per day. Students dismissed may not miss any class other than physical education.

- b. Private or commercially sponsored physical activities include those certified by the superintendent to be of high quality and well supervised by appropriately trained instructors. Student participation of at least five hours per week must be required. Students certified to participate at this level may not be dismissed from any part of the regular school day.

In accordance with local district policy, up to one credit for any one of the physical education courses listed in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74 [see EHAC] may be earned through participation in any of the following activities:

1. Drill team;
2. Marching band; and
3. Cheerleading.

Restrictions

All substitution activities permitted by local district policy must include at least 100 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity per five-day school week.

No more than four substitution credits may be earned through any combination of substitutions listed above.

Student with  
Disability or  
Illness

A student who is unable to participate in physical activity due to disability or illness may substitute an academic elective credit in English language arts, mathematics, science, social studies or a course that is offered for credit as provided by Education Code 28.002(g-1) for the required physical education credit. A credit allowed to be substituted may not also be used by the student to satisfy a graduation requirement other than completion of the physical education credit. The determination regarding a student's ability to participate in physical activity must be made by:

1. The student's ARD committee if the student receives special education services under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A;
2. The committee established for the student under Section 504, Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. Section 794) if the student does not receive special education services under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A but is covered by the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; or
3. A committee, established by the district, of persons with appropriate knowledge regarding the student if each of the committees described above is inapplicable. This committee must

follow the same procedures required of an ARD or a Section 504 committee.

*Education Code 28.025(b-10)–(b-11); 19 TAC 74.12(b)(6)*

*Community-  
Based Fine Arts  
Programs*

In accordance with local district policy, the required fine arts credit may be earned through participation in a community-based fine arts program not provided by the school district in which the student is enrolled.

In accordance with local policy, credit may be earned through participation in the community-based fine arts program only if the program meets each of the following requirements:

1. The district must apply to the commissioner for approval of the community-based fine arts program;
2. The board must certify that the program provides instruction in the essential knowledge and skills for fine arts as defined by 19 Administrative Code, Chapter 117, Subchapter C;
3. The district must document student completion of the approved activity;
4. The program must be organized and monitored by appropriately trained instructors;
5. The fine arts program may be provided on or off a school campus and outside the regular school day; and
6. Students may not be dismissed from any part of the regular school day to participate in the community-based fine arts program.

The district shall require that instructors of the community-based fine arts program provide the district, at its request, the information necessary to obtain the criminal history record information required for school personnel in accordance with 19 Administrative Code, Chapter 153, Subchapter DD, if the community-based program is offered on campus.

*Education Code 28.025(b-9); 19 TAC 74.12(b)(7)(B), .1030*

*Performance  
Acknowledgments*

In accordance with the requirements of 19 Administrative Code 74.14, a student may earn a performance acknowledgment on the student's transcript for:

1. Outstanding performance:
  - a. In a dual credit course;
  - b. In bilingualism and biliteracy;

- c. On a College Board advanced placement test or international baccalaureate examination;
  - d. On an established, valid, reliable, and nationally norm-referenced preliminary college preparation assessment instrument used to measure a student's progress toward readiness for college and the workplace; or
  - e. On an established, valid, reliable, and nationally norm-referenced assessment instrument used by colleges and universities as part of their undergraduate admissions process; or
2. Earning a state-recognized or nationally or internationally recognized business or industry certification or license.

*Education Code 28.025(c-5); 19 TAC 74.14*

Students Who  
Entered Grade 9  
Before the 2014–15  
School Year

*Minimum High  
School Program*

All credit for graduation must be earned no later than grade 12. *19 TAC 74.61(b), .71(b)*

A student entering grade 9 prior to the 2014–15 school year who does not choose to complete the curriculum requirements for high school graduation under the foundation high school program must enroll in the courses necessary to complete the curriculum requirements for the Recommended High School Program or the Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Program, unless the student, the student's parent or other person standing in parental relation to the student, and a school counselor or school administrator agree in writing signed by each party that the student should be permitted to take courses under the Minimum High School Program, and the student:

1. Is at least 16 years of age;
2. Has completed two credits required for graduation in each subject of the foundation curriculum under Education Code 28.002(a)(1); or
3. Has failed to be promoted to the tenth grade one or more times as determined by the school district.

Students with  
Disabilities

If an ARD committee makes decisions that place a student with a disability on a modified curriculum in a subject area, the student will be automatically placed in the Minimum High School Program.

Applicability

A student who was permitted to take courses under the Minimum High School Program prior to the 2009–10 school year may remain in the Minimum High School Program.

*19 TAC 74.61(c), (d), .71(c), (d)*

Requirements	<p>A student must earn at least 22 credits to complete the Minimum High School Program.</p> <p>A student who entered grade 9 in the 2012–13 or 2013–14 school year must demonstrate proficiency in the program requirements listed at 19 Administrative Code 74.72.</p> <p>A student who enters grade 9 before the 2012–13 school year must meet the applicable program requirements in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74, Subchapters D–F.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.025; 19 TAC 74.62, .72</i></p>
<i>Recommended High School Program</i>	<p>A student who entered grade 9 in the 2012–13 or 2013–14 school year must earn at least 26 credits to complete the Recommended High School Program. A student must demonstrate proficiency in the program requirements listed at 19 Administrative Code 74.73.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.025; 19 TAC 74.63, .73</i></p>
<i>Advanced / Distinguished Achievement High School Program</i>	<p>A student who entered grade 9 in the 2012–13 or 2013–14 school year must earn at least 26 credits to complete the Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Program. A student must demonstrate proficiency in the program requirements listed at 19 Administrative Code 74.74.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.025; 19 TAC 74.64, .74</i></p>
<i>Substitutions</i>	<p>No substitutions are allowed for high school graduation requirements in the Recommended and Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Programs, except as provided by State Board rule. <i>19 TAC 74.63(d), .64(e), .73(d), .74(e)</i></p>
<i>AP or IB Courses</i>	<p>College Board advanced placement and international baccalaureate courses may be substituted for required courses in appropriate areas. These courses may be used as electives in all three high school graduation programs. <i>19 TAC 74.61(k), .71(i)</i></p>
<i>Reading</i>	<p>A district may offer a maximum of 3 credits of reading for state graduation elective credit for identified students if the district:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Adopts policies to identify students in need of additional reading instruction;</li><li>2. Has procedures that include assessment of individual student needs and ongoing evaluation of each student’s progress; and</li><li>3. Monitors instructional activities to ensure that student needs are addressed.</li></ol> <p>Reading credits may be selected from Reading I, II, or III.</p> <p><i>19 TAC 74.61(h), .71(f)</i></p>

*College Courses* A student may comply with the curriculum requirements under the Minimum, Recommended, or Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Program for each subject of the foundation curriculum and for languages other than English by successfully completing appropriate courses in the core curriculum of an IHE. 19 TAC 74.61(l), .71(j)

*Physical Education Substitutions* In accordance with local district policy, credit for any physical education course may be earned through participation in the following activities:

Other Physical Activity

1. Athletics;
2. JROTC; and
3. Appropriate private or commercially sponsored physical activity programs conducted on or off campus. A district must apply to the commissioner for approval of such programs, which may be substituted for state graduation credit in physical education. Such approval may be granted under the following conditions:
  - a. Olympic-level participation and/or competition includes a minimum of 15 hours per week of highly intensive, professional, supervised training. The training facility, instructors, and the activities involved in the program must be certified by the superintendent to be of exceptional quality. Students qualifying and participating at this level may be dismissed from school one hour per day. Students dismissed may not miss any class other than physical education.
  - b. Private or commercially sponsored physical activities include those certified by the superintendent to be of high quality and well supervised by appropriately trained instructors. Student participation of at least five hours per week must be required. Students certified to participate at this level may not be dismissed from any part of the regular school day.

In accordance with local district policy, up to one credit for any one of the physical education courses listed in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74 [see EHAC] may be earned through participation in any of the following activities:

1. Drill team;
2. Marching band; and
3. Cheerleading.

Restrictions	<p>All substitution activities must include at least 100 minutes per five-day school week of moderate to vigorous physical activity.</p> <p>No more than four substitution credits may be earned through any combination of substitutions listed above.</p>
<i>Student with Disability or Illness</i>	<p>A student who is unable to participate in physical activity due to disability or illness may substitute an academic elective credit in English language arts, mathematics, science, or social studies for the required physical education credit. A credit allowed to be substituted may not also be used by the student to satisfy a graduation requirement other than completion of the physical education credit. The determination regarding a student's ability to participate in physical activity must be made by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The student's ARD committee if the student receives special education services under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A;</li><li>2. The committee established for the student under Section 504, Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. Section 794) if the student does not receive special education services under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A but is covered by the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; or</li><li>3. A committee, established by the district, of persons with appropriate knowledge regarding the student if each of the committees described above is inapplicable. This committee must follow the same procedures required of an ARD or a Section 504 committee.</li></ol>
<i>Student with Physical Limitations</i>	<p>If a student entering grade 9 during the 2007–08 school year or thereafter is unable to comply with all of the requirements for a physical education course due to a physical limitation certified by a licensed medical practitioner, a modification to a physical education course does not prohibit the student from earning a Recommended or Advanced/Distinguished High School Program diploma. A student with a physical limitation must still demonstrate proficiency in the relevant knowledge and skills in a physical education course that do not require physical activity.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.025(b-10)–(b-11); 19 TAC 74.62(b)(7), .63(b)(7), .64(b)(7), .72(b)(6), .73(b)(6), .74(b)(6)</i></p>
<b>Transfers from Out-of-State or Nonpublic Schools</b>	<p>Out-of-state or out-of-country transfer students (including foreign exchange students) and transfer students from Texas nonpublic schools are eligible to receive Texas diplomas but shall complete all applicable high school graduation requirements. Any course credits required for graduation that are not completed before enroll-</p>

**Graduation of  
Students Receiving  
Special Education  
Services**

Modified Curriculum  
and Content

ment may be satisfied through credit by examination, correspondence courses, distance learning, or completing the course, according to the provisions of 19 Administrative Code 74.26. *19 TAC 74.11(f)* [See EHDB, EHDC, EHDE, and EI]

Employability and  
Self-Help Skills

Modified curriculum and modified content refer to any reduction of the amount or complexity of the required knowledge and skills in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–117, 126–128, and 130. Substitutions that are specifically authorized in statute or rule must not be considered modified curriculum or modified content. *19 TAC 89.1070(k)*

Employability and self-help skills are those skills directly related to the preparation of students for employment, including general skills necessary to obtain or retain employment. *19 TAC 89.1070(j)*

Summary of  
Academic  
Achievement and  
Evaluation

All students graduating must be provided with a summary of academic achievement and functional performance as described in 34 C.F.R. 300.305(e)(3). This summary must consider, as appropriate, the views of the parent and student and written recommendations from adult service agencies on how to assist the student in meeting postsecondary goals. An evaluation as required by 34 C.F.R. 300.305(e)(1) (evaluation to determine that the child is no longer a child with a disability), must be included as part of the summary for a student graduating under 19 Administrative Code 89.1070 (b)(3)(A), (B), or (C) or (f)(4)(A), (B), or (C). Students who participate in graduation ceremonies but who are not graduating under subsections (b)(3)(A), (B), or (C) or (f)(4)(A), (B), or (C) and who will remain in school to complete their education do not have to be evaluated. *19 TAC 89.1070(g)–(h)*

*Students  
Entering Grade 9  
in or After the  
2014–15 School  
Year*

A student entering grade 9 in the 2014–15 school year and thereafter who receives special education services may graduate and be awarded a regular high school diploma if the student meets one of the following conditions:

1. The student has demonstrated mastery of the required state standards (or district standards if greater) in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–117, 126–128, and 130 and satisfactorily completed credit requirements for graduation under the foundation high school program applicable to students in general education as well as satisfactory performance as established in Education Code Chapter 39, on the required EOC assessment instruments.
2. The student has demonstrated mastery of the required state standards (or district standards if greater) in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–117, 126–128, and 130 and satisfactorily

completed credit requirements for graduation under the foundation high school program specified in 19 Administrative Code 74.12 applicable to students in general education but the student's ARD committee has determined that satisfactory performance on the required EOC assessment instruments is not necessary for graduation.

3. The student has demonstrated mastery of the required state standards (or district standards if greater) in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–117, 126–128, and 130 and satisfactorily completed credit requirements for graduation under the foundation high school program through courses, one or more of which contain modified curriculum that is aligned to the standards applicable to students in general education, as well as satisfactory performance as established in Education Code Chapter 39, on the required EOC assessment instruments, unless the student's ARD committee has determined that satisfactory performance on the required EOC assessment instruments is not necessary for graduation. The student must also successfully complete the student's IEP and meet one of the following conditions:
  - a. Consistent with the IEP, the student has obtained full-time employment, based on the student's abilities and local employment opportunities, in addition to mastering sufficient self-help skills to enable the student to maintain the employment without direct and ongoing educational support of the local school district.
  - b. Consistent with the IEP, the student has demonstrated mastery of specific employability skills and self-help skills that do not require direct ongoing educational support of the local school district.
  - c. The student has access to services that are not within the legal responsibility of public education or employment or educational options for which the student has been prepared by the academic program.
  - d. The student no longer meets age eligibility requirements.

When a student receives a diploma under item 2 or 3(a), (b), or (c), above, the ARD committee must determine needed educational services upon the request of the student or parent to resume services, as long as the student meets the age eligibility requirements.

*19 TAC 89.1070(b), (j)*

- Endorsements* A student who is enrolled in a special education program may earn an endorsement on the student's transcript by:
1. Successfully completing, with or without modification of the curriculum:
    - a. The curriculum requirements identified by the SBOE for the foundation high school program; and
    - b. The additional endorsement curriculum requirements prescribed by the SBOE; and
  2. Successfully completing all curriculum requirements for that endorsement adopted by the SBOE:
    - a. Without modification of the curriculum; or
    - b. With modification of the curriculum, provided that the curriculum, as modified, is sufficiently rigorous as determined by the student's ARD committee.

The ARD committee of a student in a special education program shall determine whether the student is required to achieve satisfactory performance on an end-of-course assessment instrument to earn an endorsement on the student's transcript.

*Education Code 28.025(c-7)–(c-8), 19 TAC 89.1070(c)*

- Students Entering Grade 9 Before the 2014–15 School Year* A student receiving special education services who entered grade 9 before the 2014–15 school year may graduate and be awarded a high school diploma under the foundation high school program in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 89.1070.

**Graduation of  
Military Dependents**

Course Waiver

District officials shall waive specific courses required for graduation if similar coursework has been satisfactorily completed by a military student in another district or shall provide reasonable justification for denial. Should a waiver not be granted to a student who would qualify to graduate from the sending school, the district shall provide an alternative means of acquiring required coursework so that graduation may occur on time.

Transfers During  
Senior Year

Should a military student transferring at the beginning or during the student's senior year be ineligible to graduate from the district after all alternatives have been considered, the sending and receiving districts shall ensure the receipt of a diploma from the sending district, if the student meets the graduation requirements of the sending district. In the event that one of the states in question is not a member of this compact, the member state shall use best efforts to facilitate the on-time graduation of the student.

ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT  
GRADUATION

EIF  
(LEGAL)

Substitute Passing  
Standard

The commissioner shall adopt a passing standard on one or more national norm-referenced achievement tests for purposes of permitting a qualified military dependent to meet that standard as a substitute for completing a specific course otherwise required for graduation. The passing standard is available only for a student who enrolls in a public school in this state for the first time after completing the ninth grade or who reenrolls in a public school in this state at or above the tenth grade level after an absence of at least two years from the public schools of this state. Each passing standard in effect when a student first enrolls in a Texas public high school remains applicable to the student for the duration of the student's high school enrollment, regardless of any subsequent revision of the standard.

*Education Code 162.002 art. VII, A, C [See FDD]*

**Graduation of  
Student Who Is  
Homeless or in  
Conservatorship of  
DFPS**

If an 11th or 12th grade student who is homeless or in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services transfers to a different school district and the student is ineligible to graduate from the district to which the student transfers, the district from which the student transferred shall award a diploma at the student's request, if the student meets the graduation requirements of the district from which the student transferred. *Education Code 28.025(i)*



<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>State Assessment of Academic Skills .....</b>	<b>3</b>
	Limited English Proficient Students .....	3
	Special Education.....	3
	Military Dependents.....	3
	<b>Administration.....</b>	<b>4</b>
	Schedule .....	4
	<b>Notice to Parents and Students .....</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>Testing in Grades 3–8 .....</b>	<b>6</b>
	Exception .....	6
	Kindergarten Assessment.....	7
	Prekindergarten Assessment.....	7
	Accommodations.....	7
	<b>End-of-Course Assessments .....</b>	<b>7</b>
	Students Enrolled Below High School Level .....	8
	Assessment Requirements for Graduation .....	8
	Substitute Assessments .....	9
	Accountability Testing .....	9
	Satisfactory Performance .....	10
	Individual Graduation Committee.....	10
	Special Education.....	10
	Credit by Examination .....	11
	Additional State Assessments .....	11
	Retakes.....	11
	<b>Reporting Results .....</b>	<b>11</b>
	To the Public.....	11
	To the Board.....	12
	To Parents, Students, and Teachers .....	12
	Parents Right-to-Know Under ESEA .....	12
	Parental Access.....	12
	<b>Out-of-State Transfers .....</b>	<b>12</b>
	<b>Accelerated Instruction .....</b>	<b>13</b>
	College Readiness .....	13
	<b>Security and Confidentiality.....</b>	<b>14</b>
	Violations.....	15

Consequences .....	16
Test Administration Procedures .....	16
Records Retention.....	17
Disciplinary Action and Penalties .....	17
<b>Minimize Disruptions .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>Confidentiality of Results .....</b>	<b>17</b>

**State Assessment of Academic Skills**

Every student receiving instruction in the essential knowledge and skills shall take the appropriate criterion-referenced assessments, as required by Education Code Chapter 39, Subchapter B [see Testing in Grades 3–8, below]. *Education Code 39.023(a), (c), (f); 19 TAC 101.5*

A student may not receive a high school diploma until the student has performed satisfactorily on end-of-course (EOC) assessment instruments [see End-of-Course Assessments, below]. *Education Code 39.025(a); 19 TAC 101.4001*

Limited English Proficient Students

In grades 3–12, a limited English proficient (LEP) student, as defined by Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter B, shall participate in the state assessment in accordance with commissioner rules at 19 Administrative Code Chapter 101, Subchapter AA. *Education Code 39.023(l), (m)* [See EKBA]

Special Education

The Texas Education Agency (TEA) shall develop or adopt appropriate criterion-referenced alternative assessment instruments to be administered to each student in a special education program for whom a state assessment instrument adopted under Education Code 39.023(a), even with allowable accommodations, would not provide an appropriate measure of student achievement, as determined by the student's admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee, including assessment instruments approved by the commissioner of education that measure growth. The assessment instruments developed or adopted, including the assessment instruments approved by the commissioner, must, to the extent allowed under federal law, provide a district with options for the assessment of students.

TEA may not adopt a performance standard that indicates that a student's performance on the alternate assessment does not meet standards if the lowest level of the assessment accurately represents the student's developmental level as determined by the student's ARD committee.

The student's ARD committee shall determine whether any allowable modification is necessary in administering to the student a required EOC assessment instrument under Education Code 39.023(c), and whether the student is required to achieve satisfactory performance on an EOC assessment instrument to receive a high school diploma.

*Education Code 39.023(b)–(c), .025(a-4)*

Military Dependents

If the student is a military dependent, the district shall incorporate procedures to accept:

1. Exit or EOC exams required for graduation from the sending state;
2. National norm-referenced achievement tests; or
3. Alternative testing, in lieu of testing requirements for graduation in the receiving state.

In the event the above alternatives cannot be accommodated by the receiving state for a military dependent transferring in his or her senior year, then Education Code 162.002 article VII, section C, shall apply.

*Substitute  
Passing Standard*

The commissioner shall adopt a passing standard on one or more national norm-referenced achievement tests for purposes of permitting a qualified military dependent to meet that standard as a substitute for achieving a score on an assessment instrument otherwise required for graduation. The passing standard is available only for a student who enrolls in a public school in this state for the first time after completing the ninth grade or who reenrolls in a public school in this state at or above the grade 10 level after an absence of at least two years from the public schools of this state. Each passing standard in effect when a student first enrolls in a Texas public high school remains applicable to the student for the duration of the student's high school enrollment, regardless of any subsequent revision of the standard.

*Education Code 162.002 art. VII [See EIF]*

**Administration**

A district shall follow the test administration procedures established by TEA in the applicable test administration materials. A superintendent shall be responsible for administering tests. *19 TAC 101.25, .27*

Schedule

The commissioner shall specify the schedule for testing that is in compliance with Education Code 39.023(c-3) and supports reliable and valid assessments. Participation in University Interscholastic League (UIL) area, regional, or state competitions is prohibited on any days on which testing is scheduled between Monday and Thursday of the school week in which the primary administration of assessment instruments occurs.

The commissioner may provide alternate dates for the administration of tests required for a high school diploma to students who are migratory children and who are out of the state.

*19 TAC 101.25*

*Alternate Test  
Dates*

The commissioner shall consider requests from districts or campuses for alternate test dates on a case-by-case basis. Alternate

test dates will only be allowed if the campus or district is closed on the day on which testing is scheduled or if there is an exceptional circumstance, defined below, that may affect a district's or campus's ability to administer an assessment or the students' performance on the assessment.

"Exceptional circumstances" include:

1. Inclement weather or natural disasters that would cause a district or campus to be closed or that would cause a small percentage of students to be in attendance on the day testing is scheduled;
2. Health epidemics that result in a large number of students being absent on the day of testing;
3. Death of a student or school official that may impact student performance; and
4. Sudden emergencies that occur on the day of testing or shortly before testing that may inhibit students from completing the assessments, such as a fire on campus, a bomb threat, an extended power outage, or a water main break.

If an alternate test date for primary test administration is approved, the commissioner may prohibit a district or campus from participating in UIL competition on the new test date if that is determined to be in the best interest of the district, campus, and students.

*19 TAC 101.5003*

### **Notice to Parents and Students**

A superintendent shall be responsible for providing written notice to each student and the student's parent or guardian of:

1. The testing requirements for grade advancement [see EIE] and the dates, times, and locations of testing. Notice of testing requirements shall be provided no later than the beginning of the student's kindergarten year, for students attending kindergarten in the district, and no later than the beginning of the student's first-grade year for all other students. The superintendent shall also provide such notice for students in grades 1–8 who are new to the district.
2. The testing requirements for graduation and the dates, times, and locations of testing. Notice of testing requirements shall be provided no later than the beginning of the student's seventh-grade year. The superintendent shall also provide such notice for students in grades 7–12 who are new to the district. Notice of the dates, times, and locations of testing shall be

provided to each student who will take the tests and to out-of-school individuals.

*19 TAC 101.3012*

**Testing in  
Grades 3–8**

Except as provided below, all students, other than students who are assessed under Education Code 39.023(b) (alternative assessment instrument) or 39.023(l) (LEP students) or exempted under Education Code 39.027, shall be assessed in:

1. Mathematics, annually in grades 3–8;
2. Reading, annually in grades 3–8;
3. Social studies in grade 8;
4. Science in grades 5 and 8; and
5. Any other subject and grade required by federal law.

*Education Code 39.023(a)*

Exception

For purposes of federal accountability, a student shall not be administered a grade-level assessment if the student:

1. Is enrolled in a course or subject intended for students above the student's enrolled grade level and will be administered a grade-level assessment instrument developed under the list above that aligns with the curriculum for that course or subject within the same content area; or
2. Is enrolled in a course for high school credit in a subject intended for students above the student's enrolled grade level and will be administered an EOC assessment instrument that aligns with the curriculum for that course or subject within the same content area.

For purposes of federal accountability, a grade 3–8 student who is accelerated in mathematics, reading/language arts, or science and on schedule to complete the high school end-of-course assessments in that same content area prior to high school shall be assessed at least once in high school with the ACT or the SAT.

A student is only eligible to take an assessment instrument intended for use above the student's enrolled grade if the student is on schedule to complete instruction in the entire curriculum for that subject during the semester the assessment is administered.

A student in grade 5 or 8 described above may not be denied promotion on the basis of failure to perform satisfactorily on an assessment instrument above the student's grade level.

*Education Code 28.0211(o)–(p), 39.023(a-2); 19 TAC 101.3011(a)(1)–(4)*

Kindergarten  
Assessment

An assessment instrument under Education Code 39.023 may not be administered to a kindergarten student except for the purpose of determining whether the student is entitled to the benefit of the Foundation School Program [see FD]. *Education Code 39.023(a-16)*

Prekindergarten  
Assessment

Performance on an assessment instrument administered to students in prekindergarten may not be considered for any purpose related to Education Code Chapters 39 and 39A. *Education Code 39.0237*

Accommodations

Testing accommodations are permitted for any student unless they would make a particular test invalid. Decisions regarding testing accommodations shall take into consideration the needs of the student and the accommodations the student routinely receives in classroom instruction. Permissible testing accommodations shall be described in the appropriate test administration materials.

The committee established by a board to determine the placement of students with dyslexia or related disorders shall determine whether any allowable modification is necessary in administering an assessment to such a student.

A student's ARD committee shall determine the allowable accommodations and shall document them in the student's individualized education program (IEP). [See Special Education, above]

*19 TAC 101.3013; Education Code 39.023(a)–(c), (n); 34 C.F.R. 300.320(a)(6)*

**End-of-Course  
Assessments**

Beginning with students first enrolled in grade 9 in the 2011–12 school year, a student enrolled in a course for which an EOC assessment exists as required by Education 39.023(c) shall take the appropriate assessment. *19 TAC 101.3021(a)*

TEA shall adopt EOC assessment instruments for secondary-level courses in Algebra I, biology, English I, English II, and United States history. The Algebra I EOC assessment instrument must be administered with the aid of technology, but may include one or more parts that prohibit the use of technology. The English I and English II EOC assessment instruments must each assess essential knowledge and skills in both reading and writing and must pro-

vide a single score. A district shall comply with State Board of Education rules regarding administration of the assessment instruments listed in this provision.

If a student is in a special education program, the student's ARD committee shall determine whether any allowable modification is necessary in administering to the student an assessment instrument required under this provision.

*Education Code 39.023(c)*

Students Enrolled  
Below High School  
Level

Beginning in the 2011–12 school year, a student in grade 8 or lower who takes a high school course for credit is required to take the applicable EOC assessment. The EOC assessment result shall be applied toward the student's assessment graduation requirements, as specified in 19 Administrative Code 101.3022. 19 TAC 101.3021(d)

Assessment  
Requirements for  
Graduation

A student must meet satisfactory performance on an EOC assessment listed in Education Code 39.023(c) only for a course in which the student is enrolled and for which an EOC assessment instrument is administered in order to be eligible to receive a Texas diploma.

*Exceptions*

English I or  
English II

A student who was administered separate reading and writing EOC assessments under Education Code 39.023(c), for the English I or English II course has met that course's assessment graduation requirement if the student has:

1. Achieved satisfactory performance on either the reading or writing EOC assessment for that course;
2. Met at least the minimum score on the other EOC assessment for that course; and
3. Achieved an overall scale score of 3750 or greater when the scale scores for reading and writing are combined for that course.

Exceptions related to English I also apply to English language learners who meet the criteria in 19 Administrative Code 101.1007. [See EKBA]

Credits Earned  
Prior to  
Enrollment

If a student earned high school credit for a course with an EOC assessment prior to enrollment in a Texas public school district and the credit has been accepted by a Texas public school district, or a student completed a course for Texas high school credit in a

course with an EOC assessment prior to the 2011–12 spring administration, the student is not required to take the corresponding EOC assessment.

*19 TAC 101.3021(e), .3022*

Substitute  
Assessments

The commissioner adopts certain assessments as substitute assessments that a student may use in place of a corresponding EOC assessment to meet the student's assessment graduation requirements. A satisfactory score on an approved assessment may be used in place of only one specific EOC assessment, except as provided by 19 Administrative Code 101.4002(d)(1) (student who qualifies for use of the Texas Success Initiative (TSI) as a substitute assessment and is enrolled in certain college preparatory courses).

A student at any grade level is eligible to use a substitute assessment as provided in the commissioner's chart at 19 Administrative Code 101.4002(b) if the student:

1. Was administered an approved substitute assessment for an equivalent course in which the student was enrolled;
2. Received a satisfactory score on the substitute assessment as determined by the commissioner and provided in the chart at 19 Administrative Code 101.4002(b); and
3. Using a TSI assessment also meets the additional criteria of 19 Administrative Code 101.4002(d).

*TSI Additional  
Criteria*

A student must meet the criteria established in 19 Administrative Code 101.4002(d) in order to qualify to use TSI as a substitute assessment.

Accountability  
Testing

A student electing to substitute an assessment for graduation purposes must still take the corresponding EOC assessment required under Education Code 39.023(c) at least once for accountability purposes. If a student sits for an EOC assessment, a district may not void or invalidate the test in lieu of a substitute assessment.

A student who fails to perform satisfactorily on a PSAT, PLAN, or Aspire test (or any versions of these tests) as indicated in the chart in 19 Administrative Code 101.4003(b) must take the appropriate EOC assessment required under Education Code 39.023(c). However, a student who does not receive a passing score on the EOC assessment and retakes a PSAT, PLAN, or Aspire test (or any versions of these tests) is eligible to meet the requirements specified in 19 Administrative Code 101.4002(c).

*19 TAC 101.4002*

*Verification of  
Results*

An eligible student is responsible for providing a district an official copy of the student's scores from the substitute assessment.

Upon receipt of official results of an approved substitute assessment, a district must:

1. Verify the student's score on the substitute assessment; and
2. Determine whether the student met the performance standard required to qualify for a public high school diploma in Texas as established by the commissioner.

*19 TAC 101.4005*

Satisfactory  
Performance

A student is required to achieve a scale score that indicates satisfactory performance, as determined by the commissioner on each EOC assessment instrument administered to the student. *Education Code 39.025(a)*

Individual  
Graduation  
Committee

A student in grade 11 or 12 who has failed to comply with the EOC assessment instrument performance requirements under Education Code 39.025 for not more than two courses may qualify to graduate on the basis of a review by an individual graduation committee (IGC). [See EIF] *Education Code 28.0258, 39.025(a-5)*

Special Education

A student receiving special education services is not subject to the IGC requirements in Education Code 28.0258. As provided in 19 Administrative Code 89.1070 (Graduation Requirements) and 19 Administrative Code 101.3023 (Participation and Graduation Assessment Requirements for Students Receiving Special Education Services), a student's ARD committee determines whether a student is required to achieve satisfactory performance on an EOC assessment to graduate.

A student dismissed from a special education program who achieved satisfactory performance on an alternate EOC assessment while enrolled in a special education program is not required to take and achieve satisfactory performance on the general EOC assessment to graduate. A student who took an EOC assessment while enrolled in a special education program is not required to re-take and achieve satisfactory performance on the EOC assessment if the student's ARD committee determined that the student was not required to achieve satisfactory performance on the EOC assessment to graduate. A student dismissed from a special education program must achieve satisfactory performance on any remaining EOC assessments that the student is required to take. If the student fails to achieve satisfactory performance on no more than two of the remaining EOC assessments, the student is eligible for IGC review under Education Code 28.0258 and is subject to the

IGC provisions above. [See Individual Graduation Committee, above]

*19 TAC 101.3022(f)*

A student receiving special education services who successfully completes the requirements of his or her IEP, including performance on a state assessment required for graduation, shall receive a Texas high school diploma. A student's ARD committee shall determine if the student will be required to meet satisfactory performance on an assessment for purposes of graduation.

Beginning with the 2011–12 school year, all grades 9–12 students with significant cognitive disabilities who are assessed with an alternate assessment as specified in the student's IEP will be assessed using alternate versions of EOC assessments as listed in 19 Administrative Code 101.3011(b)(2).

*19 TAC 101.3023(a), (b)*

Credit by  
Examination

An EOC assessment administered under Education Code 39.023(c) cannot be used for purposes of credit by examination under 19 Administrative Code 74.24. [See EHDB, EHDC] *19 TAC 101.3021(c)*

Additional State  
Assessments

TEA may adopt EOC assessment instruments for courses not listed in statute, as described above. A student's performance on these EOC assessment instruments is not subject to the performance requirements established for the statutory assessments. *Education Code 39.023(c-2)*

Retakes

Each time an EOC assessment instrument is administered, a student who failed to achieve a score requirement may retake the assessment instrument. [See Satisfactory Performance, above]

A student is not required to retake a course as a condition of retaking an EOC assessment instrument.

If a student failed a course but achieved satisfactory performance on the applicable EOC assessment, that student is not required to retake the assessment if the student is required to retake the course.

*Education Code 39.025(b); 19 TAC 101.3021(f), .3022(d)*

**Reporting Results**  
To the Public

Overall student performance data, aggregated by ethnicity, sex, grade level, subject area, campus, and district, shall be made available to the public, with appropriate interpretations, at regularly scheduled meetings of a board, after receipt from TEA. The information shall not contain the names of individual students or teachers. *Education Code 39.030(b)*

To the Board

A superintendent shall accurately report all test results with appropriate interpretations to a board according to the schedule in the applicable test administration materials.

To Parents,  
Students, and  
Teachers

A district shall notify each of its students, his or her parent or guardian, and his or her teacher for that subject of test results, observing confidentiality requirements stated at Confidentiality of Results, below. All test results shall be included in each student's academic achievement record and shall be furnished for each student transferring to another district or school. Upon receipt of the assessment results from the test contractor, a district shall disclose a student's assessment results to a student's teacher in the same subject area as the assessment for that school year. [See BQ series, FD, and FL]

*19 TAC 101.3014*

TEA shall adopt a series of questions to be included in an EOC assessment instrument administered under Education Code 39.023(c) to be used for purposes of identifying students who are likely to succeed in an advanced high school course. A district shall notify a student who performs at a high level on the questions and the student's parent or guardian of the student's performance and potential to succeed in an advanced high school course. A district may not require a student to perform at a particular level on the questions to be eligible to enroll in an advanced high school course. *Education Code 39.0233(b)*

Parents Right-to-  
Know Under ESEA

As a condition of receiving assistance under Title I, Part A of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act (ESEA) (20 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.), a district shall provide to each individual parent of a child who is a student in such school, with respect to such student information on the level of achievement and academic growth of the student, if applicable and available, on each of the state academic assessments required under Part A. *20 U.S.C. 6312(e)(1)(B)(i)*

Parental Access

A parent is entitled to access to a copy of each state assessment instrument administered to the parent's child. This right of access does not apply, however, to those instruments or particular questions that are being field-tested by TEA. *Education Code 26.005, .006(a)(2)*

**Out-of-State  
Transfers**

A district shall accurately report to TEA whether that student transferred into the district from out of state during the current school year.

Procedures for the reporting of out-of-state-transfer students to TEA shall be established in the applicable test administration materials. A district shall follow procedures specified in those test administration materials.

The assessment results of the out-of-state transfer students shall be reported separately to districts from the results of the district's other students in addition to the current reporting of assessment results for all students and other student subsets.

*19 TAC 101.3014*

**Accelerated  
Instruction**

Each time a student fails to perform satisfactorily on an assessment instrument administered under Education Code 39.023(a) in the third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, or eighth grade, the district in which the student attends school shall provide to the student accelerated instruction in the applicable subject area. Accelerated instruction may require participation of the student before or after normal school hours and may include participation at times of the year outside normal school operations. *Education Code 28.0211(a-1)*

A district shall provide each student who fails to perform satisfactorily on an EOC assessment instrument with accelerated instruction in the subject assessed by the assessment instrument. *Education Code 39.025(b-1)* [See EHBC]

College Readiness

Each district shall partner with at least one institution of higher education to develop and provide courses in college preparatory mathematics and English language arts. The courses must be designed:

1. For students at the grade 12 level whose performance on:
  - a. An EOC assessment instrument required under Education Code 39.023(c) does not meet college readiness standards; or
  - b. Coursework, a college entrance examination, or an assessment instrument designated under Education Code 51.334(a) indicates that the student is not ready to perform entry-level college coursework; and
2. To prepare students for success in entry-level college courses.

A course must be provided on the campus of the high school offering the course or through distance learning or as an online course provided through the institution of higher education with which the district partners.

*Faculty* Appropriate faculty of each high school offering courses and appropriate faculty of each institution of higher education with which the district partners shall meet regularly as necessary to ensure that each course is aligned with college readiness expectations.

*Notice* Each district shall provide a notice to each eligible student and the student's parent or guardian regarding the benefits of enrolling in a course.

*Credit Earned* A student who successfully completes an English language arts course may use the credit earned toward satisfying the advanced English language arts curriculum requirement for the foundation high school program under Education Code 28.025(b-1)(1). A student who successfully completes a mathematics course may use the credit earned in the course toward satisfying an advanced mathematics curriculum requirement under Education Code 28.025 after completion of the mathematics curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program under Education Code 28.025(b-1)(2).

*Dual Credit* A course may be offered for dual credit at the discretion of the institution of higher education with which a district partners.

*Instructional Materials* Each district, in consultation with the institution of higher education with which the district partners, shall develop or purchase instructional materials for a course consistent with Education Code Chapter 31. The instructional materials must include technology resources that enhance the effectiveness of the course and draw on established best practices.

*Education Code 28.014*

**Security and Confidentiality**

All assessment instruments included in the student assessment program are considered secure, and the contents of these tests, including student information used or obtained in their administration, are confidential.

Districts and campuses and the superintendent and campus principals in each district and campus shall:

1. Implement and ensure compliance with state test administration procedures and training activities;
2. Notify TEA as soon as the district becomes aware of any alleged or suspected violation of the security or confidential integrity of a test [see Violations, below];

3. Report all confirmed testing violations to TEA within ten working days of the district becoming aware of the violation in accordance with the reporting process stipulated in the test administration materials;
4. Ensure that the only individuals with access to secure test materials are district employees who have:
  - a. Met the requirements to participate in the student assessment program;
  - b. Received annual training in test security and test administration procedures; and
  - c. Signed an oath affirming they understand their obligation to maintain and preserve the security and confidentiality of all state assessments and student information, acknowledge their responsibility to report any suspected testing violation, and are aware of the range of penalties that may result from a violation of test security and confidentiality or a departure from test administration procedures; and
5. Ensure the security of the test materials as required by 19 Administrative Code 101.3031(a)(2)(E).

*19 TAC 101.3031(a)(1)–(a)(2)*

Violations

Violations of the security and confidential integrity of a test include:

1. Directly or indirectly assisting students with responses to test questions;
2. Tampering with student responses;
3. Falsifying holistic ratings or student responses;
4. Viewing secure test content before, during, or after an administration unless specifically authorized by TEA or by the procedures outlined in the test administration materials;
5. Discussing or disclosing secure test content or student responses;
6. Scoring students' tests, either formally or informally;
7. Duplicating, recording, or electronically capturing confidential test content unless specifically authorized by TEA or by the procedures outlined in the test administration materials;
8. Responding to secure test questions;

9. Fraudulently exempting or preventing a student from participating in the administration of a required state assessment;
10. Receiving or providing unallowable assistance during calibration activities (e.g., taking notes, providing answer sheets, or sharing answers);
11. Encouraging or assisting an individual to engage in the conduct described above or in any other serious violation of security and confidentiality;
12. Failing to report to an appropriate authority that an individual has engaged or is suspected of engaging in the above conduct or in any other serious violation of security and confidentiality under this provision;
13. Failing to implement sufficient procedures to prevent student cheating; and
14. Failing to implement sufficient procedures to prevent alteration of test documents by anyone other than the student.

Consequences

If a district determines that a student has cheated or attempted to cheat on a state assessment either by providing or receiving direct assistance, the district shall invalidate the student's test results.

Any violation of test security or confidential integrity may result in TEA:

1. Invalidating student test results;
2. Referring certified educators to the State Board for Educator Certification (SBEC) for sanctions in accordance with 19 Administrative Code Chapter 247 (Educators' Code of Ethics) and Chapter 249 (Disciplinary Proceedings, Sanctions, and Contested Cases); and
3. Lowering the district's accreditation status or a district's or campus's accountability rating in accordance with Education Code 39.057(d), or appointment of a monitor, conservator, or management team to the district in accordance with Education Code Chapter 39A.

Test Administration  
Procedures

Test administration procedures shall be delineated in the test administration materials provided to districts annually. Districts must comply with all of the applicable requirements specified in the test administration materials.

Districts shall ensure that test coordinators and administrators receive training to ensure that testing personnel have the necessary

skills and knowledge required to administer assessment instruments in a valid, standardized, and secure manner.

Records Retention

As part of test administration procedures, the commissioner shall require districts to maintain records related to the security of assessment instruments for five years.

*19 TAC 101.3031(a-3)–(d)*

Disciplinary Action  
and Penalties

SBEC may take disciplinary action against a person who has violated the security or integrity of any assessment required by Education Code Chapter 39, Subchapter B or has committed an act that is a departure from the test administration procedures established by the commissioner under 19 Administrative Code Chapter 101.

The superintendent and campus principal must develop procedures to ensure the security and confidentiality of the tests and will be responsible for notifying TEA in writing of conduct that violates the security or confidentiality of a test. Failure to report can subject the person responsible to the applicable penalties.

*19 TAC 249.15(a)–(b), (g)*

**Minimize Disruptions**

In implementing the commissioner’s procedures for the administration of assessment instruments adopted or developed under Education Code 39.023, including procedures designed to ensure the security of the assessment, a district shall minimize disruptions to school operations and the classroom environment. *Education Code 39.0301(a-1)*

**Confidentiality of  
Results**

Individual student performance results are confidential and may be released only in accordance with the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act of 1974. *Education Code 39.030(b)* [See FL and GBA]



**Definition** For the purpose of this policy, “parent” is the person who is indicated on the student registration form at the campus. The signature of only one parent of a student is required for a charter created by petition or a cooperative program charter. *Education Code 12.051(1), .052(b), .053(b)*

**Policy** A district shall adopt a campus charter and program charter policy, which shall specify the:

1. Process for approval of a campus charter or program charter;
2. Statutory requirements with which a campus charter or program charter must comply; and
3. Items that must be included in a charter application.

*Education Code 12.058*

**Campus or Program Charter** A board may grant a charter to parents and teachers for a campus or a program on a campus.

A board shall grant or deny the charter, through a public vote, if the board is presented with a petition signed by:

1. The parents of a majority of the students at that campus; and
2. A majority of the classroom teachers at that campus.

A board may not arbitrarily deny a charter.

*Education Code 12.052*

**New Campus or Contract Charter** A board may grant a charter for:

1. A new district campus; or
2. A program that is operated:
  - a. By an entity that has entered into a contract with the district under Education Code 11.157 [see EEL] to provide educational services to the district through the campus or program; and
  - b. At a facility located in the boundaries of the district.

**Voluntary Enrollment** A student’s parent or guardian may choose to enroll the student at a campus or in a program charter. A district may not assign a student to the campus or program unless the student’s parent or guardian has voluntarily enrolled the student.

**Parental Removal** A student’s parent or guardian may, at any time, remove the student from the campus or program and enroll the student at the campus to which the student would ordinarily be assigned.

CAMPUS OR PROGRAM CHARTERS

EL  
(LEGAL)

Teacher Assignment	<p>A district may not assign to the campus or program a teacher who has signed a written statement that the teacher does not agree to that assignment.</p> <p><i>Education Code 12.0521</i></p>
Contract Charter Funding	<p>A district under contract with an open-enrollment charter school to jointly operate a campus or campus program during the 2017–18 school year and under any renewal of that contract is eligible to receive funding under Education Code 42.2511 for each student or the portion of each student’s school day under the direction of the open-enrollment charter school. <i>Education Code 11.157(b); 19 TAC 61.1010</i></p>
<b>District Charter</b>	<p>A board may grant a district charter to a campus.</p>
Enrollment Limit	<p>A district charter may be granted only to one or more campuses serving in total a percentage of the district's student enrollment equal to not more than 15 percent of the district's student enrollment for the preceding school year.</p>
<i>Exception</i>	<p>The percentage limit may not prevent a district from granting a district charter to at least one feeder pattern of schools, including an elementary, middle or junior high, and high school.</p> <p>A district charter may be granted to any campus that has received the lowest performance rating under Subchapter C, Chapter 39, Education Code.</p>
Open-Enrollment Charter School	<p>Subchapter D, Chapter 39, Education Code (open-enrollment charter schools) applies to a campus granted a district charter as though the campus were granted a charter under that subchapter, and the campus is considered an open-enrollment charter school.</p> <p>A district charter is not considered for purposes of the limit on the number of charters for open-enrollment charter schools imposed by Education Code 12.101.</p> <p><i>Education Code 12.0522</i></p>
<b>Cooperative Campus Charter</b>	<p>A board may grant a charter to parents and teachers at two or more campuses in the district for a cooperative charter program if the board is presented with a petition signed by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The parents of a majority of the students at each school; and</li><li>2. A majority of the classroom teachers at each school.</li></ol> <p><i>Education Code 12.053</i></p>
<b>Performance Contract</b>	<p>A board that grants a charter shall enter into a performance contract with the principal or equivalent chief operating officer of the</p>

campus or program. The performance contract must specify enhanced authority granted to the principal or equivalent officer in order to achieve the academic goals that must be met by campus or program students.

**Duration of Charter**

A charter granted by the board expires ten years from the date the charter is granted unless the specified goals are substantially met, as determined by the board.

*Education Code 12.0531*

**Neighborhood School**

A board may determine that a campus granted a charter will be a neighborhood school.

The principal or equivalent chief operating officer of a neighborhood school shall manage the funding provided for the school under the Education Code and any other funding provided for the school in the manner the principal or other officer determines best meets the needs of the school's students. The district in which the school is located may retain that portion of funding that the district generally withholds from a campus for costs associated with the salary of the superintendent or other district governance.

The principal or equivalent chief operating officer of a neighborhood school may use school funding to purchase from the school district in which the school is located services for the school, including bus service, facilities maintenance services, and other services generally provided by a school district to district campuses. The school shall pay for each service an amount that reflects the actual cost to the district of providing the service for the number of the school's students for which the service is provided.

*Education Code 12.0532*

**Student Eligibility**

Eligibility criteria for admission of students to the charter campus or program must give priority on the basis of geographic and residency considerations. After priority is given on those bases, secondary consideration may be given to a student's age, grade level, or academic credentials, in general or in a specific area, as necessary for the type of program offered.

The campus or program may require an applicant to submit an application not later than a reasonable deadline the campus or program establishes.

*Education Code 12.065*

**Exemption**

A campus or program for which a charter is granted is exempt from the instructional and academic rules and policies of the board from

which the campus or program is specifically exempted in the charter and retains the authority to operate under the charter only if students at the campus or in the program perform satisfactorily as provided by the charter. *Education Code 12.054*

**Charter Contract**

A charter shall be in the form and substance of a written contract signed by a board president and the chief operating officer of the campus or program for which the charter is granted. *Education Code 12.060*

Each charter shall:

1. Satisfy the requirements governing charter campuses and programs; and
2. Include all information required to be in the content of the charter consistent with the information provided in the application and any modification a board requires.

*Education Code 12.061*

**Content of Charter**

Each charter granted must:

1. Describe the educational program to be offered, which may be a general or specialized program;
2. Provide that continuation of the charter is contingent on satisfactory student performance on state-required assessment instruments, satisfactory financial performance under state financial accountability provisions, and on compliance with other applicable accountability provisions;
3. Specify any basis, in addition to a basis specified in Education Code Chapter 12, Subchapter C, on which the charter may be revoked;
4. Prohibit discrimination in admission on the basis of national origin, ethnicity, race, religion, or disability;
5. Describe the governing structure of the campus or program;
6. Specify any procedure or requirement, in addition to those under Education Code Chapter 38, that the campus or program will follow to ensure the health and safety of students and employees; and
7. Describe the manner in which an annual audit of financial and programmatic operations of the campus or program is to be

conducted, including the manner in which the campus or program will provide information necessary for the district in which it is located to participate in PEIMS.

*Education Code 12.059*

Revision

A charter created by petition or a cooperative charter program may be revised with board approval and on a petition signed by a majority of the parents and a majority of the classroom teachers at the campus or in the program, as applicable.

A charter created without a petition may be revised with the approval of the board of trustees that granted the charter. The charter may be revised only before the first day of instruction or after the final day of instruction of a school year.

*Education Code 12.062*

**Failure to Discharge or Refuse to Hire**

A charter campus or program commits a material violation of its charter if the campus or program fails to comply with the duty to discharge or refuse to hire certain employees or applicants for employment under Education Codes 12.1059, 22.085, or 22.092. *Education Code 12.0631*

**Applicability of Laws**

A charter campus or program is subject to federal and state laws and rules governing public schools, except that the charter campus or program is subject to the Education Code and rules adopted thereunder only to the extent that the code or rule specifically provides. *Education Code 12.055(a)*

Education Code

A charter campus or program has the powers granted to schools under the Education Code.

A charter campus or program is subject to:

1. Provisions of the Education Code establishing criminal offenses;
2. Prohibitions, restrictions, or requirements of the Education Code, or a rule adopted under the Education Code, relating to:
  - a. PEIMS, to the extent necessary to monitor compliance, as determined by the commissioner;
  - b. Criminal history records under Subchapter C, Chapter 22;
  - c. High school graduation under Section 28.025;
  - d. Special education programs under Subchapter A, Chapter 29;

- e. Bilingual education under Subchapter B, Chapter 29;
- f. Prekindergarten programs under Subchapter E, Chapter 29;
- g. Extracurricular activities under Section 33.081 (i.e., “no pass-no play”);
- h. Health and safety under Chapter 38 (including immunizations, dyslexia and related disorders, child abuse reporting, protective eye devices, tobacco and alcohol use, steroid use, access to medical records, and referrals to outside counselors);
- i. Public school accountability under Subchapter B, C, D, F, and J, Chapter 39, and Chapter 39A; and
- j. The duty to discharge or refuse to hire certain employees or applicants for employment under Education Code 12.1059.

*Education Code 12.056*

Open Meetings and  
Public Information  
Acts

With respect to the operation of a campus or program charter, the governing body of the charter campus or program is considered a governmental body for purposes of Government Code Chapters 551 (Open Meetings Act) and 552 (Public Information Act). *Education Code 12.057(a)*

Teacher Retirement  
System

A district may contract with another district or an open-enrollment charter holder for services at a campus charter. An employee of the district or open-enrollment charter holder providing contracted services to a campus charter is eligible for membership in and benefits from the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) if the employee would be eligible for membership and benefits if holding the same position at the employing district or open-enrollment charter school operated by the charter holder. *Education Code 12.055(b)*

An employee of an independent school district who is employed on a charter campus or program who qualifies for membership in TRS shall be covered under the system in the same manner and to the same extent as a qualified employee of the independent school district who is employed on a regularly operating campus or in a regularly operating program.

An employee of a charter holder who is employed on a campus or in a program granted a charter and who qualifies for membership in TRS shall be covered under the system in the same manner and to the same extent as a qualified employee of an independent

school district who is employed on a regularly operating campus or in a regularly operating program.

*Education Code 12.057(b), (b-1)*

Liability

A charter campus or program, and its employees and volunteers, are immune from liability to the same extent as a district, its employees, and volunteers, respectively. *Education Code 12.057(c)*

**Placement on Probation or Revocation**

A board may place on probation or revoke a charter it grants if the board determines that the campus or program:

1. Committed a material violation of the charter, including by failure to comply with the duty to discharge or refuse to hire certain employees or applicants for employment, as provided by Education Code 12.0631;
2. Failed to satisfy generally accepted accounting standards of fiscal management; or
3. Failed to comply with law governing a charter campus or program, another law, or a state agency rule.

The action a board takes under any item above shall be based on the best interest of campus or program students, the severity of the violation, and any previous violation the campus or program has committed.

*Education Code 12.063*

Procedure

Each board that grants a charter shall adopt a procedure to be used for placing on probation or revoking a charter it grants.

This procedure must provide an opportunity for a hearing to the campus or program for which the charter is granted and to parents and guardians of students at the campus or in the program. A hearing must be held on the campus or on one of the campuses in the case of a cooperative charter program.

*Education Code 12.064*



**Consent to Medical Treatment**

The school in which a minor student is enrolled may consent to medical, dental, psychological, and surgical treatment of that student, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The person having the power to consent as otherwise provided by law cannot be contacted.
2. Actual notice to the contrary has not been given by that person.
3. Written authorization to consent has been received from that person.

*Family Code 32.001(a)(4)*

**Form of Consent**

Consent to medical treatment under this policy shall be in writing, signed by the school official giving consent, and given to the doctor, hospital, or other medical facility that administers the treatment. The consent must contain:

1. The name of the student.
2. The name of one or both parents, if known, and the name of the managing conservator or guardian of the student, if either has been appointed.
3. The name of the person giving consent and the person's relation to the student.
4. A statement of the nature of the medical treatment to be given.
5. The date on which the treatment is to begin.

*Family Code 32.002*

**Minor's Consent to Treatment**

A minor may consent to medical, dental, psychological, and surgical treatment furnished by a licensed physician or dentist if the minor:

1. Is 16 years of age and residing separate and apart from the minor's parents, managing conservator, or guardian, with or without the consent of the parents, conservator, or guardian and regardless of the duration of the residence, and is managing his or her own financial affairs, regardless of the source of the income;
2. Consents to the diagnosis and treatment of any infectious, contagious, or communicable disease required to be reported to the Texas Department of State Health Services (DSHS), including all reportable diseases under Health and Safety Code 81.041;

3. Is unmarried and pregnant, and consents to hospital, medical, or surgical treatment, other than abortion, related to her pregnancy; or
4. Consents to examination and treatment for drug or chemical addiction, drug or chemical dependency, or any other condition directly related to drug or chemical use.

*Family Code 32.003; Planned Parenthood of Cent. Mo. v. Danforth, 428 U.S. 52 (1976); Bellotti v. Baird, 443 U.S. 622 (1979)*

**Administering Medication**

Upon adoption of policies concerning the administration of medication to students by district employees, the district, its board, and its employees are immune as described below, provided:

1. The district has received a written request to administer the medication from the parent, legal guardian, or other person having legal control of the student.
2. When administering prescription medication, the medication is administered either:
  - a. From a container that appears to be the original container and to be properly labeled; or
  - b. From a properly labeled unit dosage container filled by a registered nurse or another qualified district employee, as determined by district policy, from a container that appears to be the original container and to be properly labeled.

**By Volunteer Professionals**

If a district provides liability insurance for a licensed physician or registered nurse who provides volunteer services to the district, a board may allow the physician or nurse to administer to any student nonprescription medication or medication currently prescribed for the student by the student's personal physician.

**Immunity from Civil Liability**

A district, a board, and its employees shall be immune from civil liability for damages or injuries resulting from the administration of medication to a student in accordance with this policy.

*Education Code 22.052(a), (b)*

[See DG regarding protection of nurses for refusal to perform acts.]

**Self-Administration of Asthma or Anaphylaxis Medicine**

A student with asthma or anaphylaxis may possess and self-administer prescription asthma or anaphylaxis medicine while on school property or at a school-related event or activity if:

1. The medicine has been prescribed for that student as indicated by the prescription label on the medicine;

2. The student has demonstrated to the student's physician or other licensed health-care provider and the school nurse, if available, the skill level necessary to self-administer the prescription medication, including the use of any device required to administer the medication;
3. The self-administration is done in compliance with the prescription or written instructions from the student's physician or other licensed health-care provider; and
4. A parent of the student provides to the school:
  - a. Written authorization, signed by the parent, for the student to self-administer the prescription medicine while on school property or at a school-related event or activity; and
  - b. A written statement, signed by the student's physician or other licensed health-care provider, that states:
    - (1) That the student has asthma or anaphylaxis and is capable of self-administering the medicine;
    - (2) The name and purpose of the medicine;
    - (3) The prescribed dosage for the medicine;
    - (4) The times at which or circumstances under which the medicine may be administered; and
    - (5) The period for which the medicine is prescribed.

The physician's statement must be kept on file in the school nurse's office, or, if there is no school nurse, in the office of the principal of the school the student attends.

[See FFAF for care of students with diagnosed food allergies at risk for anaphylaxis.]

No Waiver of  
Immunity

The provisions above neither waive any liability or immunity nor create any liability for or a cause of action against a district, a board, or its employees.

*Education Code 38.015*

### **Sunscreen Products**

A student may possess and use a topical sunscreen product while on school property or at a school-related event or activity to avoid overexposure to the sun and not for the medical treatment of an injury or illness if the product is approved by the federal Food and Drug Administration for over-the-counter use. This provision does not waive any immunity from liability of a district, its board, or its

employees; or create any liability for or a cause of action against a district, its board, or its employees. *Education Code 38.021*

**Dietary Supplements**

A district employee commits a Class C misdemeanor offense if the employee:

1. Knowingly sells, markets, or distributes a dietary supplement that contains performance enhancing compounds to a primary or secondary education student with whom the employee has contact as part of the employee's school district duties; or
2. Knowingly endorses or suggests the ingestion, intranasal application, or inhalation of a dietary supplement that contains performance enhancing compounds by a primary or secondary education student with whom the employee has contact as part of the employee's school district duties.

*Education Code 38.011(a), (c)*

**Prescription  
Medication and  
Special Education  
Students**

An employee of a district is prohibited from requiring a child to obtain a prescription for a substance covered under the federal Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.) as a condition of attending school, receiving an evaluation for special education, or receiving special education and related services.

An employee is not prohibited from consulting or sharing classroom-based observations with parents regarding a student's academic and functional performance, behavior in the classroom or school, or the need for evaluation for special education or related services.

*20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(25)*

[See FFEB for information regarding psychotropic drugs and psychiatric evaluations]

**Opioid Antagonist  
Medication**

A person or organization acting under a standing order issued by a prescriber may store an opioid antagonist and may distribute an opioid antagonist, provided the person or organization does not request or receive compensation for storage or distribution. *Health and Safety Code 483.104*

A prescriber may, directly or by standing order, prescribe an opioid antagonist to a person in a position to assist a person experiencing an opioid-related drug overdose. *Health and Safety Code 483.102; 22 TAC 170.6*

Immunity

A person who, acting in good faith and with reasonable care, administers or does not administer an opioid antagonist to another person whom the person believes is suffering an opioid-related

drug overdose is not subject to criminal prosecution, sanction under any professional licensing statute, or civil liability, for an act or omission resulting from the administration of or failure to administer the opioid antagonist. *Health and Safety Code 483.106*

**Low-THC Cannabis**

A district may not enact, adopt, or enforce a rule, ordinance, order, resolution, or other regulation that prohibits the cultivation, production, dispensing, or possession of low-THC cannabis, as authorized by the Texas Compassionate-Use Act. *Health and Safety Code 487.201*

**Dextromethorphan  
(Certain Cold  
Medication)**

A district may not adopt or enforce an ordinance, order, rule, regulation, or policy that governs the sale, distribution, or possession of dextromethorphan. *Health and Safety Code 488.005*

---

**Note:** The following provisions apply only to a district that will adopt an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector policy or an unassigned asthma medication policy.

---

**Maintenance and  
Administration of  
Epinephrine Auto-  
Injectors**

A district may adopt and implement a policy regarding the maintenance, administration, and disposal of epinephrine auto-injectors at each campus in the district.

If a policy is adopted, the policy:

1. Must provide that school personnel and school volunteers who are authorized and trained may administer an epinephrine auto-injector to a person who is reasonably believed to be experiencing anaphylaxis on a school campus; and
2. May provide that school personnel and school volunteers who are authorized and trained may administer an epinephrine auto-injector to a person who is reasonably believed to be experiencing anaphylaxis at an off-campus school event or while in transit to or from a school event.

A district that adopts a policy must require that each campus have one or more school personnel members or school volunteers authorized and trained to administer an epinephrine auto-injector present during all hours the campus is open.

The supply of epinephrine auto-injectors at each campus must be stored in a secure location and be easily accessible to school personnel and school volunteers authorized and trained to administer an epinephrine auto-injector.

*Education Code 38.208*

WELLNESS AND HEALTH SERVICES  
MEDICAL TREATMENT

FFAC  
(LEGAL)

Definitions	“All hours the campus is open” is defined as, at a minimum, during regular on-campus school hours, and when school personnel are physically on site for school-sponsored activities.
<i>All Hours the Campus Is Open</i>	
<i>Campus</i>	A “campus” is defined as a unit of a school district that has an assigned administrator, has enrolled students who are counted for average daily attendance, has assigned instructional staff, provides instructional services to students, has one or more grades in the range from early childhood education through grade 12 or is ungraded, and complies with relevant Texas laws.
<i>Unassigned Epinephrine Auto-Injector</i>	An “unassigned epinephrine auto-injector” is an epinephrine auto-injector prescribed by an authorized health-care provider in the name of the school issued with a non-patient-specific standing delegation order for the administration of an epinephrine auto-injector, issued by a physician or person who has been delegated prescriptive authority under Occupations Code Chapter 157.  <i>25 TAC 37.603</i>
Prompt Notification	Local emergency medical services must be promptly notified by the school when an individual is suspected of experiencing anaphylaxis and when an epinephrine auto-injector is administered. If the trained school personnel or school volunteer is the only individual available to notify emergency medical services, the trained individual should administer the unassigned epinephrine auto-injector before notifying emergency medical services.  The parent, legal guardian, or emergency contact must be promptly notified by the school when an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector is utilized on their child as soon as is feasible during the emergency response to suspected anaphylaxis.  <i>25 TAC 37.605(e)–(f)</i>
Records	School records of the administration of the unassigned epinephrine auto-injector and suspected anaphylaxis must be provided to the parent or guardian of the recipient upon request. <i>25 TAC 37.605(f)</i>
Reports	Not later than the tenth business day after the date a school personnel member or school volunteer administers an epinephrine auto-injector in accordance with district policy, the school shall send a report to the school district; the physician who prescribed the epinephrine auto-injector; and the commissioner of state health services.  The report must include the following information:  1. The age of the person who received the administration of the epinephrine auto-injector;

2. Whether the person who received the administration of the epinephrine auto-injector was a student, a school personnel member or school volunteer, or a visitor;
3. The physical location where the epinephrine auto-injector was administered;
4. The number of doses of epinephrine auto-injector administered;
5. The title of the person who administered the epinephrine auto-injector; and
6. Any other information required by the commissioner of education.

*Education Code 38.209*

Notifications to the commissioner of DSHS shall be submitted on the designated electronic form available on the DSHS School Health Program website. *25 TAC 37.608*

Personnel or  
Volunteers

At each campus in which a school adopts an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector policy, the principal may assign school personnel or school volunteers to be trained to administer unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors or seek school personnel or school volunteers who volunteer to be trained to administer unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors.

In order to increase the number of trained individuals in the administration of unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors, schools may distribute to school personnel or school volunteers in the district, at least once per school year, a notice that includes a description of the request seeking volunteers to be trained to administer an epinephrine auto-injector to a person believed to be experiencing anaphylaxis and a description of the training that the school personnel or school volunteers will receive in the administration of epinephrine with an auto-injector.

*25 TAC 37.606(a)–(b)*

Signed Statement

Trained school personnel or school volunteers who administer the unassigned epinephrine auto-injector must submit a signed statement indicating that they agree to perform the service of administering an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector to a student or individual that may be experiencing anaphylaxis. *25 TAC 37.606(c)*

Training

A district that adopts an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector written policy is responsible for training school personnel and school volunteers in the recognizing of anaphylaxis signs and symptoms and administration of an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector.

Each assigned school personnel or school volunteer shall receive initial training and an annual refresher training. Training shall be consistent with the most recent [Voluntary Guidelines for Managing Food Allergies in Schools and Early Care and Education Programs](#)<sup>1</sup> published by the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

*25 TAC 37.607*

Training may be provided in a formal training session or through an online education course. Training must include information on properly inspecting unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors for usage and expiration. *25 TAC 37.607(1)–(2)*

Training must include information on implementing emergency procedures, if necessary, after administering an epinephrine auto-injector, and properly disposing of used or expired epinephrine auto-injectors. A district shall maintain records on the required training. *Education Code 38.210*

The initial training must include hands-on training with an epinephrine auto-injector trainer. The annual refresher training must include a hands-on demonstration of administration skills. The training must also include information about promptly notifying local emergency medical services.

Each school campus shall maintain training records and make available upon request a list of those school personnel or school volunteers trained and authorized to administer the unassigned epinephrine auto-injector on the campus.

*25 TAC 37.607(3)–(6)*

Standing Orders

A physician or person who has been delegated prescriptive authority under Occupations Code Chapter 157 may prescribe epinephrine auto-injectors in the name of a district in accordance with law. *Education Code 38.211*

A district shall obtain a prescription from an authorized health-care provider each year, to stock, possess, and maintain at least one unassigned adult epinephrine auto-injector pack (two doses) on each school campus.

A school may choose to stock unassigned pediatric epinephrine auto-injector packs, based on the need of the school's population.

*25 TAC 37.605(a)*

Epinephrine  
Coordinator

The superintendent will designate appropriate school personnel to coordinate and manage policy implementation, including training of

	<p>school personnel, and the acquisition or purchase, usage, expiration, and disposal of unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors. Throughout the school calendar year, the designated school personnel shall coordinate with each campus to ensure that the unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors are checked monthly for expiration and usage and the findings are documented. <i>19 TAC 37.605(b)</i></p>
Notice to Parents	<p>If a district implements a policy for the maintenance, administration, and disposal of epinephrine auto-injectors, the district shall provide written notice to a parent or guardian of each student enrolled in the district or school. Notice must be provided before the policy is implemented by the district or school and before the start of each school year. <i>Education Code 38.212</i></p> <p>A district shall provide electronic or written notice to the parent or guardian of each student.</p> <p>If a district changes or discontinues the policy under this subchapter, written or electronic notice detailing the change or discontinuation must be provided to the parent or guardian of each student within 15 calendar days.</p> <p><i>25 TAC 37.609</i></p>
Storage	<p>Unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors shall be stored in a secure, easily accessible area for an emergency, in accordance with manufacturer's guidelines. It is recommended that the school administrator develop a map to be placed in high traffic areas that indicates the location of the unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors on each school campus. It is recommended that the map also indicate the locations of the automated external defibrillator (AED). <i>25 TAC 37.605(h)</i></p>
Replacement	<p>The district shall develop a plan to replace, as soon as reasonably possible, any unassigned epinephrine auto-injector that is used or close to expiration. <i>25 TAC 37.605(i)</i></p>
Disposal	<p>Used unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors shall be considered infectious waste and shall be disposed of according to the school's bloodborne pathogen control policy.</p> <p>Expired unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors shall be disposed of according to the school's medication disposal policy.</p> <p><i>25 TAC 37.605(j)–(k)</i> [See DBB]</p>
Gifts, Grants, and Donations	<p>A district may accept gifts, grants, donations, and federal and local funds to implement its policy. <i>Education Code 38.213</i></p>

**Maintenance and  
Administration of  
Asthma Medicine**

A district may voluntarily adopt and implement a written policy regarding the maintenance, administration, and disposal of asthma medication at each campus. If a written policy is adopted, the unassigned asthma medication policy must comply with Education Code 38.208. *25 TAC 40.44(a)*

The policy must provide that the school nurse may administer prescription asthma medicine to a student only if the school nurse has written notification from a parent or guardian of the student stating that the student has been diagnosed as having asthma and stating that the school nurse may administer prescription asthma medicine to the student. A school nurse may administer the prescription asthma medicine only at a school campus. *Education Code 38.208(b-1)*

Definitions

*Authorized  
Health-care  
Provider*

“Authorized health-care provider” means a physician, as defined in Education Code 38.201, or person who has been delegated prescriptive authority by a physician under Occupations Code Chapter 157.

*Campus*

“Campus” means a geographic unit of a school district that:

1. Has an assigned administrator;
2. Has enrolled students who are counted for average daily attendance;
3. Has assigned instructional staff;
4. Provides instructional services to students;
5. Has one or more grades in the range from early childhood education through grade 12 or is ungraded; and
6. Is subject to Texas laws.

*School Nurse*

“School nurse” means a registered nurse, as defined in 19 Administrative Code 153.1022, authorized to administer asthma medication, or licensed vocational nurse working under supervision as described in Occupations Code 301.353. [See DP]

*Unassigned  
Asthma  
Medication*

“Unassigned asthma medication” means a fast acting bronchodilator delivered by metered dose inhaler with single use spacer or by nebulizer as a rescue medication, prescribed by an authorized health-care provider in the name of the district with a non-patient-specific standing delegation order for the administration of an asthma medication, and issued by an authorized health-care provider.

*25 TAC 40.42*

Minimum Dosage Requirement	<p>Subject to the availability of funding, a district that adopts such a policy must secure or obtain the suggested minimum dosage of unassigned asthma medication. <i>25 TAC 40.44 (a)(2)</i></p> <p>Once a district voluntarily adopts an unassigned asthma medication policy, a campus that implements an unassigned asthma medication policy must stock unassigned asthma medication, subject to available funding, as defined by 25 Administrative Code 40.44. <i>25 TAC 40.45(a)</i></p>
Optional Review	<p>In development of an unassigned asthma medication policy, a district may consider performing a review to include consultation with school nurses, the local school health advisory committee, local health-care providers, or any department or organization involved with student well-being; campus geography; and student population size.</p>
Policy Requirements	<p>If a district voluntarily adopts an unassigned asthma medication policy, the policy must include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. A process to obtain written authorization from a parent or guardian of the student that the student has been diagnosed as having asthma and stating that the school nurse may administer unassigned asthma medication to the student;</li><li>2. A designated campus administrator to coordinate and manage policy implementation that includes:<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Whether to conduct a review at the campus to determine the need for additional doses;</li><li>b. Training of school nurses;</li><li>c. Acquiring or purchasing, maintaining, storing, and using unassigned asthma medication, subject to available campus funding; and</li><li>d. Disposing of expired unassigned asthma medication;</li></ol></li><li>3. A list of school nurses who will be assigned to administer unassigned asthma medication;</li><li>4. Locations of unassigned asthma medication;</li><li>5. Procedures for notifying a parent, prescribing authorized health-care provider, and the student's primary health-care provider when unassigned asthma medication is administered; and</li><li>6. A plan to replace, as soon as reasonably possible, any unassigned asthma medication that is used or close to expiration.</li></ol>

	<p>An adopted unassigned asthma medication policy must be publicly available.</p> <p><i>25 TAC 40.44(b)-(d)</i></p>
No Negative Fiscal Impact	<p>The policy may not require a district to purchase prescription asthma medicine or require any other expenditure related to the maintenance or administration of asthma medicine that would result in a negative fiscal impact on the district or school. <i>Education Code 38.208(f)</i></p>
Asthma Medicine Standing Order	<p>A physician or person who has been delegated prescriptive authority under Occupations Code Chapter 157, may prescribe asthma medicine in the name of a school district. <i>Education Code 38.211(a)</i></p> <p>An authorized health-care provider who prescribes unassigned asthma medication under 25 Administrative Code 40.45(b), below, must provide the campus with a standing order for the administration of unassigned asthma medication to a person who:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Is reasonably believed to be experiencing a symptom of asthma; and</li><li>2. Has provided written notification and permission as required by the unassigned asthma medication policy.</li></ol> <p><i>25 TAC 40.45(c)</i></p>
Prescription of Unassigned Asthma Medicine	<p>A campus must obtain a prescription from an authorized health-care provider each year to stock, possess, and maintain at least two doses of unassigned asthma medication on each campus as described in Education Code 38.208 and any equipment necessary to administer the medication.</p> <p>The campus must renew this prescription or obtain a new prescription annually.</p> <p>The number of additional doses may be determined by an individual campus review led by an authorized health-care provider.</p> <p><i>25 TAC 40.45(b)</i></p>
School Nurse Training	<p>A district that chooses to adopt a written unassigned asthma medication policy is responsible for training school nurses about:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The adopted unassigned asthma medication policy;</li><li>2. The authorized health-care provider's standing order;</li><li>3. Follow-up with the prescribing authorized health-care provider and the student's primary health-care provider; and</li></ol>

4. The report required after administering an unassigned asthma medication under 25 Administrative Code 40.47 (see Reports and Records, below).

Each campus must maintain training records and must make available upon request a list of school nurses trained and authorized to administer the unassigned asthma medication on the campus.

*25 TAC 40.46*

Notice to Parents

If a district implements an unassigned asthma medication policy, the campus shall provide written or electronic notice to a parent or guardian of each student in accordance with Education Code 38.212.

If a district changes or discontinues the unassigned asthma medication policy, written or electronic notice detailing the change or discontinuation must be provided to a parent or guardian of each student within 15 calendar days after the change or discontinuation.

*25 TAC 40.48*

The district shall provide written notice to a parent or guardian of each student enrolled in the district or school. Notice required under Education Code 38.212 must be provided before a policy is implemented by the district and before the start of each school year. *Education Code 38.212*

Records and Reporting

Records relating to implementing and administering the school district unassigned asthma medication policy must be retained per the campus record retention schedule.

The campus must submit a report no later than the tenth business day after the date a school nurse administers asthma medication in accordance with the unassigned asthma medication policy. The report must be included in the student's permanent record and submitted to the school administrator, prescribing authorized health-care provider, the student's primary health-care provider, and to the Department of State Health Services (DSHS) commissioner.

Notifications to the DSHS commissioner must be submitted on the designated [electronic form](#)<sup>2</sup> available on DSHS's School Health Program website found at [dshs.texas.gov](http://dshs.texas.gov).

*25 TAC 40.47*

Asthma Medicine Storage and Disposal

The supply of asthma medicine at each campus must be stored in a secure location and be easily accessible to the school nurse. *Education Code 38.208(e)*

The unassigned asthma medication must be stored in accordance with the manufacturer's guidelines and local policy of the school district.

Expired unassigned asthma medication and other used or expired supplies must be disposed of in accordance with the manufacturer's guidelines and local policy of the district.

*25 TAC 40.45(d)–(e)*

**Immunity from Liability**

A person who in good faith takes, or fails to take, any action related to Education Code Chapter 38, Subchapter E, related to the maintenance and administration of epinephrine auto-injectors and asthma medicine, is immune from civil or criminal liability or disciplinary action resulting from that action or failure to act, including:

1. Issuing an order for epinephrine auto-injectors or asthma medicine;
2. Supervising or delegating the administration of an epinephrine auto-injector or asthma medicine;
3. Possessing, maintaining, storing, or disposing of an epinephrine auto-injector or asthma medicine;
4. Prescribing an epinephrine auto-injector or asthma medicine;
5. Dispensing an epinephrine auto-injector or asthma medicine, provided that permission has been granted as provided by Education Code 38.208(b-1) [see Maintenance and Administration of Asthma Medicine, above];
6. Administering, or assisting in administering, an epinephrine auto-injector, provided that permission has been granted as provided by Education Code 38.208(b-1) [see Maintenance and Administration of Epinephrine Auto-Injectors, above];
7. Providing, or assisting in providing, training, consultation, or advice in the development, adoption, or implementation of policies, guidelines, rules, or plans; or
8. Undertaking any other act permitted or required under Education Code Chapter 38, Subchapter E.

A district and school personnel and school volunteers are immune from suit resulting from an act, or failure to act, under Education Code Chapter 38, Subchapter E, including an act or failure to act under related policies and procedures.

An act or failure to act by school personnel or a school volunteer, including an act or failure to act under related policies and procedures, is the exercise of judgment or discretion on the part of the

school personnel or school volunteer and is not considered to be a ministerial act for purposes of liability of the school district.

*Education Code 38.215; 25 TAC 40.49*

---

<sup>1</sup> CDC Voluntary Guidelines for Managing Food Allergies:

<https://www.cdc.gov/healthyschools/foodallergies/index.htm>

<sup>2</sup> Required Reporting of Administered Unassigned Asthma Medication to DSHS: <https://www.dshs.texas.gov/schoolhealth/forms/ReportingForm-Asthma.aspx>





## (LOCAL) Policy Comparison Packet

This packet is generated by an automated process that compares the updated policy to the district's current policy as found in TASB records.

In this packet, you will find:

- Policies being recommended for revision (annotated)
- New policies (not annotated)
- Policies recommended for deletion (annotated in PDF; omitted in Word)

Annotations are shown as follows.

- *Deletions* are shown in a red strike-through font: ~~deleted text~~.
- *Additions* are shown in a blue, bold font: **new text**.
- Blocks of text that have been *moved* without alteration are shown in green, with double underline and double strike-through formatting to distinguish the text's destination from its origin: ~~moved text~~ becomes moved text.
- *Revision bars* appear in the right margin, as above.

---

**Note:** While the annotation software competently identifies simple changes, large or complicated changes—as in an extensive rewrite—may be more difficult to follow. In addition, TASB's recent changes to the policy templates to facilitate accessibility sometimes makes formatting changes appear tracked, even though the text remains the same.

---

For further assistance in understanding policy changes, please refer to the explanatory notes in your Localized Policy Manual update packet or contact your policy consultant.

<b>Contact:</b>	<b>School Districts and Education Service Centers</b>	<b>Community Colleges</b>
	<a href="mailto:policy.service@tasb.org">policy.service@tasb.org</a>	<a href="mailto:colleges@tasb.org">colleges@tasb.org</a>
	800.580.7529 512.467.0222	800.580.1488 512.467.3689

**Purchasing  
Authority**

The Board delegates to the Superintendent the authority to make budgeted purchases for goods or services. However, any single, budgeted purchase of goods or services that costs \$100,000 or more, regardless of whether the goods or services are competitively purchased, shall require Board approval before a transaction may take place, except as otherwise provided in this policy.

[See CV regarding construction expenditures]

The Superintendent shall not be required to obtain Board approval for the following types of budgeted purchases that cost \$100,000 or more, but shall subsequently report them to the Board:

1. A purchase made pursuant to a Board-approved interlocal contract, in accordance with law.
2. A purchase made through a cooperative purchasing program, in accordance with law.
3. A purchase made through a state purchasing program that satisfies the District's obligation for competitive purchasing. [See CH(LEGAL) or CBB(LEGAL), as appropriate]
4. A purchase for produce or fuel.

Exception for  
Emergency  
Contracts

In the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting the District, the Board delegates to the Superintendent the authority to contract for the replacement, construction, or repair of school equipment or facilities in accordance with law, if emergency replacement, construction, or repair is necessary for the health and safety of District students and staff. The Superintendent shall report to the Board at the next regular meeting any contract made under this authority. [See Disaster Exception, CH(LEGAL)]

The delegation regarding emergency contracts does not waive competitive purchasing requirements under Education Code Chapter 44. Only the Board is authorized to waive competitive purchasing requirements under limited circumstances in accordance with Education Code 44.031(h). [See Emergency Damage or Destruction, CH(LEGAL)]

Purchasing  
Procedures

The Superintendent shall develop purchasing procedures to implement the requirements of state and federal law. [See also CB, CBB, CH(LEGAL), and COA]

Purchasing Method

The Board delegates to the Superintendent the authority to determine the method of purchasing in accordance with CH(LEGAL) or CBB(LEGAL), as appropriate.

*Competitive  
Bidding*

If competitive bidding is chosen as the purchasing method, the Superintendent shall prepare bid specifications. All bids shall be in accordance with administrative regulations, and the submission of any electronic bids shall also be in accordance with Board-adopted rules. All bidders shall be invited to attend the bid opening. Any bid may be withdrawn prior to the scheduled time for opening. Bids received after the specified time shall not be considered.

The District may reject any and all bids in accordance with state or federal law, as applicable.

*Competitive  
Sealed Proposals*

If competitive sealed proposals are chosen as the purchasing method, the Superintendent shall prepare the request for proposals and/or specifications for items to be purchased. All proposals shall be in accordance with administrative regulations, and the submission of any electronic proposals shall also be in accordance with Board-adopted rules. Proposals received after the specified time shall not be considered. Proposals shall be opened at the time specified, and all proposers shall be invited to attend the proposal opening. Proposals may be withdrawn prior to the scheduled time of opening. Changes in the content of a proposal, and in prices, may be negotiated after proposals are opened.

The District may reject any and all proposals in accordance with state or federal law, as applicable.

Electronic Bids or  
Proposals

Bids or proposals that the District has chosen to accept through electronic transmission shall be administered in accordance with Board-adopted rules. Such rules shall safeguard the integrity of the competitive procurement process; ensure the identification, security, and confidentiality of electronic bids or proposals; and ensure that the electronic bids or proposals remain effectively unopened until the proper time.

**Responsibility for  
Debts**

The Board shall assume responsibility for debts incurred in the name of the District so long as those debts are for purchases made in accordance with the adopted budget, state law, Board policy, and the District's purchasing procedures. [See CE] The Board shall not be responsible for debts incurred by persons or organizations not directly under Board control. Persons making unauthorized purchases shall assume full responsibility for all such debts.

**Purchase  
Commitments**

All purchase commitments shall be made by the Superintendent in accordance with administrative procedures, including the District's purchasing procedures.

**Personal Purchases**

District employees shall not be permitted to make purchases for personal use through the District's business office.

**Compliance with Law**

The Superintendent shall establish procedures that ensure that all school facilities within the District comply with applicable laws and local building codes.

Building Code Adoption

All construction projects shall be designed to meet the most current International Building Code edition with the latest amendments, in addition to requirements set out at policy CS.

**Construction Contracts**

The project delivery/contract award method to be used for each construction contract valued at or above \$100,000 shall be the competitive sealed proposal, as determined and approved by the Board as the best value. If another method is deemed more appropriate for a particular construction project, the Superintendent or designee shall submit a recommendation for the Board to consider, determine, and approve a different project delivery method that provides the best value to the District. [See CV series generally and CBB(LEGAL) for requirements if federal funds are involved.]

For construction contracts valued at or above \$100,000, the Superintendent shall also submit the resulting contract to the Board for approval. Lesser expenditures for construction and construction-related materials or services shall be at the discretion of the Superintendent and consistent with law and policy. [See also CH and CBB(LEGAL)]

---

**Note:** For provisions regarding delegation of authority for construction contracts in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting the District, see CH(LOCAL).

---

**Change Orders**

Change orders permitted by law shall be approved prior to any changes being made in the approved plans or the actual construction of the facility.

Change orders valued at or above \$100,000 shall require Board approval. The Superintendent or designee shall be authorized to approve change orders of a lesser amount.

**Extension of Time**

The Superintendent or designee shall approve any extensions of time to construction contracts without requiring Board approval.

**Project Administration**

All construction projects shall be administered by the Superintendent or designee.

The Superintendent shall keep the Board informed concerning construction projects and also shall provide information to the general public.

**Final Payment**

The District shall not make final payments for construction or the supervision of construction until the work has been completed and the Superintendent or designee has accepted the work.

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

**Leave Administration**

The Superintendent shall develop administrative regulations addressing employee leaves and absences to implement the provisions of this policy.

**Definitions**

The term "immediate family" is defined as:

**Immediate Family**

1. Spouse.
2. ~~Son~~Child, defined as son or daughter, including a biological, adopted, or foster child, a son- or daughter-in-law, a stepchild, a legal ward, or a child for whom the employee stands *in loco parentis*.
3. Parent, stepparent, parent-in-law, or other individual who stands *in loco parentis* to the employee.
4. Sibling, stepsibling, and sibling-in-law.
5. Grandparent and grandchild.
6. Any person residing in the employee's household at the time of illness or death.

For purposes of the Family and Medical Leave Act (FMLA), the definitions of spouse, parent, son or daughter, and next of kin are found in DECA(LEGAL).

**Family Emergency**

The term "family emergency" shall be limited to disasters and life-threatening situations involving the employee or a member of the employee's immediate family.

**Leave Day**

A "leave day" for purposes of earning, ~~using~~use, or recording-of leave shall mean the number of hours per day equivalent to the employee's usual assignment, whether full-time or part-time.

**School Year**

A "school year" for purposes of earning, using, or recording leave shall mean the term of the employee's annual employment as set by the District for the employee's usual assignment, whether full-time or part-time.

---

**Note:** For District contribution to employee insurance during leave, see CRD(LOCAL).

---

**Availability**

The District shall make state personal leave and local leave for the current year available for use at the beginning of the school year.

**Earning Local Leave**

An employee shall not earn any local leave when he or she is in unpaid status. An employee using full or proportionate paid leave shall be considered to be in paid status.

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

State Leave Proration

If an employee separates from employment with the District before his or her last duty day of the school year or begins employment after the first duty day of the school year, state personal leave shall be prorated based on the actual time employed.

If an employee separates from employment before the last duty day of the school year, the employee's final paycheck shall be reduced for state personal leave the employee used beyond his or her pro rata entitlement for the school year.

**Local Leave Proration**

When an employee has used two or fewer local leave days more than he or she has earned, the District shall deduct the cost of unearned local leave days from the employee's paycheck for the month in which the employee used more leave than he or she earned. When an employee has used three or more local leave days more than he or she has earned, the District shall deduct the cost of unearned local leave over the balance of the employee's remaining paychecks for the employee's work year.

**Deductions**

~~Leave Without Pay~~

~~The District shall not approve paid leave for more leave days than have been accumulated in prior years plus leave currently available. Any unapproved absences or absences beyond accumulated and available paid leave shall result in deductions from the employee's pay.~~

~~Leave Proration~~

~~Employed for Less Than Full Year~~

~~If an employee separates from employment with the District before his or her last duty day of the year, or begins employment after the first duty day, state personal leave and local leave shall be prorated based on the actual time employed.~~

~~If an employee separates from employment before the last duty day of the school year, the employee's final paycheck shall be reduced for:~~

- ~~1. State personal leave the employee used beyond his or her pro rata entitlement for the school year; and~~
- ~~2. Local leave the employee used but had not earned as of the date of separation.~~

~~Employed for Full Year~~

~~If an employee uses more local leave than he or she earned and remains employed with the District through his or her last duty day, the District shall deduct the cost of the excess leave days from the employee's pay in accordance with administrative regulations.~~

**Recording**

~~Leave shall be recorded by the District as follows:~~

- ~~1. Leave shall be recorded in half-day increments for all employees.~~

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

~~2. If the employee is taking intermittent FMLA leave, leave shall be recorded in one-hour increments.~~

**Order of Use**

~~Earned compensatory time shall be used before any available paid state and local leave. [See DEAB]~~

~~Unless an employee requests a different order in writing and prior to use, available paid state and local leave shall be used in the following order, as applicable:~~

~~1. Local leave.~~

~~2. State sick leave accumulated before the 1995-96 school year.~~

~~3. State personal leave.~~

**Concurrent Use of Leave**

~~When an absent employee is eligible for FMLA leave, the District shall designate the absence as FMLA leave.~~

~~The District shall require the employee to use temporary disability leave and paid leave, including compensatory time, concurrently with FMLA leave, except that an employee receiving workers' compensation income benefits may choose to receive those benefits in lieu of using paid leave.~~

~~An employee receiving workers' compensation income benefits may be eligible for paid or unpaid leave. An absence due to a work-related injury or illness shall be designated as FMLA leave, temporary disability leave, and/or assault leave, as applicable.~~

**Medical Certification**

An employee shall submit medical certification of the need for leave if:

1. The employee is absent more than five consecutive workdays because of personal illness or illness in the immediate family;
2. The District requires medical certification due to a questionable pattern of absences or when deemed necessary by the supervisor or Superintendent; **or**
- ~~3.~~ The employee requests FMLA leave for the employee's serious health condition; **a serious health condition or that of the employee's** spouse, parent, or child; or
- ~~4.3.~~ **The employee requests FMLA leave** for military caregiver **leave purposes.**

In each case, medical certification shall be made by a health-care provider as defined by the FMLA. [See DECA(LEGAL)]

~~Note: For District contribution to employee insurance during leave, see CRD(LOCAL).~~

**State Personal Leave** The Board requires employees to differentiate the manner in which state personal leave is used. :

~~Nondiscretionary~~  
~~Non-Discretionary~~ Use

~~1.4.~~ ~~Nondiscretionary~~~~Non-discretionary~~ use of leave shall be for the same reasons and in the same manner as state sick leave accumulated before May 30, 1995. [See DEC(LEGAL)]

~~Nondiscretionary~~~~Non-discretionary~~ use includes leave related to the birth or placement of a child and taken within the first year after the child's birth, adoption, or foster placement.

Discretionary Use

~~2.5.~~ Discretionary use of leave is at the individual employee's discretion, subject to limitations set out below.

~~Limitations~~

~~Request for  
Leave~~

~~In deciding whether to approve or deny a~~~~The employee shall submit a written~~ request for discretionary use of state personal leave, ~~to the immediate supervisor or designee in advance in accordance with administrative regulations. In deciding whether to approve or deny state personal leave, the supervisor or designee~~ shall not seek or consider the reasons for which an employee requests to use leave. The supervisor ~~or designee~~ shall, however, consider the ~~duration of the requested absence in conjunction with the~~ effect of the employee's absence on the educational program ~~and~~ District operations, as well as the availability of substitutes.

**Local Leave**

~~Each employee~~~~All employees~~ shall earn paid ~~local~~ leave days ~~per school year~~ in accordance with the following schedule.:

**Local Leave Days Earned**

Days Employed During the Year	Professional and all full-time employees	Nonprofessional part-time employees
	<del>PROFESSIONAL AND ALL FULL-TIME EMPLOYEES</del> (37.5–40 <del>hrs</del> hours/week) <del>Local leave days earned</del>	<del>NONPROFESSIONAL PART-TIME EMPLOYEES</del> (20–37.4 <del>hrs</del> hours/week) <del>Local leave days earned</del>
00 – 12	0.0	0.0
13 – 25	0.0	0.0

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

26 – 38	0.0	0.0
39 – 51	0.0	0.0
52 – 64	0.0	0.0
65 – 77	0.5	0.0
78 – 90	1.0	0.0
91 – 103	1.5	0.0
104 – 116	2.0	0.0
117 – 129	2.5	0.0
130 – 142	3.0	0.0
143 – 155	3.5	0.0
156 – 168	4.0	0.0
169 – 179	4.5	0.0
180 – 194	5.0	0.0
195 – 206	5.5	0.0
207 – 217	6.0	0.5
218 – 223	6.5	1.0
224 +	7.0	1.5

Local leave shall accumulate without limit. Upon resignation, all unused and nonreimbursable sick leave shall be lost.

Local leave shall be used according to the terms and conditions of state sick leave accumulated before the 1995–96 school year [see DEC(LEGAL)] or as extenuating circumstance leave as defined in DEC(REGULATION).

An employee may also use local leave for absences related to the birth or placement of a child when leave is taken within the first year after the child’s birth, adoption, or foster placement.

**Family and Medical Leave**

FMLA leave shall run concurrently with applicable paid leave and compensatory time, as applicable.

---

**Note:** See DECA(LEGAL) for provisions addressing FMLA.

---

Twelve-Month Period

For purposes of an employee’s entitlement to FMLA leave, the 12-month period shall be measured forward from the date an individual employee’s first FMLA leave begins.

Combined Leave for Spouses

**When** if both spouses are employed by the District, the District shall limit FMLA leave for the birth, adoption, or placement of a child, or

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

to care for a parent with a serious health condition, to a combined total of 12 weeks. The District shall limit military caregiver leave to a combined total of 26 weeks. ~~{See DECA(LEGAL)}~~

Intermittent or  
Reduced Schedule  
Leave

The District shall permit use of intermittent or reduced schedule FMLA leave for the care of a newborn child or for the adoption or placement of a child with the employee. ~~{See DECA(LEGAL) for use of intermittent or reduced schedule leave due to a medical necessity.}~~

Certification of  
Leave

~~When~~If an employee requests leave, the employee shall provide certification, ~~in accordance with~~as required by FMLA regulations, of the need for leave. ~~{See DECA(LEGAL)}~~

Fitness-for-Duty  
Certification

~~In accordance with administrative regulations,~~ ~~when~~If an employee takes FMLA leave due to the employee's own serious health condition, the employee shall provide, before resuming work, a fitness-for-duty certification. ~~If the District will require certification of the employee's ability to perform essential job functions, the District shall provide a list of essential job functions to the employee with the FMLA designation notice.~~

~~Leave at the End of  
Semester~~ Leave

~~When~~If a teacher takes leave near the end of the semester, the District may require the teacher to continue leave until the end of the semester. ~~{See DECA(LEGAL), Leave at the End of a Semester}~~

**Failure to Return**

~~If, at the expiration of FMLA leave, the employee is able to return to work but chooses not to do so, the District may require reimbursement of premiums paid by the District during the leave. {See DECA(LEGAL), Recovery of Benefit Cost}~~

**Temporary Disability  
Leave**

Any full-time employee whose position requires educator certification by the State Board for Educator Certification or by the District shall be eligible for temporary disability leave. The maximum length of temporary disability leave shall be 180 calendar days. [See DBB(LOCAL) for temporary disability leave placement and DEC(LEGAL) for return to active duty.]

An employee's notification of need for extended absence due to the employee's own medical condition shall be forwarded to the Superintendent ~~or designee~~ as a request for temporary disability leave.

The District shall require the employee to use temporary disability leave and paid leave, including any compensatory time, concurrently with FMLA leave, except that an employee receiving workers' compensation income benefits may choose to receive those benefits in lieu of using paid leave.

**Workers'  
Compensation**

---

**Note:** Workers' compensation is not a form of leave. The workers' compensation law does not require the continuation of the District's contribution to health insurance. ~~{See CRD(LOCAL) regarding payment of insurance contribution during employee absences.}~~

---

An absence due to a work-related injury or illness shall be designated as FMLA leave, temporary disability leave, and/or assault leave, as applicable.

An employee eligible for workers' compensation wage benefits, and not on assault leave, shall indicate in writing whether he or she chooses to:

1. Receive workers' compensation wage benefits; or
2. Use available paid leave. Workers' compensation wage benefits shall begin when:
  - a. Paid leave is exhausted;
  - b. The employee elects to discontinue use of paid leave; or
  - c. Leave payments are less than the employee's pre-injury average weekly wage.

**No Paid Leave  
Offset**

The District shall not permit the option for paid leave offset in conjunction with workers' compensation income benefits. [See CRE]

**Court Appearances**

Absences due to compliance with a valid subpoena or for jury duty shall be fully compensated by the District and shall not be deducted from the employee's pay or leave balance ~~when the employee provides documentation of the subpoena or jury duty.~~

Absences for court appearances related to an employee's personal business shall be deducted from the employee's personal leave or shall be taken by the employee as leave without pay.

**Neutral Absence  
Control**

If an employee does not return to work after exhausting all available paid and unpaid leave, the District shall provide the employee written notice that he or she no longer has leave available for use. The District shall automatically pursue termination of an employee who has exhausted all available leave, regardless of the reason for the absence [see DF series]. The employee's eligibility for reasonable accommodations, as required by the Americans with Disabilities Act [see DAA(LEGAL)], shall be considered before termination. If terminated, the employee may apply for reemployment with the District.



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

Update to Lake Travis ISD DEC (LOCAL) Policy Regarding Employee Leaves and Absences

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION:**

Approve the update to Lake Travis ISD DEC (LOCAL) Policy Regarding Employee Leaves and Absences.

### **RATIONALE**

The administration is recommending significant changes to the current DEC (LOCAL) policy that addresses employee leaves and absences. These changes include the following:

- The implementation of a catastrophic sick leave bank that will allow participating employees the ability to request additional leave if the employee experiences a catastrophic illness or injury and has exhausted all other paid leave;
- Allowing more flexibility in the use of local leave (no longer just “sick” leave);
- Updating policy to reflect practice related to employees on workers’ compensation leave being allowed to offset their income with paid leave;
- Adding a provision prohibiting an employee from working another job during work hours if the employee is on leave;
- Updating the neutral absence policy to allow for a grace period;
- Removing the administrative detail from the local policy and relocating it to an administrative regulation; and
- Reorganizing, consolidating language, and other minor non-substantive edits.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

None

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Evalene Murphy - Assistant Superintendent for Employee & Community Relations

Pam Sanchez - Assistant Superintendent for Business Services

Amber King - General Counsel

### **ATTACHMENTS**

Draft DEC (LOCAL) – Redline

Draft DEC (LOCAL) - Clean

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

**Leave  
Administration**

The Superintendent shall develop administrative regulations addressing employee leaves and absences to implement the provisions of this policy.

**Definitions**

The term "immediate family" is defined as:

Immediate Family

1. Spouse.
2. Son or daughter, including a biological, adopted, or foster child, a son- or daughter-in-law, a stepchild, a legal ward, or a child for whom the employee stands *in loco parentis*.
3. Parent, stepparent, parent-in-law, or other individual who stands *in loco parentis* to the employee.
4. Sibling, stepsibling, and sibling-in-law.
5. Grandparent and grandchild.
6. Any person residing in the employee's household at the time of illness or death.

For purposes of the Family and Medical Leave Act (FMLA), the definitions of spouse, parent, son or daughter, and next of kin are found in DECA(LEGAL).

Family Emergency

The term "family emergency" shall be limited to disasters and life-threatening situations involving the employee or a member of the employee's immediate family.

Leave Day

A "leave day" for purposes of earning, using, or recording leave shall mean the number of hours per day equivalent to the employee's usual assignment, whether full-time or part-time.

School Year

A "school year" for purposes of earning, using, or recording leave (except the sick leave bank) shall mean the term of the employee's annual employment as set by the District, whether full-time or part-time.

For purposes of the sick leave bank, the term "school year" shall mean September 1 through August 31.

Catastrophic Illness  
or Injury

A catastrophic illness or injury is a severe condition or combination of conditions affecting the mental or physical health of the employee that requires the services of a licensed practitioner for a prolonged period of time and that forces the employee to exhaust all leave time earned by that employee and to lose compensation from the District. Such conditions typically require prolonged hospitalization or recovery or are expected to result in disability or death. Conditions related to pregnancy or childbirth shall be considered catastrophic if they meet the requirements of this paragraph.

---

**Note:** For District contribution to employee insurance during leave, see CRD(LOCAL).

---

**Availability** The District shall make state personal leave and local leave for the current year available for use at the beginning of the school year.

**Earning Local Leave** An employee shall not earn any local leave when he or she is in unpaid status. An employee using full or proportionate paid leave shall be considered to be in paid status.

**State and Local Leave Proration** If an employee separates from employment with the District before his or her last duty day of the school year or begins employment after the first duty day of the school year, leave shall be prorated based on the actual time employed.

If an employee uses more leave than he or she earned and remains employed with the District through his or her last duty day, the District shall deduct the cost of the excess leave days from the employee's pay in accordance with administrative regulations.

**Medical Certification** An employee shall submit medical certification of the need for leave if:

1. The employee is absent more than five consecutive workdays because of personal illness or illness in the immediate family;
2. The District requires medical certification due to a questionable pattern of absences or when deemed necessary by the supervisor or Superintendent; or
3. The employee requests FMLA leave for the employee's serious health condition; a serious health condition of the employee's spouse, parent, or child; or for military caregiver leave.

In each case, medical certification shall be made by a health-care provider as defined by the FMLA. [See DECA(LEGAL)]

**State Personal Leave** The Board requires employees to differentiate the manner in which state personal leave is used.

**Nondiscretionary Use** 1. Nondiscretionary use of leave shall be for the same reasons and in the same manner as state sick leave accumulated before May 30, 1995. [See DEC(LEGAL)]

Nondiscretionary use includes leave related to the birth or placement of a child and taken within the first year after the child's birth, adoption, or foster placement.

**Discretionary Use**

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

2. Discretionary use of leave is at the individual employee's discretion, subject to limitations set out below.

*Request for  
Leave*

In deciding whether to approve or deny a request for discretionary use of state personal leave, the supervisor shall not seek or consider the reasons for which an employee requests to use leave. The supervisor shall, however, consider the duration of the requested absence in conjunction with the effect of the employee's absence on the educational program and District operations, as well as the availability of substitutes.

Discretionary use of state personal leave shall not exceed three (3) consecutive workdays and a total of six (6) days in a school year, except in extenuating circumstances in accordance with administrative regulations.

**Local Leave**

Each employee shall earn paid leave days in accordance with administrative regulations.

Local leave shall accumulate without limit. Upon resignation, all unused and nonreimbursable sick leave shall be lost.

Local leave shall be used according to the terms and conditions of state personal leave.

**Catastrophic Sick  
Leave Bank**

The District shall establish a catastrophic sick leave bank that employees may join through contribution of local or state personal leave.

Leave contributed to the bank shall be solely for the use of participating employees. An employee who is a member of the bank may request leave from the bank if the employee experiences a catastrophic illness or injury and the employee has exhausted all paid leave.

The Superintendent or designee shall develop regulations for the operation of the catastrophic sick leave bank that address the following:

1. Membership in the catastrophic sick leave bank, including the number of days an employee must contribute to become a member;
2. Procedures to request leave from the catastrophic sick leave bank;
3. The maximum number of days per school year a member employee may receive from the catastrophic sick leave bank;

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

4. The committee or administrator authorized to consider requests for leave from the catastrophic sick leave bank and criteria for granting requests; and
5. Other procedures deemed necessary for the operation of the catastrophic sick leave bank.

Appeal	An employee may appeal a decision regarding the sick leave bank in accordance with DGBA(LOCAL).
<b>Family and Medical Leave</b>	FMLA leave shall run concurrently with applicable paid leave and compensatory time, as applicable. <hr/> <b>Note:</b> See DECA(LEGAL) for provisions addressing FMLA. <hr/>
Twelve-Month Period	For purposes of an employee's entitlement to FMLA leave, the 12-month period shall be measured forward from the date an individual employee's first FMLA leave begins.
Combined Leave for Spouses	When both spouses are employed by the District, the District shall limit FMLA leave for the birth, adoption, or placement of a child, or to care for a parent with a serious health condition, to a combined total of 12 weeks. The District shall limit military caregiver leave to a combined total of 26 weeks.
Intermittent or Reduced Schedule Leave	The District shall permit use of intermittent or reduced schedule FMLA leave for the care of a newborn child or for the adoption or placement of a child with the employee.
Certification of Leave	When an employee requests leave, the employee shall provide certification, in accordance with FMLA regulations, of the need for leave.
Fitness-for-Duty Certification	In accordance with administrative regulations, when an employee takes FMLA leave due to the employee's own serious health condition, the employee shall provide, before resuming work, a fitness-for-duty certification.
Leave at the End of Semester	When a teacher takes leave near the end of the semester, the District may require the teacher to continue leave until the end of the semester.
<b>Temporary Disability Leave</b>	Any full-time employee whose position requires educator certification by the State Board for Educator Certification or by the District shall be eligible for temporary disability leave. The maximum length of temporary disability leave shall be 180 calendar days. [See DBB(LOCAL) for temporary disability leave placement and DEC(LEGAL) for return to active duty.]

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

An employee's notification of need for extended absence due to the employee's own medical condition shall be forwarded to the Superintendent as a request for temporary disability leave.

The District shall require the employee to use temporary disability leave and paid leave, including any compensatory time, concurrently with FMLA leave, except that an employee receiving workers' compensation income benefits may choose to receive those benefits in lieu of using paid leave.

**Workers'  
Compensation**

---

**Note:** Workers' compensation is not a form of leave. The workers' compensation law does not require the continuation of the District's contribution to health insurance.

---

An absence due to a work-related injury or illness shall be designated as FMLA leave, temporary disability leave, and/or assault leave, as applicable.

Paid Leave Offset

The District shall permit the option for paid leave offset in conjunction with workers' compensation income benefits.

**Court Appearances**

Absences due to compliance with a valid subpoena or for jury duty shall be fully compensated by the District and shall not be deducted from the employee's pay or leave balance when the employee provides documentation of the subpoena or jury duty.

**Moonlighting or  
Other Work While on  
Leave**

Taking another job or working at another job during normal district work hours while on FMLA leave or any other paid or unpaid leave pursuant to District policy is prohibited and shall be grounds for disciplinary action, up to and including termination in accordance with applicable policy.

**Neutral Absence  
Control**

The District may allow for up to ten (10) days of unpaid leave as a grace period after an employee has exhausted all paid or official unpaid leave. If an employee does not return to work after exhausting all paid leave, official unpaid leave if available (FMLA or temporary disability leave) and the grace period, the District shall automatically pursue termination of the employee, regardless of the reason for the absence [see DF series]. The employee's eligibility for reasonable accommodations, as required by the Americans with Disabilities Act [see DAA(LEGAL)], shall be considered before termination. If terminated, the employee may apply for reemployment with the District.

Leave Administration

The Superintendent shall develop administrative regulations addressing employee leaves and absences to implement the provisions of this policy.

**Definitions**

The term "immediate family" is defined as:

Immediate Family

1. Spouse.
2. ~~Son/Child, defined as son~~ or daughter, including a biological, adopted, or foster child, a son- or daughter-in-law, a stepchild, a legal ward, or a child for whom the employee stands *in loco parentis*.
3. Parent, stepparent, parent-in-law, or other individual who stands *in loco parentis* to the employee.
4. Sibling, stepsibling, and sibling-in-law.
5. Grandparent and grandchild.
6. Any person residing in the employee's household at the time of illness or death.

For purposes of the Family and Medical Leave Act (FMLA), the definitions of spouse, parent, son or daughter, and next of kin are found in DECA(LEGAL).

Family Emergency

The term "family emergency" shall be limited to disasters and life-threatening situations involving the employee or a member of the employee's immediate family.

Leave Day

A "leave day" for purposes of earning, ~~using~~, or recording of leave shall mean the number of hours per day equivalent to the employee's usual assignment, whether full-time or part-time.

School Year

A "school year" for purposes of earning, using, or recording leave (except the sick leave bank) shall mean the term of the employee's annual employment as set by the District for the employee's usual assignment, whether full-time or part-time.

For purposes of the sick leave bank, the term "school year" shall mean September 1 through August 31.

Catastrophic Illness or Injury

A catastrophic illness or injury is a severe condition or combination of conditions affecting the mental or physical health of the employee that requires the services of a licensed practitioner for a prolonged period of time and that forces the employee to exhaust all leave time earned by that employee and to lose compensation from the District. Such conditions typically require prolonged hospitalization or recovery or are expected to result in disability or death. Conditions related to pregnancy or childbirth shall be considered catastrophic if they meet the requirements of this paragraph.

**Availability**

---

Note: For District contribution to employee insurance during leave, see CRD(LOCAL).

---

The District shall make state personal leave and local leave for the current year available for use at the beginning of the school year.

**Earning Local Leave**

An employee shall not earn any local leave when he or she is in unpaid status. An employee using full or proportionate paid leave shall be considered to be in paid status.

State and Local Leave Proration

If an employee separates from employment with the District before his or her last duty day of the school year or begins employment after the first duty day of the school year, ~~state personal~~ leave shall be prorated based on the actual time employed.

If an employee uses more leave than he or she earned and remains employed with the District through his or her last duty day, the District shall deduct the cost of the excess leave days from the employee's pay in accordance with administrative regulations.

~~When an employee has used two or fewer local leave days more than he or she has earned, the District shall deduct the cost of unearned local leave days from the employee's paycheck for the month in which the employee used more leave than he or she earned. When an employee has used three or more local leave days more than he or she has earned, the District shall deduct the cost of unearned local leave over the balance of the employee's remaining paychecks for the employee's work year.~~

Commented [KA1]: Moved to Regulation

**Deductions**

~~Leave Without Pay~~

The District shall not approve paid leave for more leave days than have been accumulated in prior years plus leave currently available. Any unapproved absences or absences beyond accumulated and available paid leave shall result in deductions from the employee's pay.

Leave Proration

~~Employed for Less Than Full Year~~

If an employee separates from employment with the District before his or her last duty day of the year, or begins employment after the first duty day, ~~state personal leave and local leave shall be prorated based on the actual time employed.~~

If an employee separates from employment before the last duty day of the school year, the employee's final paycheck shall be reduced for:

1. ~~State personal leave the employee used beyond his or her pro rata entitlement for the school year; and~~
2. ~~Local leave the employee used but had not earned as of the date of separation.~~

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

<del>Employed for Full Year</del>	<del>If an employee uses more local leave than he or she earned and remains employed with the District through his or her last duty day, the District shall deduct the cost of the excess leave days from the employee's pay in accordance with administrative regulations.</del>
<b>Recording</b>	<del>Leave shall be recorded by the District as follows: 1. Leave shall be recorded in half-day increments for all employees. 2. If the employee is taking intermittent FMLA leave, leave shall be recorded in one-hour increments.</del>
<b>Order of Use</b>	<del>Earned compensatory time shall be used before any available paid state and local leave. [See DEAB] Unless an employee requests a different order in writing and prior to use, available paid state and local leave shall be used in the following order, as applicable: 1. Local leave. 2. State sick leave accumulated before the 1995-96 school year. 3. State personal leave.</del>
<b>Concurrent Use of Leave</b>	<del>When an absent employee is eligible for FMLA leave, the District shall designate the absence as FMLA leave. The District shall require the employee to use temporary disability leave and paid leave, including compensatory time, concurrently with FMLA leave, except that an employee receiving workers' compensation income benefits may choose to receive those benefits in lieu of using paid leave. An employee receiving workers' compensation income benefits may be eligible for paid or unpaid leave. An absence due to a work-related injury or illness shall be designated as FMLA leave, temporary disability leave, and/or assault leave, as applicable.</del>
<b>Medical Certification</b>	<del>An employee shall submit medical certification of the need for leave if: 1. The employee is absent more than five consecutive workdays because of personal illness or illness in the immediate family; 2. The District requires medical certification due to a questionable pattern of absences or when deemed necessary by the supervisor or Superintendent; <u>or</u></del>

Commented [KA2]: Consolidated and rewrote above

Commented [KA3]: Moved to Regulation

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

	<p><del>3.</del> The employee requests FMLA leave for the employee's serious health condition; <u>a serious health condition</u> or that of the employee's spouse, parent, or child; or</p> <p><del>4.3.</del> The employee requests FMLA leave for military caregiver leave purposes.</p> <p>In each case, medical certification shall be made by a health-care provider as defined by the FMLA. [See DECA(LEGAL)]</p>
	<p><del>Note:</del> For District contribution to employee insurance during leave, see CRD(LOCAL).</p>
<p><b>State Personal Leave</b></p>	<p>The Board requires employees to differentiate the manner in which state personal leave is used.</p>
<p><del>Nondiscretionary/Non-Discretionary</del> Use</p>	<p><del>4.4.</del> Nondiscretionary/Non-discretionary use of leave shall be for the same reasons and in the same manner as state sick leave accumulated before May 30, 1995. [See DEC(LEGAL)]</p>
<p>Discretionary Use</p>	<p><del>Nondiscretionary/Non-discretionary</del> use includes leave related to the birth or placement of a child and taken within the first year after the child's birth, adoption, or foster placement.</p>
<p>Limitations</p>	<p><del>2.5.</del> Discretionary use of leave is at the individual employee's discretion, subject to limitations set out below.</p>
<p><i>Request for Leave</i></p>	<p><del>In deciding whether to approve or deny a</del> The employee shall submit a written request for discretionary use of state personal leave, to the immediate supervisor or designee in advance in accordance with administrative regulations. In deciding whether to approve or deny state personal leave, the supervisor or designee shall not seek or consider the reasons for which an employee requests to use leave. The supervisor or designee shall, however, consider the duration of the requested absence in conjunction with the effect of the employee's absence on the educational program and District operations, as well as the availability of substitutes.</p>
<p><b>Local Leave</b></p>	<p><del>Discretionary use of state personal leave shall not exceed three (3) consecutive workdays and a total of six (6) days in a school year, except in extenuating circumstances in accordance with administrative regulations.</del></p> <p><del>Each employee</del>All employees shall earn paid local leave days per school year in accordance with administrative regulations, the following schedule:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b><u>Local Leave Days Earned</u></b></p>

Commented [KA4]: Moved chart to the Regulation

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

Days Employed During the Year	<u>Professional and all full-time employees</u> PROFESSIONAL AND ALL-FULL-TIME EMPLOYEES (37.5-40 hrs/week)	<u>Nonprofessional part-time employees</u> NONPROFESSIONAL PART-TIME EMPLOYEES (20-37.4 hrs/week)
	Local leave days earned	Local leave days earned
00-12	0.0	0.0
13-25	0.0	0.0
26-38	0.0	0.0
39-51	0.0	0.0
52-64	0.0	0.0
65-77	0.5	0.0
78-90	1.0	0.0
91-103	1.5	0.0
104-116	2.0	0.0
117-129	2.5	0.0
130-142	3.0	0.0
143-155	3.5	0.0
156-168	4.0	0.0
169-179	4.5	0.0
180-194	5.0	0.0
195-206	5.5	0.0
207-217	6.0	0.5
218-223	6.5	1.0
224+	7.0	1.5

Local leave shall accumulate without limit. Upon resignation, all unused and nonreimbursable sick leave shall be lost.

~~Local leave shall be used according to the terms and conditions of state personal leave. Local leave shall be used according to the terms and conditions of state sick leave accumulated before the 1995-96 school year [see DEC(LEGAL)] or as extenuating circumstance leave as defined in DEC(REGULATION).~~

**Catastrophic Sick  
Leave Bank**

An employee may also use local leave for absences related to the birth or placement of a child when leave is taken within the first year after the child's birth, adoption, or foster placement.

The District shall establish a catastrophic sick leave bank that employees may join through contribution of local or state personal leave.

Leave contributed to the bank shall be solely for the use of participating employees. An employee who is a member of the bank may request leave from the bank if the employee experiences a catastrophic illness or injury and the employee has exhausted all paid leave.

The Superintendent or designee shall develop regulations for the operation of the catastrophic sick leave bank that address the following:

1. Membership in the catastrophic sick leave bank, including the number of days an employee must contribute to become a member;
2. Procedures to request leave from the catastrophic sick leave bank;
3. The maximum number of days per school year a member employee may receive from the catastrophic sick leave bank;
4. The committee or administrator authorized to consider requests for leave from the catastrophic sick leave bank and criteria for granting requests; and
5. Other procedures deemed necessary for the operation of the catastrophic sick leave bank.

Appeal

An employee may appeal a decision regarding the sick leave bank in accordance with DGBA(LOCAL).

**Family and Medical  
Leave**

FMLA leave shall run concurrently with applicable paid leave and compensatory time, as applicable.

---

**Note:** See DECA(LEGAL) for provisions addressing FMLA.

---

Twelve-Month  
Period

For purposes of an employee's entitlement to FMLA leave, the 12-month period shall be measured forward from the date an individual employee's first FMLA leave begins.

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

Combined Leave for Spouses	<p><del>When</del> both spouses are employed by the District, the District shall limit FMLA leave for the birth, adoption, or placement of a child, or to care for a parent with a serious health condition, to a combined total of 12 weeks. The District shall limit military caregiver leave to a combined total of 26 weeks. <del>[See DECA(LEGAL)]</del></p>
Intermittent or Reduced Schedule Leave	<p>The District shall permit use of intermittent or reduced schedule FMLA leave for the care of a newborn child or for the adoption or placement of a child with the employee. <del>[See DECA(LEGAL) for use of intermittent or reduced schedule leave due to a medical necessity]</del></p>
Certification of Leave	<p><del>When</del> an employee requests leave, the employee shall provide certification, <del>in accordance with</del> <del>as required by</del> FMLA regulations, of the need for leave. <del>[See DECA(LEGAL)]</del></p>
Fitness-for-Duty Certification	<p><del>In accordance with administrative regulations,</del> <del>when</del> an employee takes FMLA leave due to the employee's own serious health condition, the employee shall provide, before resuming work, a fitness-for-duty certification. <del>If the District will require certification of the employee's ability to perform essential job functions, the District shall provide a list of essential job functions to the employee with the FMLA designation notice.</del></p>
<del>Leave at the End of Semester Leave</del>	<p><del>When</del> a teacher takes leave near the end of the semester, the District may require the teacher to continue leave until the end of the semester. <del>[See DECA(LEGAL), Leave at the End of a Semester]</del></p>
<del>Failure to Return</del>	<p><del>If, at the expiration of FMLA leave, the employee is able to return to work but chooses not to do so, the District may require reimbursement of premiums paid by the District during the leave. [See DECA(LEGAL), Recovery of Benefit Cost]</del></p>
Temporary Disability Leave	<p>Any full-time employee whose position requires educator certification by the State Board for Educator Certification or by the District shall be eligible for temporary disability leave. The maximum length of temporary disability leave shall be 180 calendar days. [See DBB(LOCAL) for temporary disability leave placement and DEC(LEGAL) for return to active duty.]</p> <p>An employee's notification of need for extended absence due to the employee's own medical condition shall be forwarded to the Superintendent <del>or designee</del> as a request for temporary disability leave.</p> <p><u>The District shall require the employee to use temporary disability leave and paid leave, including any compensatory time, concurrently with FMLA leave, except that an employee receiving workers'</u></p>

Commented [KA5]: Moved to the Regulation

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

<b>Workers' Compensation</b>	<p><u>compensation income benefits may choose to receive those benefits in lieu of using paid leave.</u></p> <hr/> <p><b>Note:</b> Workers' compensation is not a form of leave. The workers' compensation law does not require the continuation of the District's contribution to health insurance. <del>{See CRD(LOCAL) regarding payment of insurance contribution during employee absences.}</del></p> <hr/>
<b><u>Paid Leave Offset</u></b>	<p>An absence due to a work-related injury or illness shall be designated as FMLA leave, temporary disability leave, and/or assault leave, as applicable.</p> <p><del>The District shall permit the option for paid leave offset in conjunction with workers' compensation income benefits.</del></p> <p><del>An employee eligible for workers' compensation wage benefits, and not on assault leave, shall indicate in writing whether he or she chooses to:</del></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li><del>1. Receive workers' compensation wage benefits; or</del></li><li><del>2. Use available paid leave. Workers' compensation wage benefits shall begin when:</del><ol style="list-style-type: none"><li><del>a. Paid leave is exhausted;</del></li><li><del>b. The employee elects to discontinue use of paid leave; or</del></li><li><del>c. Leave payments are less than the employee's pre-injury average weekly wage.</del></li></ol></li></ol>
<b><u>No Paid Leave Offset</u></b>	<p><del>The District shall not permit the option for paid leave offset in conjunction with workers' compensation income benefits. [See CRE]</del></p>
<b>Court Appearances</b>	<p>Absences due to compliance with a valid subpoena or for jury duty shall be fully compensated by the District and shall not be deducted from the employee's pay or leave balance when the employee provides documentation of the subpoena or jury duty.</p>
<b><u>Moonlighting or Other Work While on Leave</u></b>	<p><del>Absences for court appearances related to an employee's personal business shall be deducted from the employee's personal leave or shall be taken by the employee as leave without pay.</del></p> <p><del>Taking another job or working at another job during normal district work hours while on FMLA leave or any other paid or unpaid leave pursuant to District policy is prohibited and shall be grounds for disciplinary action, up to and including termination in accordance with applicable policy.</del></p>

Commented [KA6]: Moved to the Regulation

Lake Travis ISD  
227913

COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS  
LEAVES AND ABSENCES

DEC  
(LOCAL)

**Neutral Absence  
Control**

The District may allow for up to ten (10) days of unpaid leave as a grace period after an employee has exhausted all paid or official unpaid leave. If an employee does not return to work after exhausting all ~~available paid leave, official unpaid leave if available (FMLA or temporary disability leave) and the grace period, paid and unpaid leave, the District shall provide the employee written notice that he or she no longer has leave available for use.~~ The District shall automatically pursue termination of ~~an the employee who has exhausted all available leave,~~ regardless of the reason for the absence [see DF series]. The employee's eligibility for reasonable accommodations, as required by the Americans with Disabilities Act [see DAA(LEGAL)], shall be considered before termination. If terminated, the employee may apply for reemployment with the District.

DATE ISSUED: ~~5/13/2021~~ 11/15/2016  
UPDATE 117 LDU 2016.03  
DEC(LOCAL)-X

ADOPTED:

9 of 9



## **AGENDA ITEM ACTION SHEET**

### **AGENDA ITEM**

July 21, 2021 Board Meeting Minutes

### **RECOMMENDED ACTION**

For approval with consent agenda.

### **RATIONALE**

Minutes for each Board meeting shall be approved and on file in the Superintendent's office.

### **BUDGET PROVISIONS**

None

### **RESOURCE PERSONNEL**

Suzanne Kelbaugh, Administrative Assistant to Superintendent

### **ATTACHMENTS**

July 21, 2021 Board Meeting Minutes

### **MEETING DATE**

August 11, 2021

**Minutes of Board Meeting**  
**The Board of Trustees**  
**Lake Travis Independent School District**

A meeting of the Board of Trustees of Lake Travis Independent School District was held on July 21, 2021, beginning at 6:00 p.m. in the Educational Development Center, Live Oak Room, 607 RR 620 North, Austin, Texas 78734.

**Call to Order**

Vice President Bob Dorsett called the meeting to order at 6:02 pm.

**Quorum Determination**

Trustees in attendance were Kim Flasch, Lauren White, Bob Dorsett, Guy Clayton, William Beard, Phillip Davis and Jessica Putonti.

**Pledge of Allegiance and Moment of Silence**

Director of Security/Police Chief, Andy Michael, led the Pledge of Allegiance. A moment of silence was then observed.

**Recognition**

- Marco Alvarado introduced, Lori Wristers, Coordinator C&I, who presented the information in reference to LTHS receiving the honor of the Project Lead the Way (PLTW) High School Distinguished School 2020-2021

**Public Comments/Citizen Participation**

1. Jennifer Fleck – CRT
2. Elisena Tatalo – Vaccine
3. Israel Zuela
4. Vanessa Sumner - masks
5. Sophia Sumner – Masks
6. Corina Semph – CRT
7. Carl Jones
8. Sidney Saxon – Safety
9. Tina Nemeroff – Masks/vaccine
10. Gretchen Nearbung – Curriculum
11. Nancy Clayton – Policies
12. Susan Harbin – CRT
13. Tessa Grant – Parent Involvement back to school
14. William Kilgore – History and Racism
15. Kara Bell – Transparency
16. Jim Moore – Vaccine
17. Raquel Rodriguez – masks
18. Annie Vilven -CRT
19. Shannon Jason Black – COVID & CRT/DEI

**Public Hearing**

- **Elementary and Secondary School Emergency Relief (ESSER III) Plan for LTISD**

Pam Sanchez and Stefani Allen presented the information in reference to Lake Travis ISD qualifying for American Rescue Plan Elementary and Secondary School Emergency (ESSER III) federal funding in the amount of \$3,026,404 to be used over the next three years to help school districts safely reopen and to address the impact of the coronavirus pandemic on students. The administration will present an overview of the ESSER III grant process, results from stakeholder input and recommended use of fund plan. Following the presentation, the Board will accept public input to ensure the community has an opportunity to provide additional feedback on the suggested uses of funds.

### **Presentation / Discussion Items**

- **June 2021 Monthly Financial Reports - Statement of Revenue and Expenditures, Balance Sheet, Tax Statement and 2018 Capital Project Report**

Ms. Sanchez presented the monthly financial report which included a review of the following documents:

1. Statement of Revenue and Expenditures - June 2021
2. Balance Sheet – June 2021
3. Tax Statement - June 2021
4. 2018 Capital Project Report

This item was for discussion only; no action was requested.

- **2018 Bond Program Delivery Methods – Summer 2022 Bond Projects**

Ms. Sanchez presented per Board Policy CV (Local), the project delivery method to be used for each construction contract valued at or above \$100,000 shall be the competitive sealed proposal, as determined and approved by the Board as the best value. If another method is deemed more appropriate for a particular construction project, the Superintendent or designee shall submit a recommendation for the Board to consider, determine, and approve a different project delivery method that provides the best value to the District.

Each delivery method has been evaluated and partnered with upcoming projects to provide best value to the district. The Business Office, Purchasing Department, Facilities Department and Legal Department have been working to ensure that all bond projects have been competitively procured and meet all legal and local purchasing policies and guidelines. Attached is a list of upcoming projects, including recommended delivery method.

The administration is currently working to procure the services of the general contractors for all 2021-2022 bond projects. It is the intent of administration to bring a list of these contractors to the Board for consideration at the September-October 2021 board meetings.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **House Bill 5 (HB 5), 83<sup>rd</sup> Legislative Session Requirement Concerning “Set Aside” State Compensatory Funding**

Ms. Sanchez stated in order to meet the requirements of HB 5, administration is requesting specific Board approval of \$364,270, which has been included in the existing budget requests, however, needs to be segregated and identified by Board action. These funds will be used to support the following student accelerated instructional practices and interventions: Summer School, accelerated learning, end of course (EOC) review sessions and educational resources to support accelerated instruction.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **Proposed Operating Fund, Debt Service Fund and Food Service Budgets for 2021 – 2022**

Ms. Sanchez presented Section 44.002 through 44.006 of the Texas Education Code establishes the legal basis for the budget development in school districts. These codes require that the district prepare a budget by the date set by the State Board of Education, currently August 21<sup>th</sup> for districts with an August 31<sup>st</sup> fiscal year-end. The Budget Document and the Annual Financial and Compliance Report are the primary vehicles used to present the financial plan and the results of operations of the District. The primary purposes of this budget document is to provide timely and useful information concerning the past, current and projected financial status of the District, in order to facilitate financial decisions that support the educational goals of the District

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **Adoption of 2021 – 2022 Tax Rate and November Approved Election Proposal**

Ms. Sanchez presented the Resolution Regarding the 2021-2022 Tax Rate and Golden Pennies Election is intended to confirm the Board of Trustees' intention to lower the Debt Service tax rate by \$0.02 so that the voters of Lake Travis ISD will see the full tax rate compression provided for under House Bill 3.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **Board Notification under Board Policy CH (Local) – NWEA MAP Growth K-12 Testing System**

Pam Sanchez presented that Lake Travis ISD has the following budgeted purchase that requires Board notification:

NWEA MAP Growth K-12 Testing System-\$108,902.50

For Discussion Only. No Action Requested.

- **Spring 2021 STAAR Results**

Ms. Kathy Burbank, Director of Accountability and Assessment presented a review of the Spring 2021 STAAR assessment results.

For Discussion Only. No Action Requested.

- **Rescind Resolution No. 081920-03 Regarding the Continuation of Delegation of Authority to Superintendent in Response to COVID-19**

Ms. Amber, General Counsel presented that in response to the COVID-19 pandemic and the national and state emergency disaster proclamations, on March 23, 2020, the Board approved Resolution No. 03252020-01 delegating authority to the Superintendent, which allowed for more flexibility and quicker decision-making for needs of the District due to COVID-19. On August 19, 2020, the Board rescinded Resolution No. 03252020-01 and replaced it with Resolution No. 081920-03 continuing its delegation of authority to the Superintendent. While COVID-19 is still present and continues to pose challenges to the District, the need for the additional flexibility or ability to make quicker decisions has subsided, and the administration believes that, at this time, the District can return to standard procedures and process. Therefore, it recommends that the Board rescind Resolution No. 081920-03.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **2021 – 2022 Lake Travis ISD Student Code of Conduct**

Ms. King presented the current proposed revisions to the LTISD 2021-22 Student Code of Conduct, which are minimal and include an update the duties of the district’s security personnel as a result of the implementation of LTISD’s Police Department and changes prompted by the 87th Legislature.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **TASB Policy Update 117: CH (LOCAL): PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION CV(LOCAL): FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION**

Ms. King, General Counsel presented TASB update 117 which includes two recommended (LOCAL) policy revisions. Both policies are being recommended to be revised to provide the district additional flexibility in emergency circumstances. The change would authorize the Superintendent to contract for the replacement, construction, or repair of equipment or facilities in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting the district if emergency replacement, construction, or repair is necessary for the health and safety of district students and staff. The superintendent would be required to report to the board any contracts made under the delegated authority at the next regular meeting. The recommended text also clarifies that the delegation does not permit the superintendent to act under Education Code 44.031(h) to make purchases without following normal competitive purchasing requirements; the board must take action to waive any Chapter 44 provisions in accordance with law.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **Update to Lake Travis ISD DEC (LOCAL) Policy Regarding Employee Leaves and Absences**

Evalene Murphy, Assistant Superintendent for Employee and Community Relations, presented that the administration is recommending significant changes to the current DEC (LOCAL) policy that addresses employee leaves and absences. These changes include the following:

- The implementation of a catastrophic sick leave bank that will allow participating employees the ability to request additional leave if the employee experiences a catastrophic illness or injury and has exhausted all other paid leave;
- Allowing more flexibility in the use of local leave (no longer just “sick” leave);
- Updating policy to reflect practice related to employees on workers’ compensation leave being allowed to offset their income with paid leave;
- Adding a provision prohibiting an employee from working another job during work hours if the employee is on leave;
- Updating the neutral absence policy to allow for a grace period;
- Removing the administrative detail from the local policy and relocating it to an administrative regulation; and
- Reorganizing, consolidating language, and other minor non-substantive

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

### **Consideration Items**

- **2021 – 2022 Off Campus Physical Education Providers**

Director of Health and SEL, Jennifer Lyon, asked for the board to approve the addition of Austin FC and Powerhouse Cheer and Fitness to be included as OCPE Providers for the 2021-2022 school year.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Lauren White and seconded by Trustee Jessica Putonti to approve the addition of Austin FC and Powerhouse Cheer and Fitness be included as OCPE Providers for the 2021-2022 school year.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Compensations Plans and Stipends and Supplemental Pay Catalogs for 2021-2022**  
Ms. Murphy requested the approval of the 2021-2022 Compensations Plans and Stipends and Supplemental Pay Catalogs for 2021-2022.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded Phillip Davis by Trustee to approve the 2021-2022 Compensation Plans and Stipends and Supplemental Pay Catalogs as Presented.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Agreement for the Purchase of Attendance Credits (Option 3 Agreement) for 2021-2022**  
Ms. Sanchez presented the 2020-2021 agreement for the Purchase of Attendance Credits (Option 3 Agreement).

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded by Trustee Jessica Putonti to approve the move for the 2021-2022 school year, delegate contractual authority to obligate the school district under Texas Education Code (TEC), Section 11.1511(c)(4) to the superintendent, solely for the purpose of obligating the district under TEC, Section 48.257 and TEC, Chapter 49, Subchapters A and D, and the rules adopted by the commissioner of education as authorized under TEC, 49.006. This includes approval of the Agreement for the Purchase of Attendance Credits or the Agreement for the Purchase of Attendance Credits (Netting Chapter 48 Funding).

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Consideration and Action on a Resolution providing for the Defeasance and Calling for Redemption Certain Currently Outstanding Lake Travis Independent School District Obligations and Other Matters in Connection Therewith**  
Ms. Sanchez presented a resolution in regards to approving Redemption Resolution #07212021-01 for 2021-2022

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded by Trustee William Beard to approve the Redemption Resolution #07212021-01 for 2021-2022

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Food and Nutrition Meal Prices for 2021-2022**  
Mr. Bailey presented to approve the student meal prices increase for 2021-2022.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Lauren White and seconded by Trustee Phillip Davis to approve the student meal prices increase for 2021-2022 as presented.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Request for Proposal (RFP) - Fleet Multi-Function Device (Copiers) Maintenance Service**  
Ms. Sanchez, Assistant Superintendent of Business Services, presented a recommendation to award the fleet multi-function device (Copiers) maintenance service to Xerox Business Solutions Southwest.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Phillip Davis and seconded by Trustee William Beard to approve the award of the fleet multi-function device (Copiers) maintenance service to Xerox Business Solutions Southwest.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Request for Proposal (RFP) - Bulk Fuel for Buses and Fleet Vehicles**  
Mr. Brad Bailey recommended the board of trustees to approve the award of the bulk fuel for buses and fleet vehicles to RKA Petroleum as the primary and Pinnacle Petroleum as the secondary vendor.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee William Beard and seconded by Trustee Jessica Putonti to approve the award of the bulk fuel for buses and fleet vehicles to RKA Petroleum as the primary and Pinnacle Petroleum as the secondary vendor.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Delegate and Alternate for the 2021 Texas Association of School Board (TASB) Delegate Assembly**  
Mr. Norton requested names from the board for the Delegate and Alternate for the 2021 Texas Association of School Board (TASB) Delegate Assembly to be held on September 25, 2021 at the TASB/TASA convention in Dallas, TX.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded by Trustee Lauren White to appoint Trustee Lauren White as the Delegate and Trustee Jessica Putonti as the Alternate for the 2021 TASB Delegate Assembly.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

### **Consent Agenda**

- Minutes of June 16, 2021 Board Meeting

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded by Trustee Phillip Davis to approve the consent agenda items as presented.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

### **Upcoming Meetings and Events**

Board Vice President, Bob Dorsett announced the following upcoming meetings and events:

- August 11, 2021 – 6:00 p.m. – Monthly Board Meeting, EDC
- September 15, 2021 – 6:00 p.m. – Monthly Board Meeting

**Closed Session**

Trustees adjourned into Closed Session at 8:39 p.m., as permitted by Texas Government Code 551.001 et seq.

**Section 551.074 - Personnel Matters**

1. The Board will discuss the appointment, employment, evaluation, reassignment, duties, discipline, or dismissal of public employees or officials. (This may involve consultation with attorney as permitted under Section 551.071)

**Section 551.072 - Deliberation Regarding Real Property**

1. The Board will discuss the purchase, exchange, lease or value of real property. (This may involve consultation with attorney as permitted under section 551.071.)

**Section 551.0821 - School Board: Personally Identifiable Information About a Public School Student**

1. The Board will discuss personally identifiable information about a public school student.

**Section 551.076 - Deliberation Regarding Security Devices or Security Audits; Closed Meeting.** This chapter does not require a governmental body to conduct an open meeting to deliberate:

1. The deployment, or specific occasions for implementation of security personnel or devices.

**Open Session**

Trustees returned from Closed Session at 10:14 p.m. There was no action after closed session.

**Adjournment**

There being no further action, the July 21, 2021 Board of Trustees' meeting adjourned at 10:14 p.m.

---

**John Aouelle, Vice President**

---

**Lauren White, Secretary**

**Minutes of Board Meeting  
The Board of Trustees  
Lake Travis Independent School District**

A meeting of the Board of Trustees of Lake Travis Independent School District was held on July 21, 2021, beginning at 6:00 p.m. in the Educational Development Center, Live Oak Room, 607 RR 620 North, Austin, Texas 78734.

**Call to Order**

Vice President Bob Dorsett called the meeting to order at 6:02 pm.

**Quorum Determination**

Trustees in attendance were Kim Flasch, Lauren White, Bob Dorsett, Guy Clayton, William Beard, Phillip Davis and Jessica Putonti.

**Pledge of Allegiance and Moment of Silence**

Director of Security/Police Chief, Andy Michael, led the Pledge of Allegiance. A moment of silence was then observed.

**Recognition**

- Marco Alvarado introduced, Lori Wristers, Coordinator C&I, who presented the information in reference to LTHS receiving the honor of the Project Lead the Way (PLTW) High School Distinguished School 2020-2021

**Public Comments/Citizen Participation**

1. Jennifer Fleck – CRT
2. Elisena Tatalo – Vaccine
3. Israel Zuela
4. Vanessa Sumner - masks
5. Sophia Sumner – Masks
6. Corina Semph – CRT
7. Carl Jones
8. Sidney Saxon – Safety
9. Tina Nemeroff – Masks/vaccine
10. Gretchen Nearbung – Curriculum
11. Nancy Clayton – Policies
12. Susan Harbin – CRT
13. Tessa Grant – Parent Involvement back to school
14. William Kilgore – History and Racism
15. Kara Bell – Transparency
16. Jim Moore – Vaccine
17. Raquel Rodriguez – masks
18. Annie Vilven -CRT
19. Shannon Jason Black – COVID & CRT/DEI

**Public Hearing**

- **Elementary and Secondary School Emergency Relief (ESSER III) Plan for LTISD**

Pam Sanchez and Stefani Allen presented the information in reference to Lake Travis ISD qualifying for American Rescue Plan Elementary and Secondary School Emergency (ESSER III) federal funding in the amount of \$3,026,404 to be used over the next three years to help school districts safely reopen and to address the impact of the coronavirus pandemic on students. The administration will present an overview of the ESSER III grant process, results from stakeholder input and recommended use of fund plan. Following the presentation, the Board will accept public input to ensure the community has an opportunity to provide additional feedback on the suggested uses of funds.

### **Presentation / Discussion Items**

- **June 2021 Monthly Financial Reports - Statement of Revenue and Expenditures, Balance Sheet, Tax Statement and 2018 Capital Project Report**

Ms. Sanchez presented the monthly financial report which included a review of the following documents:

1. Statement of Revenue and Expenditures - June 2021
2. Balance Sheet – June 2021
3. Tax Statement - June 2021
4. 2018 Capital Project Report

This item was for discussion only; no action was requested.

- **2018 Bond Program Delivery Methods – Summer 2022 Bond Projects**

Ms. Sanchez presented per Board Policy CV (Local), the project delivery method to be used for each construction contract valued at or above \$100,000 shall be the competitive sealed proposal, as determined and approved by the Board as the best value. If another method is deemed more appropriate for a particular construction project, the Superintendent or designee shall submit a recommendation for the Board to consider, determine, and approve a different project delivery method that provides the best value to the District.

Each delivery method has been evaluated and partnered with upcoming projects to provide best value to the district. The Business Office, Purchasing Department, Facilities Department and Legal Department have been working to ensure that all bond projects have been competitively procured and meet all legal and local purchasing policies and guidelines. Attached is a list of upcoming projects, including recommended delivery method.

The administration is currently working to procure the services of the general contractors for all 2021-2022 bond projects. It is the intent of administration to bring a list of these contractors to the Board for consideration at the September-October 2021 board meetings.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **House Bill 5 (HB 5), 83<sup>rd</sup> Legislative Session Requirement Concerning “Set Aside” State Compensatory Funding**

Ms. Sanchez stated in order to meet the requirements of HB 5, administration is requesting specific Board approval of \$364,270, which has been included in the existing budget requests, however, needs to be segregated and identified by Board action. These funds will be used to support the following student accelerated instructional practices and interventions: Summer School, accelerated learning, end of course (EOC) review sessions and educational resources to support accelerated instruction.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **Proposed Operating Fund, Debt Service Fund and Food Service Budgets for 2021 – 2022**

Ms. Sanchez presented Section 44.002 through 44.006 of the Texas Education Code establishes the legal basis for the budget development in school districts. These codes require that the district prepare a budget by the date set by the State Board of Education, currently August 21<sup>th</sup> for districts with an August 31<sup>st</sup> fiscal year-end. The Budget Document and the Annual Financial and Compliance Report are the primary vehicles used to present the financial plan and the results of operations of the District. The primary purposes of this budget document is to provide timely and useful information concerning the past, current and projected financial status of the District, in order to facilitate financial decisions that support the educational goals of the District

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **Adoption of 2021 – 2022 Tax Rate and November Approved Election Proposal**

Ms. Sanchez presented the Resolution Regarding the 2021-2022 Tax Rate and Golden Pennies Election is intended to confirm the Board of Trustees' intention to lower the Debt Service tax rate by \$0.02 so that the voters of Lake Travis ISD will see the full tax rate compression provided for under House Bill 3.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **Board Notification under Board Policy CH (Local) – NWEA MAP Growth K-12 Testing System**

Pam Sanchez presented that Lake Travis ISD has the following budgeted purchase that requires Board notification:

NWEA MAP Growth K-12 Testing System-\$108,902.50

For Discussion Only. No Action Requested.

- **Spring 2021 STAAR Results**

Ms. Kathy Burbank, Director of Accountability and Assessment presented a review of the Spring 2021 STAAR assessment results.

For Discussion Only. No Action Requested.

- **Rescind Resolution No. 081920-03 Regarding the Continuation of Delegation of Authority to Superintendent in Response to COVID-19**

Ms. Amber, General Counsel presented that in response to the COVID-19 pandemic and the national and state emergency disaster proclamations, on March 23, 2020, the Board approved Resolution No. 03252020-01 delegating authority to the Superintendent, which allowed for more flexibility and quicker decision-making for needs of the District due to COVID-19. On August 19, 2020, the Board rescinded Resolution No. 03252020-01 and replaced it with Resolution No. 081920-03 continuing its delegation of authority to the Superintendent. While COVID-19 is still present and continues to pose challenges to the District, the need for the additional flexibility or ability to make quicker decisions has subsided, and the administration believes that, at this time, the District can return to standard procedures and process. Therefore, it recommends that the Board rescind Resolution No. 081920-03.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **2021 – 2022 Lake Travis ISD Student Code of Conduct**

Ms. King presented the current proposed revisions to the LTISD 2021-22 Student Code of Conduct, which are minimal and include an update the duties of the district’s security personnel as a result of the implementation of LTISD’s Police Department and changes prompted by the 87th Legislature.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **TASB Policy Update 117: CH (LOCAL): PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION CV(LOCAL): FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION**

Ms. King, General Counsel presented TASB update 117 which includes two recommended (LOCAL) policy revisions. Both policies are being recommended to be revised to provide the district additional flexibility in emergency circumstances. The change would authorize the Superintendent to contract for the replacement, construction, or repair of equipment or facilities in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting the district if emergency replacement, construction, or repair is necessary for the health and safety of district students and staff. The superintendent would be required to report to the board any contracts made under the delegated authority at the next regular meeting. The recommended text also clarifies that the delegation does not permit the superintendent to act under Education Code 44.031(h) to make purchases without following normal competitive purchasing requirements; the board must take action to waive any Chapter 44 provisions in accordance with law.

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

- **Update to Lake Travis ISD DEC (LOCAL) Policy Regarding Employee Leaves and Absences**

Evalene Murphy, Assistant Superintendent for Employee and Community Relations, presented that the administration is recommending significant changes to the current DEC (LOCAL) policy that addresses employee leaves and absences. These changes include the following:

- The implementation of a catastrophic sick leave bank that will allow participating employees the ability to request additional leave if the employee experiences a catastrophic illness or injury and has exhausted all other paid leave;
- Allowing more flexibility in the use of local leave (no longer just “sick” leave);
- Updating policy to reflect practice related to employees on workers’ compensation leave being allowed to offset their income with paid leave;
- Adding a provision prohibiting an employee from working another job during work hours if the employee is on leave;
- Updating the neutral absence policy to allow for a grace period;
- Removing the administrative detail from the local policy and relocating it to an administrative regulation; and
- Reorganizing, consolidating language, and other minor non-substantive

This item was for discussion only; action will be requested at the August 11, 2021 Board Meeting.

### **Consideration Items**

- **2021 – 2022 Off Campus Physical Education Providers**

Director of Health and SEL, Jennifer Lyon, asked for the board to approve the addition of Austin FC and Powerhouse Cheer and Fitness to be included as OCPE Providers for the 2021-2022 school year.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Lauren White and seconded by Trustee Jessica Putonti to approve the addition of Austin FC and Powerhouse Cheer and Fitness be included as OCPE Providers for the 2021-2022 school year.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Compensations Plans and Stipends and Supplemental Pay Catalogs for 2021-2022**  
Ms. Murphy requested the approval of the 2021-2022 Compensations Plans and Stipends and Supplemental Pay Catalogs for 2021-2022.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded Phillip Davis by Trustee to approve the 2021-2022 Compensation Plans and Stipends and Supplemental Pay Catalogs as Presented.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Agreement for the Purchase of Attendance Credits (Option 3 Agreement) for 2021-2022**  
Ms. Sanchez presented the 2020-2021 agreement for the Purchase of Attendance Credits (Option 3 Agreement).

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded by Trustee Jessica Putonti to approve the move for the 2021-2022 school year, delegate contractual authority to obligate the school district under Texas Education Code (TEC), Section 11.1511(c)(4) to the superintendent, solely for the purpose of obligating the district under TEC, Section 48.257 and TEC, Chapter 49, Subchapters A and D, and the rules adopted by the commissioner of education as authorized under TEC, 49.006. This includes approval of the Agreement for the Purchase of Attendance Credits or the Agreement for the Purchase of Attendance Credits (Netting Chapter 48 Funding).

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Consideration and Action on a Resolution providing for the Defeasance and Calling for Redemption Certain Currently Outstanding Lake Travis Independent School District Obligations and Other Matters in Connection Therewith**  
Ms. Sanchez presented a resolution in regards to approving Redemption Resolution #07212021-01 for 2021-2022

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded by Trustee William Beard to approve the Redemption Resolution #07212021-01 for 2021-2022

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Food and Nutrition Meal Prices for 2021-2022**  
Mr. Bailey presented to approve the student meal prices increase for 2021-2022.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Lauren White and seconded by Trustee Phillip Davis to approve the student meal prices increase for 2021-2022 as presented.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Request for Proposal (RFP) - Fleet Multi-Function Device (Copiers) Maintenance Service**  
Ms. Sanchez, Assistant Superintendent of Business Services, presented a recommendation to award the fleet multi-function device (Copiers) maintenance service to Xerox Business Solutions Southwest.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Phillip Davis and seconded by Trustee William Beard to approve the award of the fleet multi-function device (Copiers) maintenance service to Xerox Business Solutions Southwest.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Request for Proposal (RFP) - Bulk Fuel for Buses and Fleet Vehicles**  
Mr. Brad Bailey recommended the board of trustees to approve the award of the bulk fuel for buses and fleet vehicles to RKA Petroleum as the primary and Pinnacle Petroleum as the secondary vendor.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee William Beard and seconded by Trustee Jessica Putonti to approve the award of the bulk fuel for buses and fleet vehicles to RKA Petroleum as the primary and Pinnacle Petroleum as the secondary vendor.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

- **Delegate and Alternate for the 2021 Texas Association of School Board (TASB) Delegate Assembly**  
Mr. Norton requested names from the board for the Delegate and Alternate for the 2021 Texas Association of School Board (TASB) Delegate Assembly to be held on September 25, 2021 at the TASB/TASA convention in Dallas, TX.

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded by Trustee Lauren White to appoint Trustee Lauren White as the Delegate and Trustee Jessica Putonti as the Alternate for the 2021 TASB Delegate Assembly.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

### **Consent Agenda**

- Minutes of June 16, 2021 Board Meeting

A **MOTION** was made by Trustee Kim Flasch and seconded by Trustee Phillip Davis to approve the consent agenda items as presented.

The motion passed by a vote of 6-0.

### **Upcoming Meetings and Events**

Board Vice President, Bob Dorsett announced the following upcoming meetings and events:

- August 11, 2021 – 6:00 p.m. – Monthly Board Meeting, EDC
- September 15, 2021 – 6:00 p.m. – Monthly Board Meeting

**Closed Session**

Trustees adjourned into Closed Session at 8:39 p.m., as permitted by Texas Government Code 551.001 et seq.

**Section 551.074 - Personnel Matters**

1. The Board will discuss the appointment, employment, evaluation, reassignment, duties, discipline, or dismissal of public employees or officials. (This may involve consultation with attorney as permitted under Section 551.071)

**Section 551.072 - Deliberation Regarding Real Property**

1. The Board will discuss the purchase, exchange, lease or value of real property. (This may involve consultation with attorney as permitted under section 551.071.)

**Section 551.0821 - School Board: Personally Identifiable Information About a Public School Student**

1. The Board will discuss personally identifiable information about a public school student.

**Section 551.076 - Deliberation Regarding Security Devices or Security Audits; Closed Meeting.** This chapter does not require a governmental body to conduct an open meeting to deliberate:

1. The deployment, or specific occasions for implementation of security personnel or devices.

**Open Session**

Trustees returned from Closed Session at 10:14 p.m. There was no action after closed session.

**Adjournment**

There being no further action, the July 21, 2021 Board of Trustees' meeting adjourned at 10:14 p.m.

---

**John Aouelle, Vice President**

---

**Lauren White, Secretary**